

BOREHOLE GEOPHYSICS APPLIED TO GROUND-WATER INVESTIGATIONS

BY W. Scott Keys

---

U.S. Geological Survey

Open-File Report 87-539

Denver, Colorado

1988



DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR  
DONALD PAUL HODEL, Secretary  
U.S. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY  
Dallas L. Peck, Director

---

For additional information, write  
to:

U.S. Geological Survey  
Water Resources Division  
Mail Stop 403, Box 25046  
Denver, CO 80225

Copies of this report may be  
purchased from:

U.S. Geological Survey  
Books and Open-File Reports  
Federal Center, Box 25425  
Denver, CO 80225



## PREFACE

The series of manuals on techniques describes procedures for planning and executing specialized work in water-resources investigations. The material is grouped under major subject headings called "Books" and further subdivided into sections and chapters. Section \_\_\_ of Book \_\_\_ is on borehole geophysics applied to ground-water investigations.

The unit of publication, the chapter, is limited to a narrow field of subject matter. This format permits flexibility in revision and publication as the need arises. "Borehole geophysics applied to ground-water investigations" is the \_\_\_ chapter to be published under Section \_\_\_ of Book \_\_\_.

## CONTENTS

	Page
Abstract-----	16
Introduction-----	17
Purpose and scope-----	17
Background-----	18
How to use the manual-----	20
Why log?-----	22
Limitations of logging-----	23
How are logs analyzed?-----	25
Qualitative log analysis-----	25
Quantitative log analysis-----	28
Synergistic log analysis-----	29
Computer analysis of logs-----	34
Digitizing logs-----	35
Correcting and calibrating logs-----	36
Plotting data from logs-----	37
Petrophysics and log response-----	45
Mineral composition-----	45
Porosity-----	46
Particle size, shape, and cementation-----	48
Formation-resistivity factor-----	49
Rock structure-----	50
Ground-water flow and log response-----	51
Well hydraulics-----	51
Hydraulic conductivity and intrinsic permeability-----	52
Specific yield and moisture content-----	56
Interstitial fluids and log response-----	56
Electrical conductivity-----	57
Temperature-----	59
Chemical composition-----	60
Borehole effects-----	61
Drilling fluids-----	61
Borehole diameter-----	63
Well construction-----	66
Geometric effects-----	66
Volume of investigation-----	67
Bed-thickness effects-----	68
Logging equipment-----	69
Probes-----	69
Cable and winch-----	72
Control modules-----	74
Recorders-----	74
Planning the logging program-----	78
Buying a logger-----	78
In-house service logging-----	78
Contract logging-----	79
Selection of the suite of logs-----	80
Quality control of logs-----	83
Prelogging contacts-----	83
Quality control at the well-----	84
Log headings-----	87
Calibration and standardization of logs-----	89
Calibration-----	90
Standardization-----	96

Test 1.--Principles, equipment, and log-analyses techniques-----	97
Electric logging-----	99
Spontaneous-potential logging-----	99
Principles and instrumentation-----	99
Calibration and standardization-----	100
Volume of investigation-----	102
Extraneous effects-----	102
Interpretation and applications-----	103
Single-point resistance logging-----	107
Principles and instrumentation-----	107
Calibration and standardization-----	111
Volume of investigation-----	111
Extraneous effects-----	111
Interpretation and applications-----	112
Normal-resistivity logging-----	116
Principles and instrumentation-----	116
Calibration and standardization-----	120
Volume of investigation-----	122
Extraneous effects-----	122
Interpretation and applications-----	125
Focused-resistivity logging-----	127
Principles and instrumentation-----	127
Calibration and standardization-----	129
Volume of investigation-----	129
Extraneous effects-----	129
Interpretation and applications-----	129
Lateral-resistivity logging-----	130
Induction logging-----	130
Microresistivity logging-----	130
Dipmeter logging-----	130
Test 2.--Electric logging-----	135
Nuclear logging-----	137
Fundamentals of nuclear geophysics-----	137
Detection of radiation-----	138
Instrumentation-----	139
Counting statistics and logging speed-----	140
The use of radioactive sources in well logging-----	150
Gamma logging-----	154
Principles-----	154
Calibration and standardization-----	155
Volume of investigation-----	158
Extraneous effects-----	158
Interpretation and applications-----	159
Gamma-spectrometry logging-----	165
Principles-----	165
Calibration and standardization-----	168
Volume of investigation and extraneous effects-----	170
Interpretation and applications-----	170

	Page
Gamma-Gamma logging-----	175
Principles-----	175
Calibration and standardization-----	177
Volume of investigation-----	179
Extraneous effects-----	181
Interpretation and applications-----	183
Neutron logging-----	185
Principles-----	185
Calibration and standardization-----	190
Volume of investigation-----	195
Extraneous effects-----	197
Interpretation and applications-----	199
Other nuclear-logging techniques-----	206
Neutron-activation logging-----	206
Neutron-lifetime logging-----	209
Nuclear magnetic-resonance logging-----	210
Test 3.--Nuclear logging-----	211
Acoustic logging-----	213
Acoustic-velocity logging-----	213
Principles and instrumentation-----	213
Calibration and standardization-----	216
Volume of investigation-----	218
Extraneous effects-----	218
Interpretation and applications-----	219
Acoustic wave-form logging-----	223
Acoustic-televiewer logging-----	225
Principles and instrumentation-----	225
Calibration and standardization-----	226
Volume of investigation-----	228
Extraneous effects-----	228
Interpretation and applications-----	230
Caliper logging-----	236
Principles and instrumentation-----	236
Calibration and standardization-----	237
Volume of investigation-----	237
Extraneous effects-----	239
Interpretation and applications-----	239
Test 4.--Acoustic and caliper logging-----	242
Fluid logging-----	244
Temperature-----	244
Principles and instrumentation-----	244
Calibration and standardization-----	247
Volume of investigation-----	247
Extraneous effects-----	248
Interpretation and applications-----	249
Conductivity-----	255
Principles and instrumentation-----	255
Calibration and standardization-----	256
Extraneous effects-----	256
Interpretation and applications-----	256

Flow-----	258
Principles and instrumentation-----	258
Calibration and standardization-----	260
Extraneous effects-----	264
Interpretation and applications-----	266
Well-construction logging-----	272
Casing logging-----	272
Cement and gravel-pack logging-----	273
borehole-deviation logging-----	275
Test 5.--Fluid and well-construction logging-----	276
Summary--A case history-----	277
Acknowledgments-----	281
References-----	282
Glossary of common well-logging terms used in this manual-----	292
Answers to test questions-----	300
Index-----	302

FIGURES

	Page
Figure 1. Photograph showing hand-cranked winch and cable used by the U.S. Geological Survey to make temperature logs, prior to 1918 -----	19
2. Photograph showing wheatstone-bridge system used to make depth-temperature curves or logs with a resolution of 0.01 degree Celsius -----	19
3. Graph showing a depth-temperature curve and interpretation -----	19
4. Photograph showing the first geophysical well logger for water-resources investigations bought by the U.S. Geological Survey in 1946 -----	21
5. Photograph showing recorder and controls on 1946 logger-----	21
6-10 Diagrams showing:	
6. Correlation of lithologic units between two boreholes, based on acoustic-televiewer, caliper, gamma, neutron, and gamma-gamma logs, Cook County, Ill.-----	27
7. Typical response of a suite of geophysical well logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks-----	30
8. Typical response of caliper, gamma, neutron, acoustic-velocity, and resistivity logs to various altered and fractured crystalline rocks-----	32
9. Gamma, neutron, and gamma-gamma logs for two wells in the Raft River geothermal reservoir, Idaho-----	33
10. Format of cross-plot of two logs with three mineral matrices-----	38
11-15 Graphs showing:	
11. Acoustic transit time versus neutron porosity, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming-----	38
12. Bulk density versus neutron porosity, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming-----	40
13. Z-axis plot of gamma-log response versus gamma-gamma and neutron-log responses for the upper part of the Minnelusa Formation -----	41
14. Histogram of gamma-log response for a deep well near Raleigh, N.C-----	42
15. Computer plots showing lithology, bulk density, matrix density, and secondary porosity based on geophysical logs of the Edwards Limestone near San Antonio, Tex. -----	44
16-20 Graphs showing:	
16. Relation of porosity and horizontal permeability for replacement dolomites in the Madison Limestone-----	53
17. Hydraulic conductivity and gamma response versus formation-resistivity factor for a limestone aquifer in Florida-----	55
18. Relation between specific conductance and dissolved solids in water from 25 wells completed in the Lockport Dolomite, Ohio-----	58
19. Electrically equivalent sodium chloride solution plotted as a function of conductivity or resistivity and temperature-----	58
20. Effect of drilling technique on borehole diameter as determined by caliper logs-----	64

## FIGURES

		Page
Figure 21.	Diagram showing a modern analog and digital-logging system-----	70
22-24.	Photographs showing:	
22.	Large logging truck used for deep-well logging-----	75
23.	Electronic control panels and modules, and analog and digital recording systems in a modern logging truck-----	75
24.	Winch controls and computer in a modern logging truck-----	75
25.	Graph showing porosity from core analyses and compensated neutron log for cored intervals, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming-----	93
26.	Graph showing porosity from core analysis versus porosity from a compensated neutron log, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming-----	94
27.	Diagram showing flow of current at typical bed contacts and the resulting spontaneous-potential curve and static values-----	101
28.	Graph showing changes in spontaneous-potential and resistivity logs caused by differences in mud salinity in two closely spaced wells, Houston, Tex.-----	104
29.	Diagram showing caliper, gamma, spontaneous-potential, normal-resistivity, single-point resistance, and neutron logs compared to lithology, Kipling, Saskatchewan, Canada--	106
30.	Schematic diagram of system used to make conventional single-point-resistance and spontaneous-potential logs-----	109
31.	Schematic diagram of system used to make differential single-point-resistance and spontaneous-potential logs-----	110
32.	Diagram showing typical response of single-point-resistance, caliper, and long-normal-resistivity logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks-----	113
33.	Graph showing caliper and differential and conventional single-point-resistance logs in a well in fractured crystalline rocks-----	115
34.	Diagram showing principles of measuring resistivity, in ohm-meters-----	117
35.	Schematic diagram of system used to make 16- and 64-inch normal-resistivity logs-----	119
36.	Schematic diagram of system for calibrating normal-resistivity equipment-----	121
37.	Diagram showing the relation of bed thickness to electrode spacing for normal probes at two thicknesses-----	124
38.	Diagram showing current distribution around a normal-electrode system and a focused-electrode system-----	128
39.	Schematic diagram of system used to make induction logs-----	131
40-45.	Graphs showing:	
40.	Comparison of a digital recording of a gamma signal with 1-second samples to an analog recording with a 1-second time constant-----	142
41.	Effect of time constant data from a gamma probe at one position in a well-----	144
42.	Effect of time constant on data from a neutron probe at one position in a well-----	145

FIGURES

Page

Figures 40-45. Graphs showing--Continued:

43.	Difference between gamma logs run at 5 and at 40 feet per minute-----	146
44.	Gamma logs made by a commercial service company and by the U.S. Geological Survey with a resistivity log to aid in identifying lithology, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming-----	147
45.	Gamma logs recorded at two different logging speeds and time constants, well EX-1, Guam-----	148
46.	Chart showing relative radioactivity of some common rocks----	156
47.	Graph showing the effect of the position of a gamma probe in a borehole as a function of borehole diameter for uranium and thorium radiation-----	160
48.	Diagram showing typical response of gamma and caliper logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks-----	161
49-55.	Graphs showing:	
49.	Percentage of orthoclase and biotite versus gamma-log response in borehole CR-6, Ontario, Canada-----	163
50.	Relation between gamma radiation and percentage of silt and clay from analyses of core samples, from near Bear Creek, Colo.-----	164
51.	Gamma spectra for the uranium-238 series, thorium-232 series, and potassium-40-----	167
52.	Gamma spectra recorded in test hole 5-T83-5, Oak Ridge, Tenn.-----	169
53.	Relation of calcium carbonate to radium-thorium and radium-potassium ratios from analyses of gamma spectra, Lubbock, Tex.-----	171
54.	Calcium carbonate versus radium-potassium ratio for a drill hole in the Ogallala Formation-----	173
55.	Gamma log and gamma spectra at three depths, Maxey Flats, Ky.-----	174
56.	Schematic diagram of probe for making compensated gamma-gamma logs-----	176
57.	Chart showing specific gravity and Z-A ratio for some common minerals-----	178
58-60.	Graphs showing:	
58.	Calibration plot for a dual detector gamma-gamma probe-----	180
59.	Effect of drilling technique on gamma-gamma logs-----	182
60.	Porosity from core analysis versus porosity from a compensated gamma-gamma log, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming-----	184
61.	Schematic diagram showing probe for making compensated neutron-porosity logs-----	187
62.	Schematic diagram showing neutron processes, from source to detectors, through rocks surrounding a borehole----	188

FIGURES

Page

Figures 63-65. Graphs showing:

63.	Calibration data obtained with a compensated neutron-porosity probe in the American Petroleum Institute's calibration pit-----	191
64.	Calibration curves for a compensated neutron-porosity probe based on data from the American Petroleum Institute's calibration pit-----	192
65.	Neutron log of the Red River Formation, Custer County, Mont., showing method for onsite calibration using estimated values of porosity for shale and anhydrite -----	194
66.	Diagram showing theoretical response of a neutron probe to changes in porosity and bed thickness-----	196
67.	Graph showing moisture content from core analyses compared to neutron logs in cased and uncased boreholes, Lubbock, Tex.-----	198
68.	Graph showing neutron-transmittance log between boreholes S-3 and S-11 compared with single-borehole neutron log of borehole S-3, cased and uncased, Lubbock, Tex.-----	200
69.	Diagram showing neutron logs and drillers' logs of two closely spaced water wells completed in glacial sediments, Anchorage, Alaska-----	202
70.	Diagram showing typical response of neutron and caliper logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks-----	203
71.	Graph showing the relation between a neutron log and the estimated clay content of core from a borehole penetrating crystalline rocks-----	204
72.	Graph showing gamma spectra produced by neutron activation in a well, Savannah River, Ga.-----	206
73.	Diagram showing acoustic-wave forms for a two-receiver system and arrival times of compression, shear and fluid waves-----	215
74.	Graph showing conversion of transit time from acoustic-velocity logs to porosity of various rock types-----	217
75.	Diagram showing typical response of acoustic-velocity and caliper logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks-----	220
76.	Graph showing the relation of acoustic-transit time to porosity for tuff, sandstone, and siltstone, Raft River geothermal reservoir, Idaho-----	222
77.	Graph showing porosity from core analysis versus porosity from a compensated acoustic-velocity log, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming-----	222
78.	Diagram showing three-dimensional view of a fracture intersecting a borehole and appearance of the same fracture on an acoustic-televiewer log-----	227
79.	Acoustic-televiewer logs made by the U.S. Geological Survey and a commercial service company, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming-----	229
80.	Acoustic-televiewer log of producing zone A in a geothermal well, Roosevelt Hot Springs, Utah-----	231
81.	Diagram showing mechanical- and acoustic-caliper logs of producing zone A in a geothermal well, Roosevelt Hot Springs, Utah-----	231

FIGURES

	Page
82. Acoustic-televiewer logs of a 5-foot interval at four different gain settings, borehole CR-6, Ontario, Canada---	234
83. Diagram showing single-point resistance, caliper, acoustic-televiewer, neutron, and gamma logs of a borehole penetrating the Monterey Shale, California-----	235
84-86. Graphs showing:	
84. Caliper logs from probes having four independent arms, three averaging arms, and a single arm, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming-----	238
85. Caliper, differential-temperature, and temperature logs for an interval in Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming-----	246
86. Temperature log of a producing geothermal well at Roosevelt Hot Springs, Utah-----	250
87. Diagram showing temperature, differential-temperature, caliper, and acoustic-televiewer logs of Sears test well 1, Raleigh, N.C.-----	250
88. Graph showing selected temperature logs made in a monitoring well located 39 feet from a recharge well, High Plains of Texas-----	252
89. Graphs showing diurnal-temperature cycles and traveltimes of the center of thermal waves, based on temperature logs of a monitoring well 39 feet from a recharge well, High Plains of Texas-----	254
90. Schematic diagram of equipment for making heat-pulse flowmeter logs-----	261
91. Diagram showing analog record of a heat pulse from a thermal flowmeter-----	261
92-94. Graphs showing:	
92. Calibration data for an impeller flowmeter, developed by moving the probe in a water well that was flowing-----	263
93. Impeller-flowmeter logs made up and down a well where the casing was perforated opposite two aquifers-----	265
94. Single-arm caliper log and data from heat-pulse flowmeter showing zones of water entry and loss in a borehole penetrating granitic rocks in the Canadian Shield-----	267
95. Diagram showing radioactive-tracer-injector logs before and after acidizing and fracturing, Madison Limestone test well 3-----	269
96-99. Graphs showing:	
96. Comparison of impeller-flowmeter and radioactive-tracer-injector logs, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming-----	269
97. Downward movement of four slugs of iodine-131 injected in a borehole penetrating granitic rocks near Aiken, S.C., plotted from periodic gamma logs-----	271
98. Radioactive-tracer-injector and reversed-temperature logs made during pumping of test well USW H-5, Yucca Mountain, Nevada-----	271
99. Casing-collar-locator logs recorded by an event marker and analog recorder at two different gain settings-----	274
100. Diagram showing correlation of lithologic units between Madison Limestone test well 1 and oil test well MC-3 based on neutron and gamma logs, Wyoming-----	279

TABLES

	Page
Table 1. Response of logs to porosity-----	41
2. Criteria for selection of logs-----	81
3. Calibration pits available for public use-----	91
4. Comparison of the neutron response of some common elements for a neutron with an initial energy of 2 million electron volts-	189
5. Activation data for some common isotopes-----	207
6. Compression-wave velocity and transit time for some common rocks and fluids-----	216

### CONVERSION FACTORS

The inch-pound units used in this report may be converted to metric units by use of the following conversion factors:

<u>Multiply</u>	<u>By</u>	<u>To obtain</u>
gallon	3.785	liter
gallon per minute (gal/min)	0.06309	liter per second
foot (ft)	0.3048	meter
inch (in.)	25.40	millimeter
mile (mi)	1.609	kilometer
pound	.4536	kilogram
pound per square inch (lb/in <sup>2</sup> )	6.895	kilopascal

To convert degrees Fahrenheit (°F) to degrees Celsius (°C), use the following formula:  $^{\circ}\text{C}=(^{\circ}\text{F}-32)5/9$ . To convert degrees Celsius (°C) to degrees Fahrenheit (°F), use the following formula:  $^{\circ}\text{F}=9/5^{\circ}\text{C}+32$ .

The following terms and abbreviations also are used in this report:

revolutions per second (r/s)  
foot per second (ft/s)  
foot per minute (ft/min)  
microsecond per foot ( $\mu\text{s}/\text{ft}$ )  
gram per cubic centimeter ( $\text{g}/\text{cm}^3$ )  
milliliter (mL)  
milligram per liter (mg/L)  
ohm-meters (ohm-m)  
microsiemens per centimeter at 25° celsius ( $\mu\text{S}/\text{cm}$ )  
electron volt (eV)  
million electron volts (MeV)  
parts per million (ppm)  
pulse per second (P/S)  
second (s)  
volt (V)  
ampere (A)  
kilohertz (kHz)  
curie (Ci)  
millicurie (mCi)

# BOREHOLE GEOPHYSICS APPLIED TO GROUND-WATER INVESTIGATIONS

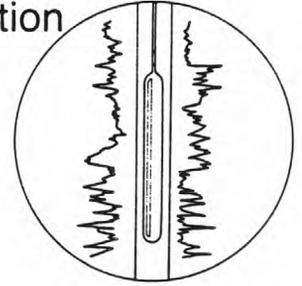
By W. Scott Keys

## ABSTRACT

The purpose of this manual is to provide hydrologists, geologists, and others who have the necessary training with the basic information needed to apply the most useful borehole-geophysical-logging techniques to the solution of problems in ground-water hydrology. Geophysical logs can provide information on the construction of wells and on the character of the rocks and fluids penetrated by those wells, in addition to changes in the character of these factors with time. The response of well logs is caused by: petrophysical factors; the quality; temperature, and pressure of interstitial fluids; and ground-water flow. Qualitative and quantitative analysis of the analog records and computer analysis of digitized logs are used to derive geohydrologic information. This information can then be extrapolated vertically within a well and laterally to other wells using logs.

The physical principles by which the mechanical and electronic components of a logging system measure properties of rocks, fluids and wells, and the principles of measurement need to be understood to correctly interpret geophysical logs. Planning the logging operation involves selecting the equipment and the logs most likely to provide the needed information. Information on well construction and geohydrology are needed to guide this selection. Quality control of logs is an important responsibility of both the equipment operator and log analyst and requires both calibration and well-site standardization of equipment.

Logging techniques that are widely used in ground-water hydrology or that have significant potential for application to this field include: spontaneous potential, resistance, resistivity, gamma, gamma spectrometry, gamma-gamma, neutron, acoustic velocity, acoustic televiewer, caliper, and fluid temperature, conductivity, and flow. The following topics are discussed for each of these techniques: principles and instrumentation, calibration and standardization, volume of investigation, extraneous effects, and interpretation and applications.



## INTRODUCTION

## PURPOSE AND SCOPE

Borehole geophysics is defined in this manual as the science of recording and analyzing continuous or point measurements of physical properties made in wells or test holes. The chief purpose of this manual is to provide a comprehensive source of information on how to make and record geophysical logs for ground-water investigations. It is also intended to update the version written in 1971 (Keys and MacCary, 1971). This is done by emphasizing those techniques that have changed most since 1971. Additional emphasis is placed on newer logs, like the acoustic televiewer, that have become widely used since 1971; some text and figures describing older techniques has been deleted. Newer applications of borehole geophysics, to problems such as waste disposal and geothermal energy, are emphasized because of their increased importance during the past 15 years. The interest in these applications, as well as applications to the prediction of earthquakes and volcanism, has increased the need for log analysis in igneous and metamorphic rocks. These rocks, which have been of little importance to ground-water hydrologists until recently, are discussed in greater detail in this manual. The emphasis in this manual is on the principles of borehole geophysics and their application to ground water investigations, rather than on how to operate a specific logger, or how to make hole-diameter corrections on a specific type of gamma-gamma log made by a service company.

Most of the literature available on borehole geophysics is directed specifically toward petroleum applications that can be quite different from ground-water applications. Log analysis for petroleum stresses the determination of hydrocarbons in pore space normally expressed as water saturation ( $S_w$ ) in the presence of two immiscible fluids and the relative permeability to these fluids; this is a rare situation in ground water. Water encountered in oil-well logging usually is saline; most of the equations developed for the analysis of electric logs under these conditions do not apply to fresh water. No manual or book can answer all possible questions on borehole geophysics, and length limitations preclude describing some subjects here. For example, specifications and calibration data are so variable among logging tools of the same type, that space does not permit inclusion of that type of information; reference can be made to manuals provided by manufacturers or logging-service companies for that type of information. The glossary at the end of the manual includes only those terms used in the text. A more complete glossary has been published by the Society of Professional Well Log Analysts (1975). Terms and abbreviations differ among commercial service companies. This terminology problem is compounded by the fact that the same type of log may be given a different name by each of the major logging-service companies. The list of references included here is far from complete, only the most important are included. A more complete bibliography related to ground-water applications of borehole geophysics has been published by Taylor and Dey (1985).

## BACKGROUND

Most texts on borehole geophysics give credit to the Schlumberger brothers for developing the first geophysical logs in France in 1927. They made the first resistivity logs by manually plotting the deflections of a galvanometer that responded to resistivity of rocks and interstitial fluids (Schlumberger and Schlumberger 1929). In 1931, Schlumberger engineers recorded natural electrical potentials caused by differences in the lithology penetrated by wells. The existence of these potentials was known as early as 1830. A log of these spontaneous potentials was called a porosity log at that time.

In the United States, the first geophysical well logs probably were plotted from temperature measurements made by Hallock (1897), although Lord Kelvin made downhole temperature measurements in 1869 (Van Orstrand, 1918). C.E. Van Orstrand (1918) of the U.S. Geological Survey described downhole temperature-logging equipment with a resolution of 0.01 degrees Celsius, which he used to plot "depth-temperature curves." Van Orstrand also worked with personnel of the Carnegie Institute in Washington, D.C., who made temperature measurements with similar equipment prior to 1916 (Johnston and Adams, 1916). The winch that was used to log to depths of as much as 7,000 ft and the related surface equipment are shown in figures 1 and 2. The cable was not unlike that used today, with a strength member and two separate insulated conductors. This probably illustrates the first logging equipment used by the U.S. Geological Survey and one of the earliest used anywhere. An example of one of Van Orstrand's "depth-temperature curves" is shown in figure 3; he attributed the anomalies to water, gas, and oil. He also speculated that such temperature curves might "...afford a means of determining the relative water content of rocks in situ." Temperature logs can sometimes be used to locate permeable zones intersected by water wells.

Figure 1.--Hand-cranked winch and cable used by the U.S. Geological Survey to make temperature logs prior to 1918 (from Van Orstrand, 1918).

Figure 2.--Wheatstone bridge system used to make depth-temperature curves or logs with a resolution of 0.01 degree Celsius (from Van Orstrand, 1918).

Figure 3.--A depth-temperature curve and interpretation (modified from Van Orstrand, 1918).

At the present time (1986), geophysical well logs are run in every exploration or production well drilled for oil anywhere in the world. Because the value of the product justified the expense, almost all of the advances in borehole geophysics have been made for oil-well logging. As a consequence, most of the literature on the field is related to petroleum. Both the use and development of borehole geophysics in ground-water hydrology lag substantially behind the petroleum industry; however, the gap has narrowed in the past 15 years.

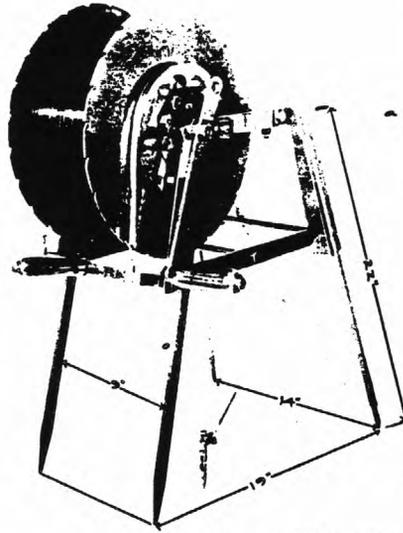


Figure 1.--Hand-cranked winch and cable used by the U.S. Geological Survey to make temperature logs, prior to 1918 (from Van Orstrand, 1918).

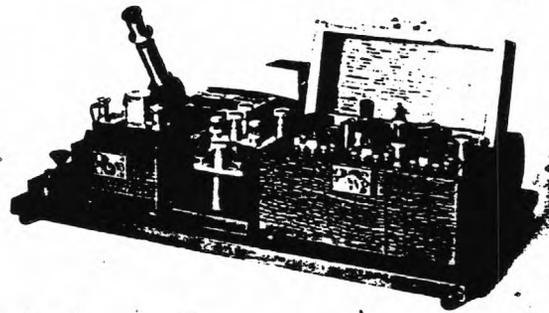


Figure 2.--Wheatstone bridge system used to make depth-temperature curves or logs with a resolution of 0.01 degree Celsius (from Van Orstrand, 1918).

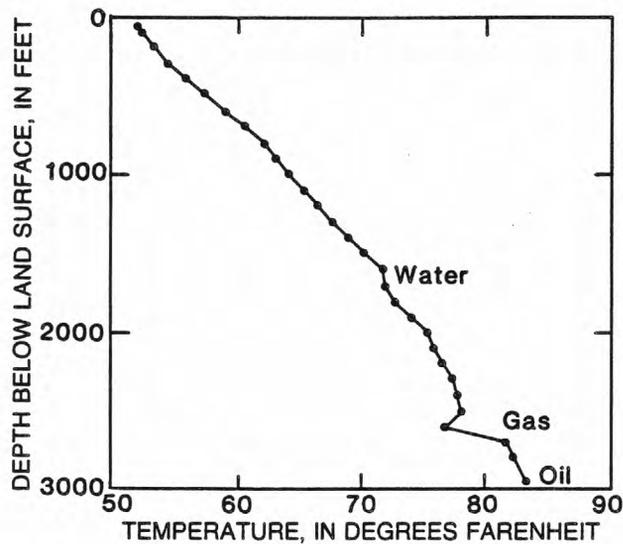


Figure 3.--A depth-temperature curve and interpretation (modified from Van Orstrand, 1918).

The first comprehensive report pertaining to the use of subsurface geophysical methods in groundwater hydrology was written by Jones and Skibitzke (1956). The first U.S. Geological Survey logger for the study of ground water was purchased by P. H. Jones in 1946 for \$499. Two views of that early "Widco" logger, built by Hubert Guyod, are shown in figures 4 and 5. The logger was modified with the addition of a gamma panel above the recorder. It probably was also modified by changing the curvilinear recorder first used to a rectilinear recorder. The Widco Company, which no longer exists, was started by Hubert Guyod and produced all of the early small loggers used in ground-water hydrology. Guyod also did considerable research on log analysis and published early reports that were useful for ground-water applications (Guyod, 1952 and 1966; Guyod and Pranglin, 1959).

Figure 4.--The first geophysical well logger for water-resources investigations bought by the U.S. Geological Survey in 1946.

Figure 5.--Recorder and controls on 1946 logger. Single-point resistance and spontaneous potential were run with controls on the recorder. Gamma panel was added later.

#### HOW TO USE THE MANUAL

This manual is organized into introductory sections on the principles of borehole geophysics followed by sections describing each of the various types of geophysical logs that have important application to ground-water hydrology. To select the logs needed to solve a specific problem, reference can be made to the chapters on petrophysics, ground-water flow, and log analysis. Selection of the right logs to provide the information needed for the rocks and fluids penetrated from the wells available, is, in fact, one of the most important purposes of this manual. The section on planning the operation needs to be reviewed early in a project, preferably before drilling is started. Chapters on specific types of logs can be studied when the selection of logs to be used has been made. The glossary might be helpful in early stages of a study. If preliminary information indicates a certain log may be applicable, then the sections on interpretation, applications, and extraneous effects for that type of log need to be reviewed. Finally, when the decision has been made to use or interpret a specific suite of logs, the sections on those logs need to be studied thoroughly. References mentioned in each section may be consulted for more complete information on a subject. Descriptions of instrumentation or calibration may be reviewed, even though the reader does not plan to participate in making the logs, because equipment and procedures need to be understood to interpret the logs correctly. Multiple-choice tests are supplied at the end of some sections on related types of logs; these will help the reader determine whether significant points are understood; answers to these tests are at the end of the report.

Use of trade names in this report is for identification purposes only and does not constitute endorsement by the U.S. Geological Survey.



Figure 4.--The first geophysical well logger for water-resources investigations bought by the the U.S. Geological Survey in 1946.



Figure 5.--Recorder and controls on 1946 logger. Single-point resistance and spontaneous potential were run with controls on the recorder. Gamma panel was added later.

## WHY LOG?

The most important objective of borehole geophysics is to obtain more information from a well than can be obtained from drilling, sampling, and testing. Drilling any kind of a test hole or well is an expensive procedure. The test hole or well provides access to the ground-water system at one point; therefore, each test hole or well provides a valuable opportunity to obtain vertical profiles or records of many kinds of data. The cost-benefit ratio for recording geophysical logs usually is quite favorable. That is why all oil wells drilled anywhere in the world are logged. Although the unit costs for drilling most water wells are less than those for drilling oil wells and the value of the product usually is less, the cost of logging usually also is less.

Geophysical logs provide continuous analog or digital records that can be interpreted to provide physical properties of the rock matrix, the contained fluids, and construction of the well. Logs may be interpreted in terms of the lithology, thickness, and continuity of aquifers and confining beds; permeability, porosity, bulk density, resistivity, moisture content, and specific yield of aquifers and confining beds; and the source, movement, and chemical and physical characteristics of ground water. These data are objective, repeatable during a long period of time, and comparable, even though made with different equipment. Repeatability and comparability provide the basis for measuring changes in a ground-water system with time. Changes in the aquifer matrix, such as in porosity, or changes in water quality, such as in salinity or temperature, may be identified. Thus, logs may be used to establish predevelopment characteristics of an aquifer so that future logging may identify changes that may have occurred. With computers now being used for log analysis, logs that are digitized at the well site or later in the office may be rapidly corrected, collated, and analyzed. Digitized logs may be transmitted by telephone; a number of comprehensive computer programs are available for interactive analysis of the data.

Geophysical logs for most oil wells and for some water wells may be purchased from a number of private companies in analog or digital format. Copies of logs may also be obtained from various Federal and State agencies. Logs of old wells provide a valuable source of data when studying a new area.

Some geophysical logs measure the properties of a volume of rock many times larger than core or cuttings that may have been extracted from the hole. Some probes record data from rock beyond the rock disturbed by the drilling process. The laboratory analysis of samples provide data from small volumes of rock, whereas logs usually provide continuous data and they may be analyzed immediately at the well site to guide completion or testing procedures. Unlike descriptive logs written by a driller or geologist, which are limited by their authors' experience and purpose, and are subjective, geophysical logs later may provide information on some characteristic not required at the time of logging. Serendipity of this type has resulted in the discovery of uranium, phosphate, and potash from the analysis of old well logs.

Data from geophysical logs are useful in the development of digital models of aquifers and in the design of ground-water supply, recharge, or disposal systems. A log analyst with the proper background data on the area being studied can provide usable first approximations of the hydraulic properties needed for these purposes. Stratigraphic correlation is a common use of geophysical logs; logs also permit the lateral extrapolation of quantitative data from test or core holes. Using logs, a measured value at a point in a water well can be extrapolated in three dimensions thereby increasing its value greatly.

Many techniques used in surface geophysics are similar to techniques in borehole geophysics, and the two are considered together when planning a comprehensive ground-water investigation. Most surface geophysical surveys cannot be uniquely interpreted. Geophysical logs, such as acoustic-velocity and resistivity logs, can provide detailed profiles of data that are useful in interpreting surface surveys, such as seismic and resistivity surveys.

#### LIMITATIONS OF LOGGING

Geophysical logging cannot replace sampling completely, because some sample data is needed for each study area to aid log analysis. A log analyst cannot evaluate a suite of logs properly without some information about the local geology. Logs do not have a unique response; for example, gamma log anomalies from shale are indistinguishable from those caused by granite. No unambiguous rules for log interpretation exist. To maximize results from logs, at least one core hole may be drilled in each depositional basin or unique aquifer system. If coring the entire interval of interest is too expensive, then intervals for coring and laboratory analysis can be selected on the basis of geophysical logs obtained from a nearby hole. Laboratory analysis of core is essential either for direct calibration of logs or for checking calibration done by other means. Because of the effect of chemical composition of the rock matrix, calibration of logs done in one rock type may not be valid in other rock types. Even subtle changes in the rock matrix can produce large changes in log response.

In spite of the existence of many equations for log interpretation and charts to provide values like porosity, log analysis still is affected by many variables that are not completely understood. Most log analysis is guided by empirical rules developed from oil-field data. Such rules may not be applicable or introduce errors when applied to aquifers. Correct interpretation of logs is based on a thorough understanding of the principles of each technique. For this reason, interpretation of logs in the petroleum industry largely is done by professional log analysts. Because few professional log analysts are working in ground water and because the cost usually is not justified, interpretation of logs for ground-water applications usually is done by less experienced people and errors may be more common than in the petroleum industry. In addition, neither the experience nor the scientific literature available for ground-water applications are comparable to that available for petroleum applications.

Although this manual will answer basic questions regarding the application of borehole geophysics to ground-water hydrology and serve as a reference for the experienced analyst, it is not a substitute for on-the-job training and formal courses. Training is needed by equipment operators as well as analysts; the quality of logs made in water wells generally is not comparable to the quality of logs made in oil wells. Standards for log headings and log calibration are well established in the petroleum industry but are lacking in ground water. Even when oil-well logging services are used, scales and logging speed may not be correct for ground-water applications unless the geologist or hydrologist is in the logging truck and knows what to ask for. Control of the quality of water-well logs has been a major limitation to appropriate application in the past; hence the subject is discussed in some detail in this manual.

Cost of geophysical logs usually is cited as a reason for their limited use in ground water. Cost of logging can be decreased markedly by running only those logs that offer the best possibility of providing the answers sought. Further decreases in cost can be achieved by logging only those wells that are properly located and constructed to maximize results from logging and by using smaller logging equipment whenever possible. In contrast, more money needs to be spent on log analysis. More time may be needed to thoroughly analyze a suite of logs than to run the logs; too often this time is not budgeted when a study is planned.

A logging program needs to be properly planned to be of maximum benefit. A sequence of steps that will improve the cost-benefit ratio follows;

1. Plan the logging program on the basis of the information needed and the boreholes that will be available.
2. Drill and complete test holes and wells to optimize results from sampling, testing, and logging.
3. Collect representative water and core or cuttings samples at depth where significant changes in water-quality or lithology take place, using logs as a guide if possible.
4. Control the quality of logs recorded by complete labeling, calibrating, and standardizing.
5. Interpret logs as a suite, based on a thorough understanding of the principles, while considering all background data available in the area.

## HOW ARE LOGS ANALYZED?

The qualitative and quantitative analysis of geophysical logs in the petroleum industry usually is done by specialists called log analysts. Because of the complexity and scope of borehole geophysics, few, if any, of these specialists are knowledgeable about all logging techniques in all geologic environments, and fewer are knowledgeable about hydrologic applications. In recent years, computer techniques have dominated log analyses; however, this development has not changed the basic requirements for obtaining the most information from logs. First, background information about each new geohydrologic environment is essential where logs are to be used. The quantity and kind of background data needed are functions of the objectives of the study. Second, the suite of logs to be run will not only be based on study objectives, but also on knowledge of the synergistic nature of logs. Two logs may provide answers that may not be possible with either log separately, and each additional log may add much more to a total understanding of the system. Third, logs need to be selected, run, and analyzed on the basis of a thorough understanding of the principles of each log, even if the final results are computer generated.

Most logs obtained for ground-water applications are interpreted by the geologist or hydrologist in charge of the study, because the services of a professional log analyst cannot be justified economically. Only the largest ground-water organizations have professional log analysts on their staffs. The geoscientist expert in the area of study can do an excellent job of log analysis if he or she will learn the basic principles of the logs to be used. One of the purposes of this manual is to provide some of the necessary information to permit non-experts to use borehole geophysics effectively.

### QUALITATIVE LOG ANALYSIS

The first uses of logs were for the identification and lateral correlation of rock and fluid types and the selection of likely producing intervals for well completion; these uses are still vital today in both ground-water and petroleum studies. Qualitative log analysis is based mostly on knowledge of the local geology and hydrology, rather than on log-response charts or computer plots. Examination of outcrops, core, and cuttings, coupled with an understanding of log response, will permit the identification and correlation of known aquifers and confining beds. Where the aquifers have not been identified previously, various kinds of flow logs, obtained under pumping or injection conditions, will assist in the location and characterization of the aquifers and confining beds. Even for qualitative log analysis, hole conditions need to be known, because they can alter log response markedly. Qualitative log analysis is usually an early step in quantitative analysis; matrix parameters need to be understood before proceeding with quantitative analysis.

Because geophysical logs do not have a unique response, lithologic interpretation of logs needs to be checked against data from other sources. This also is true of stratigraphic correlation, where gross errors can be made by just "matching the wiggles." Even within one depositional basin, the response of one type of log may shift, because of lateral facies changes. For example, the feldspar content of a sandstone may increase toward a granitic source area, which probably would cause an increase in the radioactivity measured by gamma logs. This measurement might be interpreted mistakenly as an increase in clay content, unless other logs or data were available. For this reason, the synergism of composite-log interpretation is stressed in this manual. Logs are interpreted as an assemblage of data, not singly, to increase the accuracy of analysis. Stratigraphic correlation, using acoustic televiewer, caliper, gamma, neutron, and gamma-gamma logs, is shown in figure 6. The two drill holes are located 1,175 ft apart in Illinois; they penetrate dolomite of the Silurian Niagaran Series. The correlation of individual dolomite beds and intervals of solution between the two boreholes is apparent, even though the logs were not recorded at the same horizontal scale or gain. Correlation by matching log character can be done without understanding the response to lithology, but this approach also can lead to erroneous results. In figure 6, anomalies on the caliper logs represent solution openings, probably along bedding planes because one interval correlates between the boreholes. The excellent correlation on the gamma logs probably is due to shaly units that are more radioactive than dolomite. Changes in response on the neutron and gamma-gamma logs probably represent dolomitic beds with different porosity that are relatively consistent in the area of these drill holes.

Figure 6.--Correlation of lithologic units between boreholes, based on acoustic-televiewer, caliper, gamma, neutron, and gamma-gamma logs, Cook County, Ill. (modified from Nicholas and Healy, 1988).

The effectiveness of qualitative interpretation usually improves with an increase in the number of wells that are logged in an area and the quantity of core data that is available. A gradual change in log response across a depositional basin may indicate a facies change. One anomalous log caused by unusual hole conditions may be identifiable when compared with a number of logs with consistent response; such errors are not likely to repeat. Continuous core or a large number of core samples from one test hole is more useful than a few nonrepresentative samples scattered throughout the section. If continuous coring of one hole cannot be funded, then logs of a nearby hole can be used to select representative intervals for coring. This subject is discussed in more detail in the section on log calibration. Although it is true that an increase in the number of different types of logs run may improve the accuracy of interpretation and the variety of results, they need to be selected carefully. Too often logs are run that are not appropriate for the environment or for the information desired.

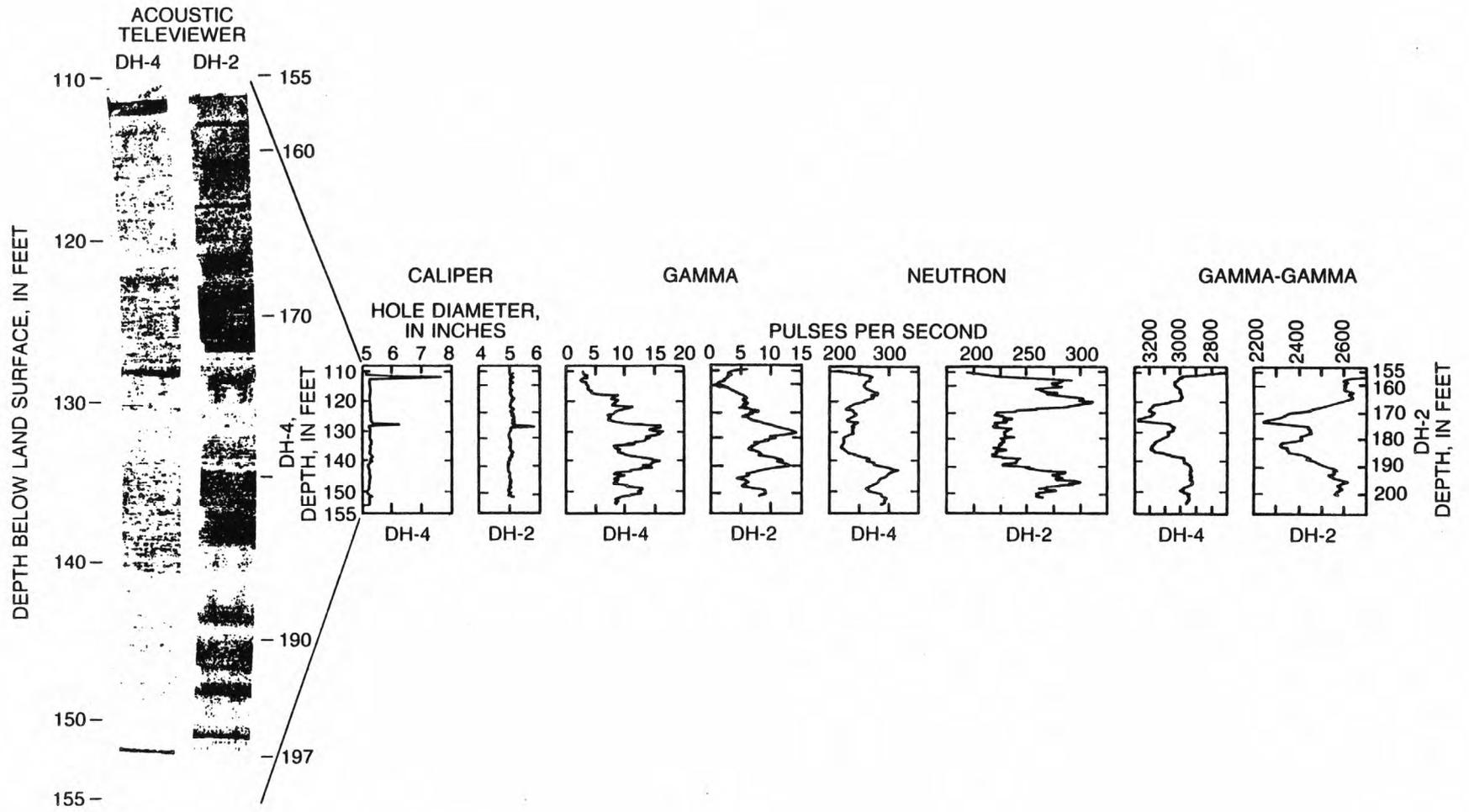


Figure 6. --Correlation of lithologic units between two drill holes, based on acoustic-televiwer, caliper, gamma, neutron, and gamma-gamma logs, Cook County, Ill (modified from Nicholas and Healy, 1988).

## QUANTITATIVE LOG ANALYSIS

Obtaining quantitative data on aquifer or water characteristics is an important objective of many ground-water logging programs; however, the proper steps to ensure reasonable accuracy of the data often are not followed. The scales on logs in environmental units, such as percent porosity or bulk density, in grams per cubic centimeter, need to be checked. Even if the procedures described under log calibration and standardization are followed carefully, corroborating data for the particular rocks and wells logged are needed. Repeatability is ensured by logging selected depth intervals a second time; equipment drift is indicated by changes in response as a function of time or temperature. Because of the matrix effect, calibration in one rock type may not ensure accurate scales in another rock type. For this reason, if the rocks being logged are not the same as those in which the equipment was calibrated, core analyses are needed to check values on the logs. Before any log data are used quantitatively, they need to be checked for extraneous effects, such as borehole diameter or bed thickness. Data are of questionable value when from depth intervals where borehole diameter is considerably greater than bit size, or from intervals where bed thickness is equal to, or less than, the vertical dimension of the volume of investigation for the probe.

Both vertical and horizontal scales on logs need to be selected on the basis of the resolution and accuracy of the data required. Most commercial logs are recorded on a vertical scale of 20 or 50 ft/in, which is not adequate for the detail required in many ground-water studies, where the wells may be only a few hundred feet deep. Similarly, the horizontal scales on many service-company logs are compressed, to avoid off-scale deflections; some logs also may be run too fast for the accuracy required. These factors are discussed under quality control of logs.

Few logs measure the quantity shown on the horizontal scale directly; for example, the neutron log does not measure porosity; it responds chiefly to hydrogen content. The difference between porosity and hydrogen content can lead to a large porosity error where bound water or hydrocarbons are present. Thus, a knowledge of the principles of log-measuring systems is prerequisite to the accurate quantitative analysis of logs.

## SYNERGISTIC LOG ANALYSIS

Multiple log analysis takes advantage of the synergistic nature of many logs; usually much more can be learned from a suite of logs than from the sum of the logs individually. For example, gypsum can be distinguished from anhydrite by interpretation of gamma and neutron logs together. Both rocks contain small concentrations of radioactive elements so a gamma log indicates minimal radioactivity for both rocks. However, gypsum contains substantial water of crystallization, so it appears as relatively porous on a neutron log. In contrast, anhydrite contains little, if any, water of crystallization so it appears to be relatively nonporous on a neutron log. Both minerals will be logged as high resistivity. This response, as well as typical responses of a suite of logs in a section of sedimentary rocks, is shown in figure 7.

Figure 7.--Typical response of a suite of hypothetical geophysical well logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks. The measurement units on all logs except the neutron and acoustic velocity increase to the right.

The logs in figure 7 are hypothetical; it is difficult to find a complete suite of logs from one well that includes the diverse lithologic section shown. The log response shown is typical for the rock types represented, but it does not represent a unique signature for those rock types. For example, coal and limestone are shown as having little radioactivity on the gamma log, but in some areas, lignite and limestone are uraniferous, and are, therefore, quite radioactive. Coal and limestone without solution openings can be distinguished by neutron and resistivity logs, which have similar response in most rock types. Although both rock types have a relatively high resistivity, coal is logged as relatively high porosity (negative deflection) on neutron logs because of its hydrocarbon content. Thus, neutron and resistivity logs usually have reversed response in coal beds. Note how the caliper and single-point resistance logs indicate the reason for the cycle skips on the acoustic-velocity log--solution openings and fractures. Extraneous effects, such as the major shift in the single-point resistance log, caused by a change in fluid salinity in the rocks and reversals in response of the long normal-resistivity log, caused by bed-thickness effects, are shown in figure 7. It is assumed that the fluid in the lower part of the borehole is saline, which causes the spontaneous potential log to be featureless and decreases response of the resistance and resistivity logs in this part of the borehole. Portions of this figure are included and described in more detail in the chapters on specific types of logs. The hypothetical response of these logs to a wide range of lithologies may be typical of one depositional basin but not another. Log response needs to be learned for each new study area where it usually becomes a recognizable signature.

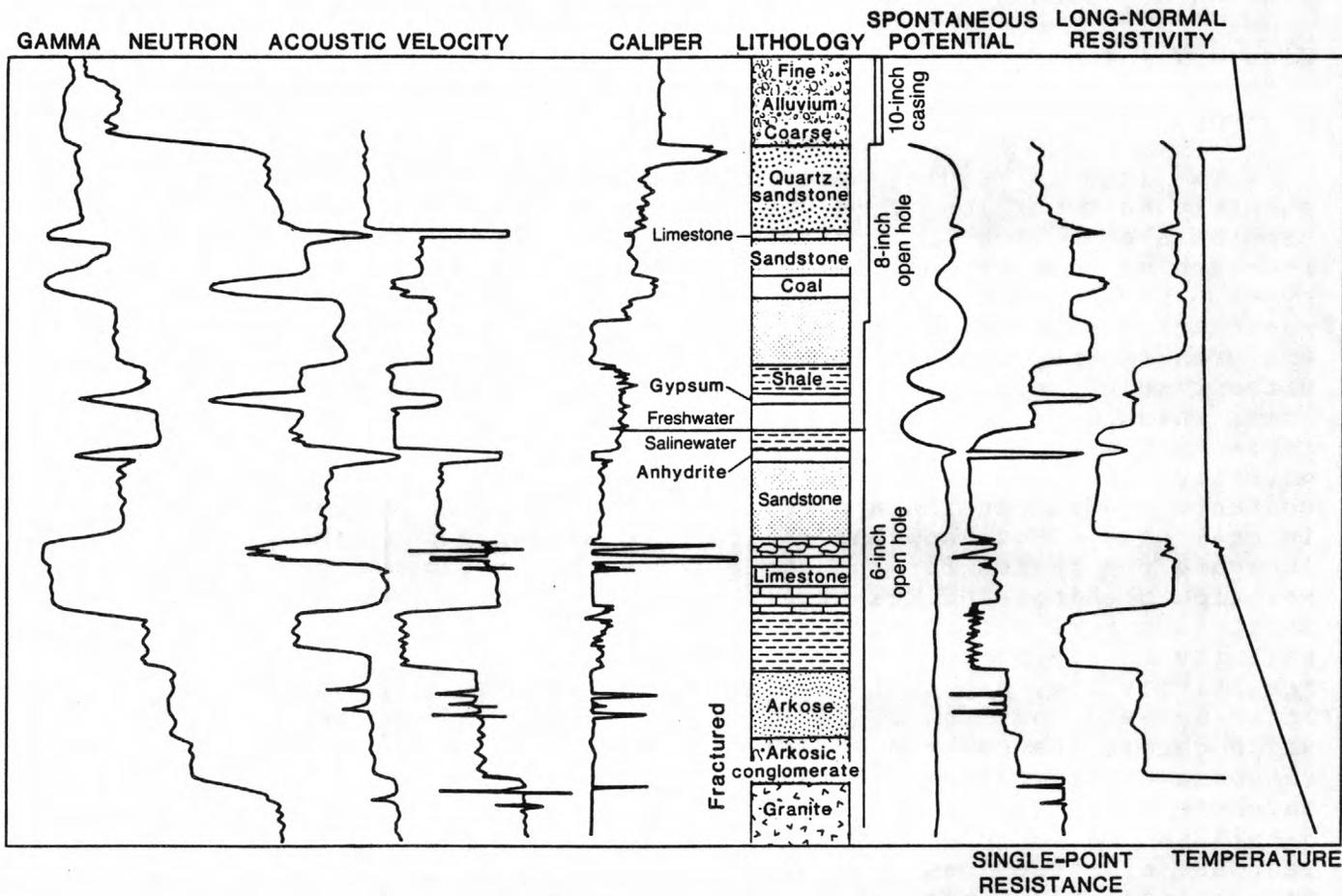


Figure 7. --Typical response of a suite of hypothetical geophysical well logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks. The measurement units on all logs except the neutron and acoustic velocity increase to the right.

Typical response of some logs to various types of altered and fractured igneous and metamorphic rocks is shown in figure 8. Data on log response in crystalline rocks have been few until the recent expansion of exploration for geothermal energy and for potential repositories for radioactive waste. A summary of some of the experience gained in those programs by the U.S. Geological Survey is given in figure 8. Synergistic log analysis is just as useful in crystalline rocks as in sedimentary rocks. An example of the use of gamma, neutron, and gamma-gamma logs to distinguish chlorite schist from biotite schist in the Raft River geothermal reservoir, Idaho is shown in figure 9. The schists are marked by an anomalously large porosity, based on the neutron logs, and by a marked increase in density on the gamma-gamma logs. This difference is caused by the large content of bound water or water of crystallization in the mica minerals. Radioactivity of the chlorite schist was decreased substantially during the process of hydrothermal alteration from biotite. Leaching of potassium, and possibly uranium, during alteration caused the decrease in radioactivity, which allowed the two types of schist to be distinguished by use of gamma logs.

The technique of studying the different types of logs as a group, rather than one at a time, is an important one to develop. For this purpose the logs for one well are located side by side after the appropriate corrections for depth errors have been made. Locating logs with similar response, like neutron and resistivity, side by side, makes depth errors and differences in response easier to identify. Plotting any core data or lithologic descriptions on the same vertical scale as the logs is helpful, but these data usually will require vertical displacement with respect to the logs because the depth datum may be different by as much as 20 ft. A few correlation lines drawn across a suite of logs at major anomalies also are helpful.

Figure 8.--Typical response of a suite of hypothetical caliper, gamma, neutron, acoustic-velocity, and resistivity logs to various altered and fractured crystalline rocks. Porosity increases to the left on the neutron and acoustic velocity logs; scales increase to the right on the other logs.

Figure 9.--Gamma, neutron, and gamma-gamma logs for two wells in the Raft River geothermal reservoir, Idaho.

Examining a suite of logs from a distance of a few feet is good practice, so that significant trends and shifts in response become more obvious, in contrast to the detail seen up close. Replotting logs at different vertical or horizontal scales, using a computer, may bring out features not previously obvious. A suite of logs needs to be examined for similarities and differences, and explanations need to be sought for log response that departs from that anticipated, based on the available background data. When searching for explanations for anomalous log response, first, examine the caliper log to determine if borehole-diameter increase offers a possible reason. Well-construction information also may explain anomalous response, as may information on the mineral or chemical composition of the rock. The results of synergistic log analysis depend on the information available from other sources and a complete understanding of what the various logs respond to.

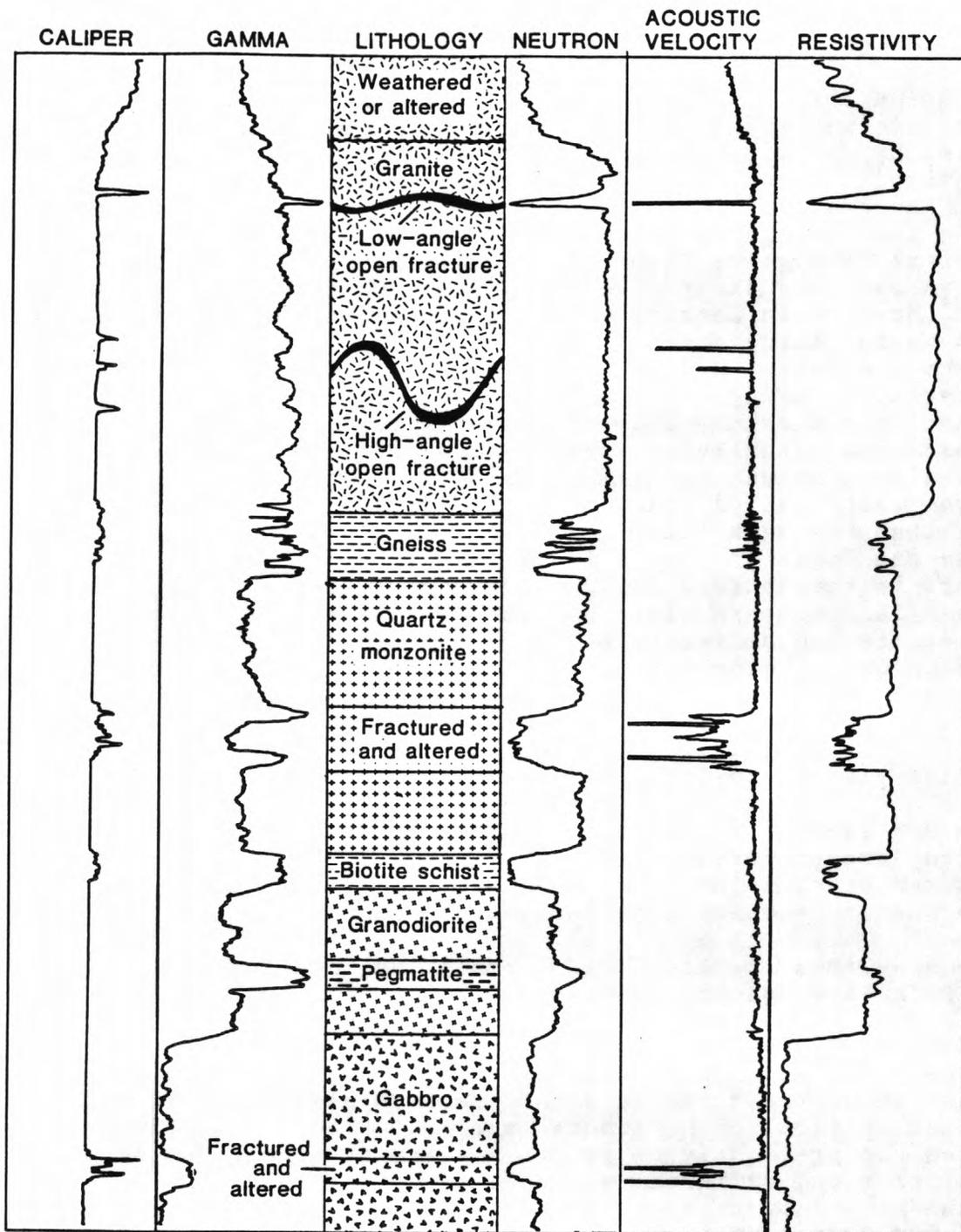


Figure 8. --Typical response of hypothetical caliper, gamma, neutron, acoustic-velocity, and resistivity logs to various altered and fractured crystalline rocks. Porosity increases to the left on the neutron and acoustic-velocity logs; scales increase to the right on other logs.

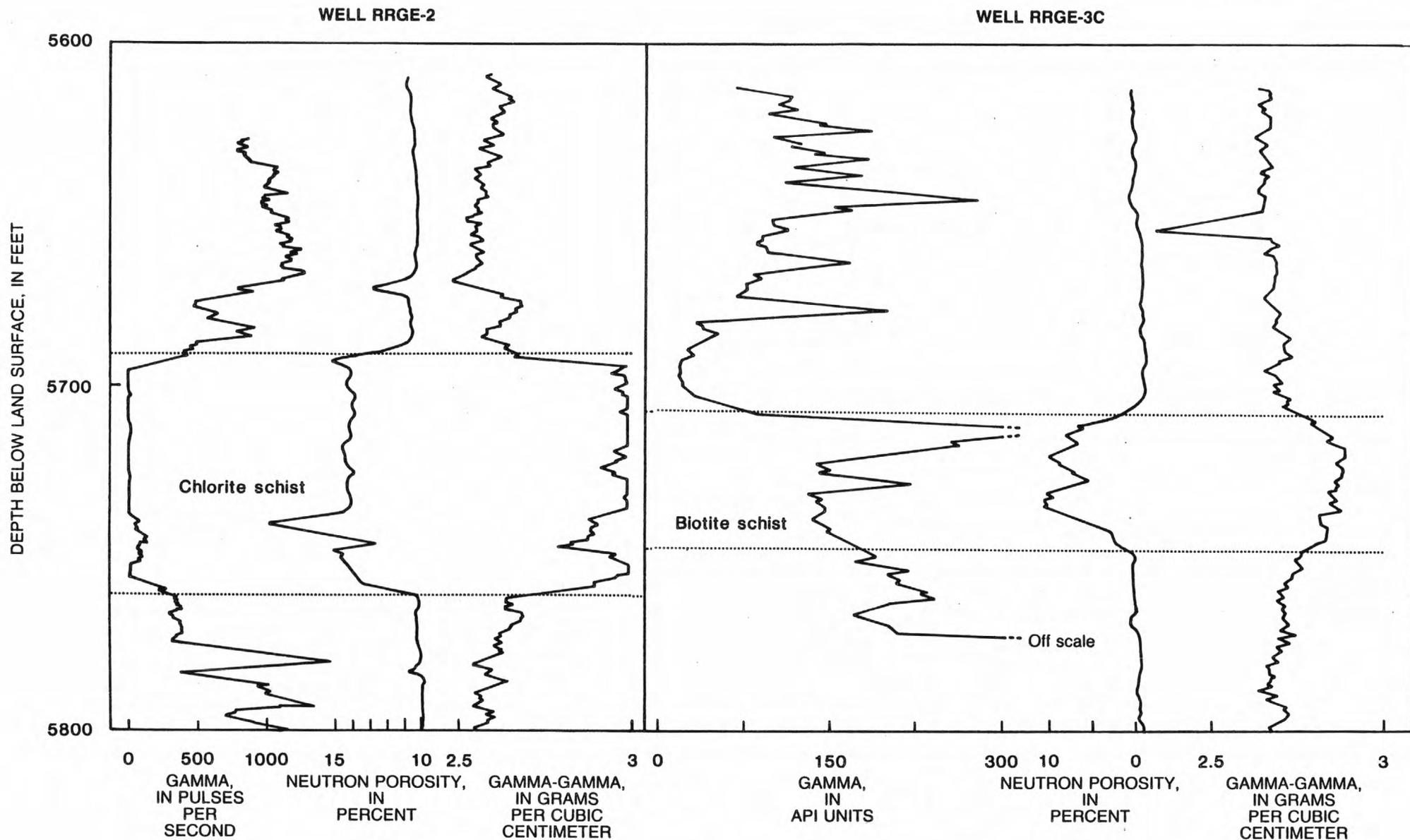


Figure 9. --Gamma, neutron, and gamma-gamma logs for two wells in the Raft River geothermal reservoir, Idaho.

## COMPUTER ANALYSIS OF LOGS

During the last few years, computer analysis of geophysical well logs has become widely used in the petroleum industry but seldom applied in ground-water hydrology. If done properly, computer analysis of logs can provide much additional data for ground-water studies. The large quantity of data in a suite of well logs cannot easily be collated or condensed in the human mind so that all interrelations can be isolated and used. Computer analysis makes this possible. All the major commercial well-logging service companies offer digitized logs and computer interpretation; some offer real-time interpretation at the well site. Several programs are available for purchase that will run on minicomputers and microcomputers having sufficient memory, data storage, and graphics capability. Numerous log-analysis programs also have been written for programmable pocket calculators. In addition to the logging-service companies, several other companies will process logs with their computer-analysis package. Logs that have not been digitized onsite can be sent out for commercial digitizing. Computer-analysis programs have been developed in government agencies like the U.S. Geological Survey (Merkel and others, 1976; and Scott, 1977).

Recent improvements and decreases in cost of microcomputers or personal computers make them suitable for log analysis and economically justified for ground-water applications (Keys, 1986). Geophysical logs can be transmitted over the telephone from a logging truck or another computer to a personal computer equipped with a modem and analyzed and plotted using a spreadsheet program. Although the spreadsheet was not designed for log analysis, a few hours with the program manual and computer will allow someone who understands logs to manipulate the data and plot results similar to those available from commercial-service organizations at a fraction of the cost.

The computer analysis of logs offers a number of advantages compared to other methods used in the past: (1) A large mass of data can be collated and displayed; (2) logs can be corrected and replotted; (3) scales can be changed; (4) smoothing and filtering operations can be conducted; (5) cross-plots can be made between different kinds of logs, and between logs and core data; and (6) calibration curves, correlation functions, and ratios can be plotted, as well as cross-section and thickness maps. Finally, these results can be plotted as publication-quality figures at a cost less than that required for professional drafting. Although all of these manipulations can be done manually, the large quantity of data present in a suite of logs, or in the logs of all wells penetrating an aquifer system, is ideally suited for computer analysis.

The disadvantages of computer analysis are several: The cost may be excessive, particularly for a small quantity of data, and the complexity of the approach may lead to an overestimation of the value of the answers. This is particularly true because most of the algorithms developed commercially for log analysis are for petroleum applications and may require modification for ground-water applications. An understanding of log analysis is necessary before computer interpretation is attempted. Finally, the computer-plotted data are no better than the original log data; if the logs are improperly recorded or calibrated the computer output may be useless until corrections are made.

## DIGITIZING LOGS

Geophysical logs may be digitized at the well site while they are being recorded in analog format or subsequently from the analog record. Onsite digitizing is the most accurate and least expensive; with computers now on some logging trucks, real-time processing of the data may be done. Onsite digitizing also provides backup for recovery of data that are lost on the analog recorder because of incorrect selection of scales. Off-scale deflections lost from the analog recorder will be available from the digital record, if it is made correctly. Some systems permit immediate playback of the digital record to the analog recorder with adjustment of both horizontal and vertical scales. The equipment for onsite digitizing is described in more detail in the section on logging equipment. In most systems, the signal from a logging probe is transmitted simultaneously to an analog recorder and through either an analog-to-digital converter or a digital ratemeter to a magnetic-tape recorder or to a disk. Sample interval and sample time need to be correctly selected for onsite digitizing of logs. Digital sample time is important to the proper recording of all nuclear logs; it is discussed in the section on nuclear geophysics.

The digital data may be printed or plotted while the log is being run, but the true analog recording also is needed because watching a log develop on a chart-type recorder is one of the best ways to avoid major errors in logging and to optimize probe and data configuration. The analog record may show more detail than the digital record because of sample interval or the elimination of the step function present in many plots of digital data. Information on the digital record always is listed on the log heading of the analog chart. This information includes the label on the recording medium, file number, sample interval and time, depth interval recorded, and any calibration information pertinent to the digital record.

Although office digitizing of analog records is expensive and time-consuming, no other choice may exist for old logs. Desk-top curve-following digitizers probably are available in most offices that have a computer. Because of the training needed to digitize logs correctly, particularly multicurve commercial logs, better and less expensive results usually are obtained from a company specializing in digitizing geophysical logs. Such companies are located in the major oil-exploration centers. To have logs digitized commercially, certain specifications or instructions are provided to the company with the purchase order such as: recording medium, format and bits per inch, sample interval, depth shifts, editing required, and plots of the data that can be used to check accuracy of digitizing.

## CORRECTING AND CALIBRATING LOGS

The computer ideally is suited for correcting logs and plotting them with calibrated scales. Depth correction is required on most logs, and it can be made at the same time the computer is being used to make the first plot of digitized data. Most depth errors are caused by operator error or use of a different depth reference at different times, but cable stretch, sticking probe, and errors in the cable measuring system also occur. The most common correction needed is a consistent depth shift for the entire log to make it correlate with other logs of the same well or with core data. A technique for the computer correlation of log and core data is described by Jeffries (1966). Sometimes the logs in a suite will require some shifting to agree with a preselected datum. If depth errors vary as a function of depth because of cable stretch, these errors can be corrected using the equation for the particular cable used. In other cases, sudden changes in depth may occur randomly in the log because of a sticking probe or because of changes in the depth reading which are made manually by the operator when a magnetic cable marker is detected. These types of errors are best avoided, if possible, but need to be noted on the log when they occur. Different corrections for specific depth intervals will produce either overlap or missing data sections that will require editing.

Data from probe calibration can be used to convert a log to the appropriate environmental units. For example, most neutron logs are recorded in pulses per second, which can be converted to porosity if proper calibration and standardization data are available. It is better to record unprocessed log data, such as pulses per second, and calibration data for later conversion to environmental units, such as porosity because it is easier to correct the unprocessed data for errors.

Changing the vertical and horizontal scales of logs independently was almost impossible before computer processing was available; now replotting to produce scales best suited for the intended purpose is a simple matter. To correct for nonlinear response or to change from a linear to a logarithmic scale also are relatively simple procedures. Most probes produce a pulse frequency or a voltage that may be related to the desired rock or fluid property by an equation. For example, many of the temperature probes used by the U.S. Geological Survey utilize a thermistor, which is stable and responds rapidly, but is nonlinear. After careful calibration across the temperature range of use, the response equation for each probe can be calculated to replot the temperature log. The original field copies of logs, both analog and digital, have scales in pulses per second and are nonlinear with respect to temperature. The final computer plot will have a linear scale in temperature. Logs also can be plotted at several different scales to keep the full data range on the paper and, at the same time, to resolve small but significant changes.

## PLOTTING DATA FROM LOGS

Probably the most important technique available for log analysis today (1985) is the computer plotting of data obtained from logs against data from other logs, core analyses, or tests. The most frequently used technique is the cross-plot, which compares the response of two different logs. An idealized cross-plot of log A versus log B in a three-mineral-component system is given in figure 10 (MacCary, 1978). If log A and log B have an inverse response to minerals X and Y, a plot of A versus B will yield the line from 100 percent of mineral X to 100 percent of mineral Y. The percentage of the two minerals can be measured along a linear scale from X to Y. If we add a third mineral, as in figure 10, the relative content of the three minerals can be determined uniquely from the cross-plot. If a fourth mineral is added, the solution is indeterminate, unless a third kind of log is added. There are usually more than three minerals present, even if only in trace quantities, so some scatter of data points will be produced. For a more complete description of cross-plots see MacCary, 1978.

Figure 10.--Format of cross-plot of two logs with three mineral matrices (modified from MacCary, 1978).

A cross-plot of transit time from the acoustic-velocity log versus porosity from the neutron log, calibrated for limestone, is given in figure 11. The data were plotted from digitized commercial logs of Madison Limestone test well number 1 (named for the Mississippian Madison Limestone) drilled by the U.S. Geological Survey in Wyoming. The calibration lines labeled sandstone, limestone, and dolomite were obtained from a plot in a book of log-interpretation charts provided by the company that did the logging for the survey. Such chart books are available at no charge from all of the major commercial well-logging service companies. The appropriate chart needs to be selected for the specific probes used to make the logs. When the cross-plot is entered with the values from corresponding depths for the acoustic-velocity and neutron logs, the approximate lithology and the porosity corrected for matrix or mineral response can be read. Obviously, the logs need to be depth corrected to the same datum before such plots can be made. Similar porosity values on the calibration lines for the three rocks may be connected with lines to facilitate interpolating porosities. The line of data points at 30-percent neutron porosity indicates that the log was limiting at this value, and that some porosity values probably are greater than 30 percent, although they may be caused by solution openings. These two logs indicate that two major rock types are in the interval plotted: limestone and dolomite. The group of points to the right of the dolomite line indicates secondary porosity in the dolomite. Unfortunately, all the petroleum-oriented interpretation charts are based only on the three rock types shown, with the occasional addition of anhydrite.

Figure 11.--Acoustic transit time versus neutron porosity, Madison Limestone test well number 1, Wyoming. The line of data points at 30-percent neutron porosity show that the log was artificially limited at this value.

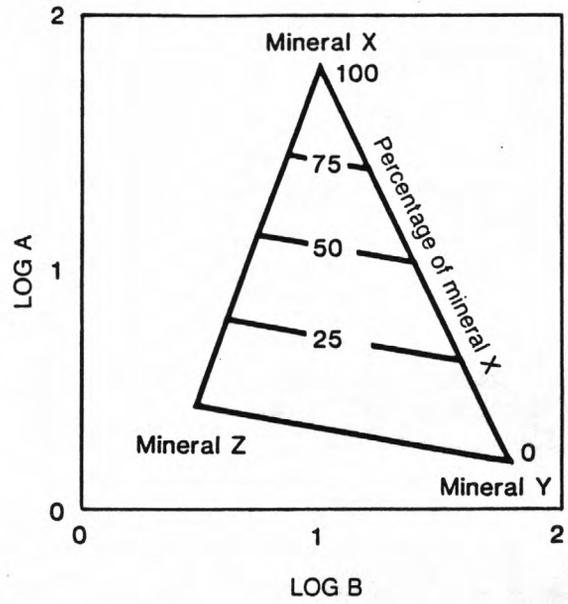


Figure 10.--Format of cross-plot of two logs with three mineral matrices (modified from MacCary, 1978).

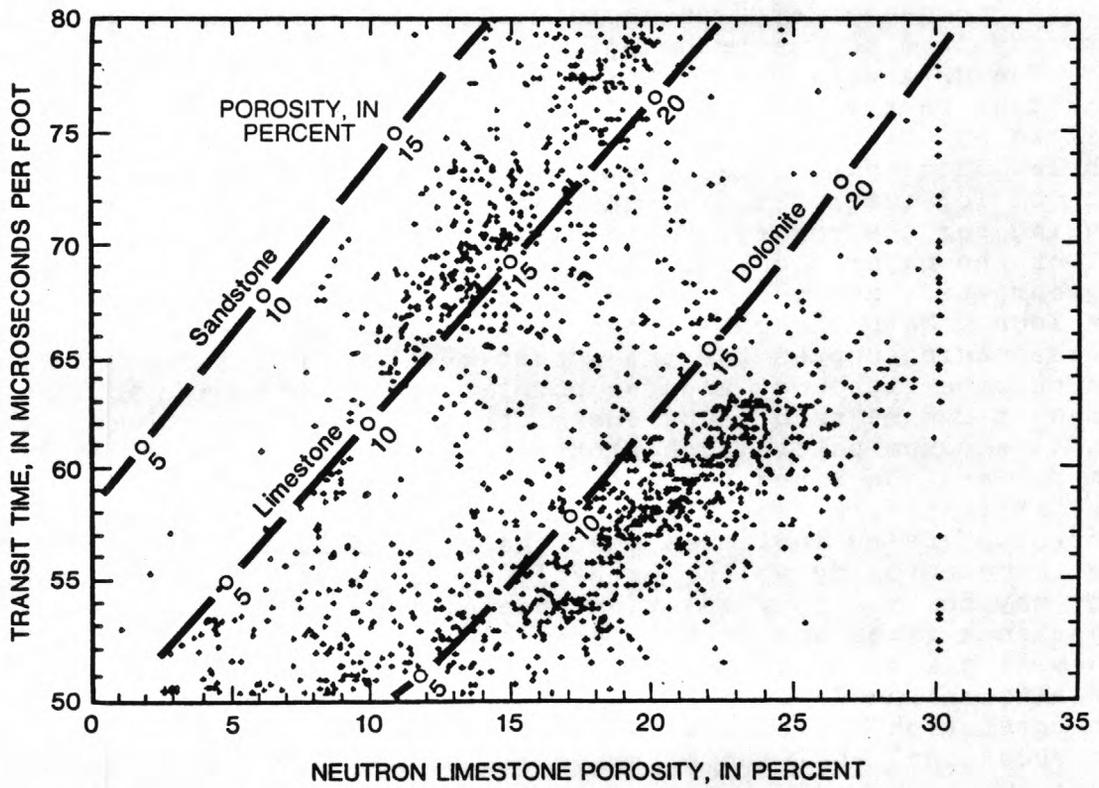


Figure 11.--Acoustic transit time versus neutron porosity, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming. The line of data points at 30-percent neutron porosity show that the log was artificially limited at this value.

A plot of the bulk density from the gamma-gamma log versus the neutron log for the same well is given in figure 12. The plot clearly shows that the neutron log was artificially limited at 30 percent neutron porosity. Commercial logs commonly are limited at this value. This plot also indicates that most of the rocks penetrated are limestone or dolomite; however, the presence of some sandstone is indicated. While making the plot in figure 12, the group of points circled along the sandstone line were noted to occur within a continuous depth interval. A check of the lithologic log indicated that the Cambrian Flathead Sandstone was clearly defined on the cross-plot.

Another kind of cross-plot that can be made using a computer is illustrated in figure 13. The figure, modified from Head and Merkel, 1977, shows a third log variable for an interval in the upper part of the Pennsylvanian and Permian Minnelusa Formation. The third variable plotted on the Z axis is a weighted function, from 1 to 10, of the gamma-log response. The presence of shale is indicated by Z axis values greater than 8. The authors of the paper selected a shale-matrix point by examining trends in the third variable plots. Matrix response for a log is the value for a pure matrix lithology at zero porosity. For example, in figure 13 the sandstone line intersects the 0 percent apparent neutron porosity line at 2.63 g/cm<sup>3</sup>, which is similar to the grain density of quartz. Shale is not a pure matrix mineral and does not record a zero porosity.

Figure 12.--Bulk density versus neutron porosity, Madison Limestone test well number 1, Wyoming. The line of data points at 30-percent neutron porosity show that the log was artificially limited at this value.

Figure 13.--Z-axis plot of gamma-log response versus gamma-gamma and neutron-log responses for the upper part of the Minnelusa Formation (Modified from Head and Merkel, 1977).

Frequency plots appear similar to figure 13, but numerical values in the plot represent the frequency of occurrence of a pair of values from two logs rather than values from a third log. Where points are very numerous and overlapping, a frequency plot is easier to evaluate than a standard cross-plot. The frequency of occurrence of values for each of the logs may be plotted along the axes.

Frequency-distribution plots or histograms are useful indications of the number of major rock types that are present, based on the response of a single log. They also may indicate abnormal log response by abrupt termination of data along either axis. A histogram of gamma log response for a deep well near Raleigh, N.C., is shown in figure 14. The bimodal distribution probably indicates sandstone and conglomerate at count rates less than 1,500 P/S and clay or mudstone at count rates greater than 1,800 P/S. A histogram like this might indicate the cumulative thicknesses of rock types and whether contacts are distinct or gradational. This type of histogram has been used to calibrate old or incorrectly calibrated logs within a single formation and a limited area.

Figure 14.--Histogram of gamma-log response for a deep well near Raleigh, N.C.

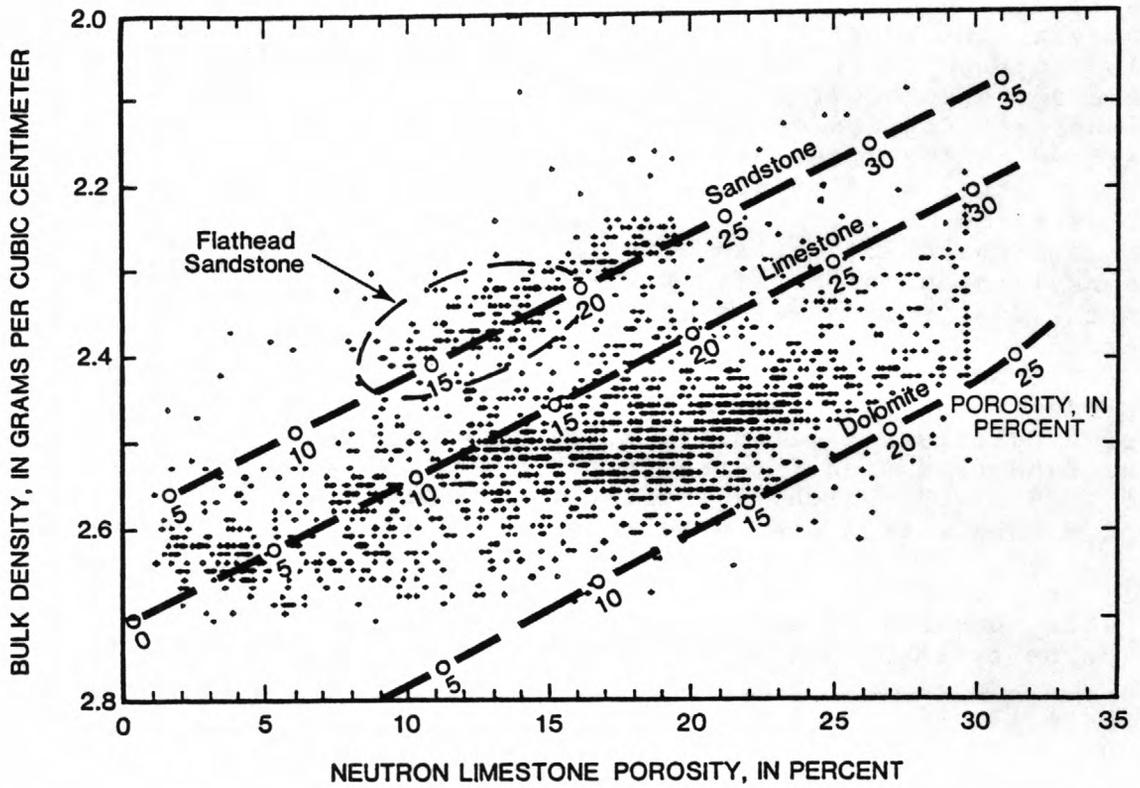


Figure 12.--Bulk density versus neutron porosity, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming. The line of data points at 30-percent neutron porosity show that the log was artificially limited at this value.

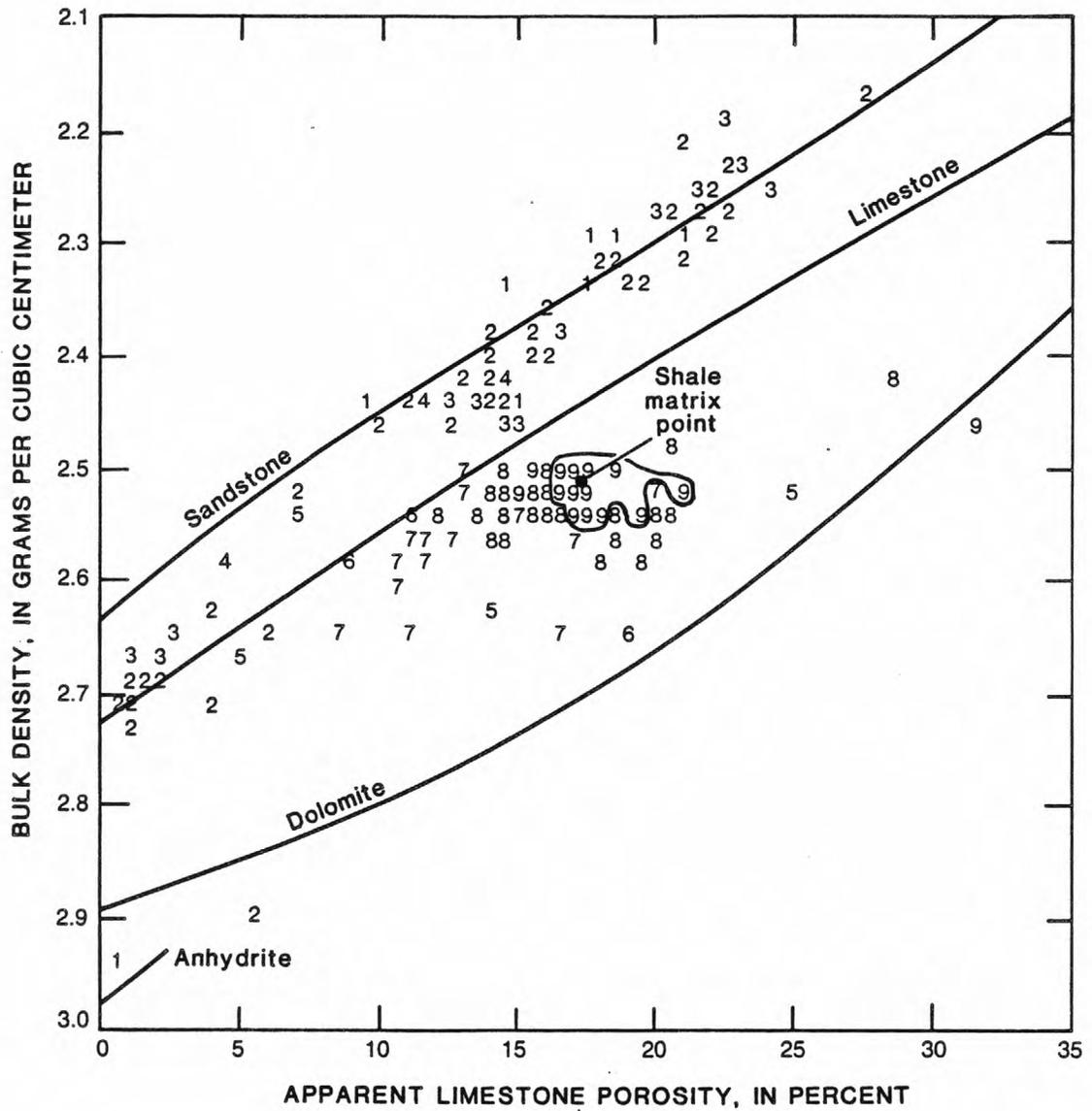


Figure 13.--Z-axis plot of gamma-log versus gamma-gamma log and neutron log for the upper part of the Minnelusa Formation. (Modified from Head and Merkel, 1977.)

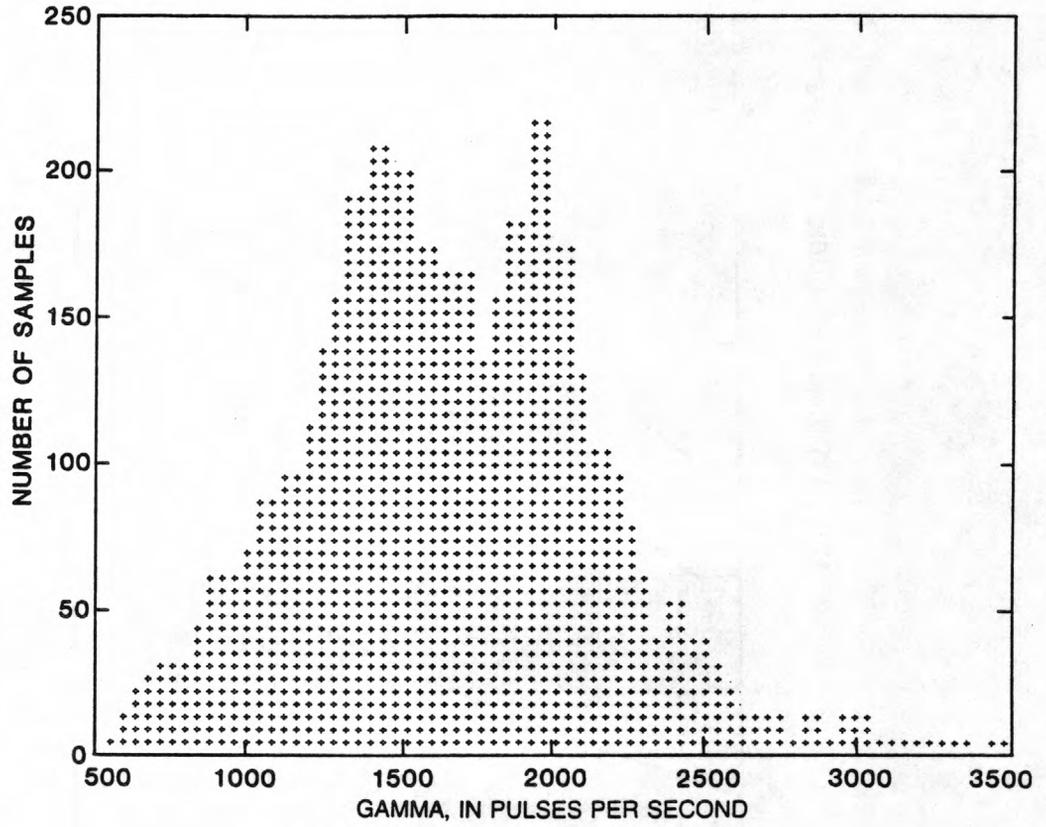


Figure 14.--Histogram of gamma-log response for a deep well near Raleigh, N.C.

An example of the kind of final product that might result from the computer analysis of logs is given in figure 15. The plot was based on well logs of the Cretaceous Edwards Limestone near San Antonio, Tex.; the program was developed by Merkel and others (1976) of the U.S. Geological Survey. Porosity, dolomite, limestone, and sandstone as percentages of total rock mass are shown in figure 15. Bulk density, matrix density, and secondary porosity also are shown. The Edwards Limestone is most permeable in intervals with the largest secondary porosity. Merkel and others (1976) also computed logs of thermal conductivity, heat flow, permeability, and apparent water resistivity. They used a linear-programming algorithm that allowed the analyst to weight the log data according to the probable data quality determined by examining logs and from cross-plots. Many core analyses were available to calibrate the logs and to validate the final results.

Figure 15.-- Computer plots of lithology, bulk density, matrix density, and secondary porosity based on well logs of the Edwards Limestone near San Antonio, Texas (modified from Merkel and others, 1976).

Several computer programs are available commercially for the analysis of geophysical logs, in addition to those used by the service companies for their own logs. These programs generally were written for petroleum-oriented applications, but some may be useful in ground-water hydrology. In any event, if computer-log analysis is used without knowing the basis for the algorithms, errors may result. The logs need to be analyzed by the local hydrologist, based on as complete knowledge of the study area as possible, rather than relying on "canned" computer analyses available from logging companies.

The validity of computer analyses needs to be evaluated in each geohydrologic environment. Many of the programs are limited because they are restricted to three rock types: limestone, dolomite, or sandstone. A Shale correction may be added by using gamma logs; igneous and metamorphic rocks are not considered. Water-saturation problems are a major part of the commercial software packages for log analysis because of the importance of saturation in oil recovery. Almost all ground-water applications would be considered 100 percent saturated. Some companies use the term "index" when plotting such computer-calculated values as permeability and porosity. The term is used as a qualifier to indicate that true permeability or porosity are not being plotted. The log-interpretation equations used in computer analyses are mostly empirical, specific to the rocks commonly present in oil fields, and may not be applicable to a ground-water environment.

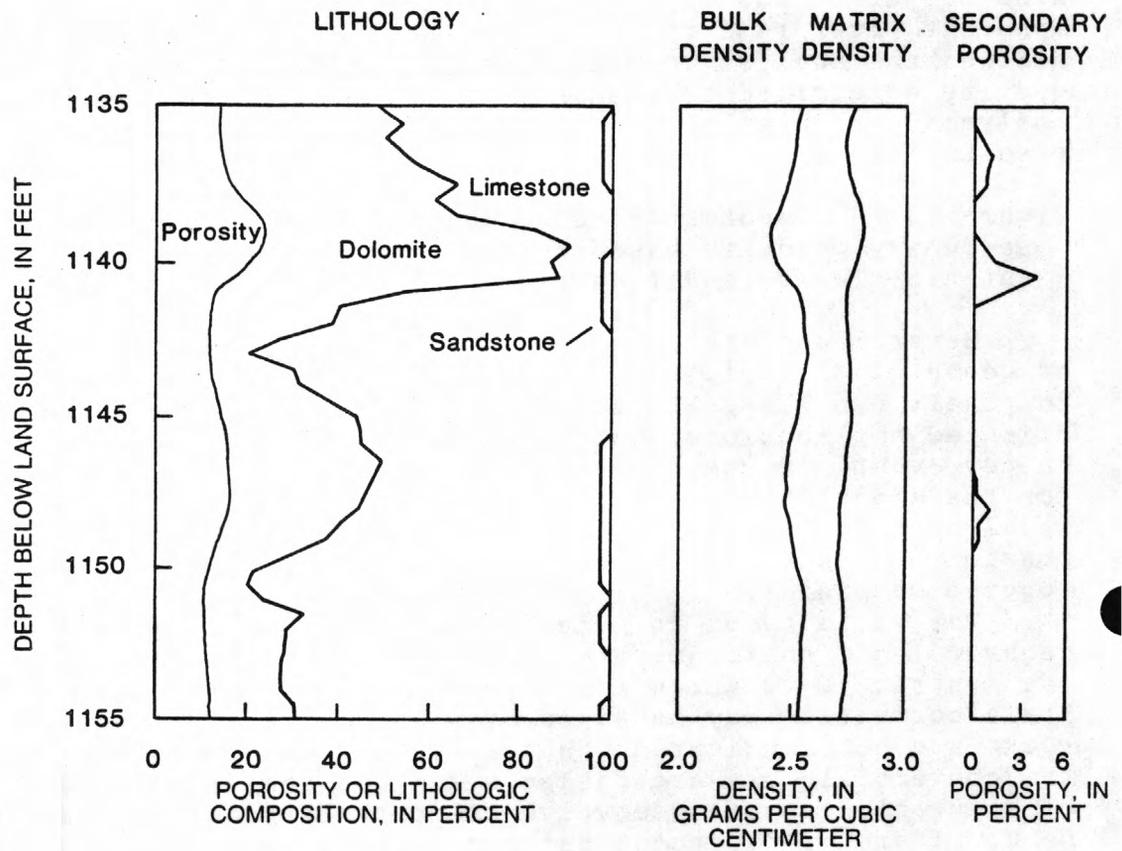
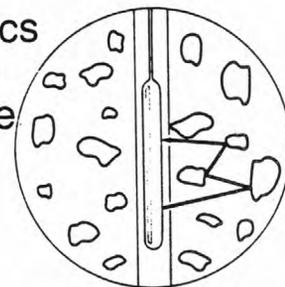


Figure 15.--Computer plots of lithology, bulk density, matrix density, and secondary porosity based on well logs of the Edwards Limestone near San Antonio, Tex. (from Merkel and others, 1976).



## PETROPHYSICS AND LOG RESPONSE

The response of geophysical well logs is affected by several important factors: the rock matrix, the interstitial fluids, the borehole temperature, the construction of the well, and fluids in the well. For most applications, responses to the first two factors are desired, but are generally inseparable; response caused by the construction of the well usually is an extraneous or undesired response. Aspects of petrophysics that are most important in understanding log response are: (1) the chemical composition of the rock or sediment, (2) the shape and size distribution of the grains or crystals, (3) size, shape, continuity and filling of the pore spaces, and (4) primary or secondary structures such as bedding and fractures. Well logging for physical properties is discussed in much greater detail by Hearst and Nelson, 1985.

### MINERAL COMPOSITION

Chemical composition of either crystals or detrital grains in a rock matrix or unconsolidated sediment has a substantial effect on the response of nuclear and electric logs. For example, calibration of neutron and gamma-gamma logs needs to be done in pits or core holes where the chemical composition of the rock matrix is similar to that expected to be present during logging. Flow of most of the electric current that produces resistivity logs is through fluid-filled pore spaces rather than through rock matrix, however electrically conductive minerals may have extraneous effects on the relation of current flow to porosity.

Because variations in mineralogy or chemical composition affects log response, semiquantitative laboratory analysis is needed for selected core samples in a new study area. When the minerals present are known, standard texts on mineralogy usually provide information on chemical composition and density. The "Handbook of Chemistry and Physics" (Chemical Rubber Co. Press Inc., 1981) is useful for obtaining this type of information and some data on resistivity and nuclear characteristics. The physical, chemical, and nuclear characteristics of major rock-forming minerals that may affect log analysis are discussed in some of the formation-evaluation handbooks and log-interpretation chart books available from the major commercial logging-service companies. Addresses of these companies are found in issues of the "Log Analyst," published by the Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, Houston, Tex.

## POROSITY

Porosity of rocks affects the response of many geophysical logs; neutron, gamma-gamma, and acoustic-velocity logs commonly are incorrectly called porosity logs. The various electric logs also respond to porosity. Different types of logs respond to total, effective, and primary or secondary porosity in dissimilar ways. To understand the effect of different types of porosity on logs, the type of porosity being measured using core or interpreted from logs needs to be defined. Because the terminology varies somewhat among various groups working with logs, definitions are provided in this text and in the glossary that will be used throughout this manual. Porosity is defined as the ratio of the void volume of a porous medium to the total volume, expressed as a decimal fraction or a percentage. In well-logging literature, the term porosity commonly is used without definition and without the modifying terms "total" or "effective." When the term "porosity" is used without a modifier in this manual, it refers to total porosity, and it includes all pore spaces, whether they are interconnected or not. Effective porosity includes only those pores that are interconnected, and, therefore, that are effective in transmitting fluids and electrical current. Effective and total porosity are nearly the same in most detrital sedimentary rocks; however, in some carbonate and volcanic rocks, isolated pores may be common. Primary porosity includes porosity developed during the final stages of sedimentation, or porosity present at the time of deposition; it usually is intergranular and relatively uniform. Secondary porosity develops after deposition and usually is present as nonuniform fractures or solution openings.

Because the type of porosity is so significant in log analysis, it is important to determine exactly how laboratory measurements are made and the type of porosity measured. Laboratory porosity measured using core may be the only practical way of calibrating some logs in ground-water systems; core analyses are necessary to confirm the porosity scales on commercial logs. The common scatter of data illustrates one of the problems with core measurements; porosity usually varies greatly within a small volume, and, therefore, a few samples may not be statistically representative.

The response of specific logs to various types of porosity is described in detail in the chapter on each log; however, a brief summary is appropriate here. The manner in which resistivity, gamma-gamma, neutron, acoustic-velocity, and resistivity logs respond to porosity is summarized in table 1. This table can be used as a first step in the selection of logs appropriate to estimate porosity however, more detailed study is needed before making a final decision. No log measures porosity directly, and the widely used term "porosity log" is misleading. Resistivity logs provide an estimate of effective porosity only when no conductive mineral grains are present. Because the flow of electrical current through pore spaces is affected by the shape of those pores and the conductivity of pore fluids, resistivity logs may be in error when used to estimate porosity. Gamma-gamma and neutron logs may provide estimates of total porosity under the right conditions, when they are properly calibrated. Acoustic-velocity logs also may estimate total porosity, except that some kinds of secondary openings may not be detected.

Table 1.-- Response of logs to porosity

Log	Property measured	Response to total porosity	Response to effective porosity	Response to secondary porosity	Spurious matrix and fluid responses
Resistivity.	Both resistivity and volume of fluid in inter-connected pores.	No current flow through isolated pores.	Responds only to effective porosity.	Detects secondary porosity, affected by shape of pores.	Boundary effects (surface conduction), fluid chemistry.
Gamma-gamma.	Electron density.	Best response to rocks with substantial porosity.	Does not distinguish.	Does not distinguish from primary porosity.	Matrix composition. Substantial salinity. Saturation error.
Neutron.	Hydrogen content	Best response to rocks with minimal porosity	Does not distinguish.	Does not distinguish from primary porosity.	Bound water and other neutron absorbers. Substantial salinity. Pores must be saturated.
Acoustic velocity.	Average compressional-wave transit time.	Only related to total porosity, when it is primary and inter-granular.	Does not distinguish.	Does not respond to secondary porosity under most conditions.	No signal in gas or air.

The measurement of effective porosity is important in determining the volume of water present. Variations in porosity can be used under favorable conditions to estimate variations in hydraulic conductivity; however, in most rocks, porosity and permeability are not related quantitatively. A very small secondary porosity, present as fractures or solution openings, may transmit large volumes of water in crystalline or carbonate rocks. For this reason, and because crystalline rocks are being investigated as possible repositories for radioactive waste, interest in determining the distribution and character of fractures by geophysical logging has increased greatly during the last decade. Acoustic-logging techniques are proving to be particularly useful for this purpose.

#### PARTICLE SIZE, SHAPE AND CEMENTATION

Particle-size distribution and the shape of smaller particles, such as grains, or larger particles, such as pebbles, have a substantial effect on the ability of porous media to transmit fluids and effect the response of some logs. Although no log provides a direct measurement of particle size, fine-grained detrital sediments usually are more radioactive than coarse-grained sediments in the same depositional basin.

Particle sizes of sedimentary rocks penetrated by wells range from clay particles to large boulders, and there is a great difference in their effect on logs. Minimal sorting and large rock fragments produce an inhomogeneous rock. Logs made in such a rock are less diagnostic than logs made in uniform sandstone or shale. Geophysical logs measure the average of some physical characteristic within the volume of material being investigated. As the particles increase in size, the volume measured also needs to increase if the log is to be a statistically representative sample of the material surrounding the borehole.

Flat particles, such as clay, have a minimal resistivity. Flat particles have a greater surface area for a given volume; thus, they have a greater surface conduction, which can introduce errors in measuring the resistivity of clay-rich sediments. Because clay-rich sediments introduce an error in deriving porosity from neutron-logs, analysts in the petroleum industry commonly adjust logs for clay content by applying a "shaliness factor" derived from gamma logs. The error is mostly the result of the relatively large hydrogen content of clay rather than the shape of the particles.

The cementation of mineral grains affects log response and the flow of fluids through detrital sediments. No log responds specifically to cementing material, but the cementation factor or exponent ( $m$ ) is important in the relation among resistivity, formation-resistivity factor, and porosity.

Cementation of grains has a major effect on the propagation of acoustic energy in detrital sediments. Attenuation of the signal is substantial in slightly cemented sediments; acoustic-velocity logs usually cannot be made in these materials. Acoustic reflectivity also is minimal, so acoustic-televueer logs are difficult to make in poorly consolidated sediments. In general acoustic logging of unconsolidated sediments is not done, because an uncased borehole cannot be kept open without the use of heavy drilling muds.

## FORMATION RESISTIVITY FACTOR

The formation-resistivity factor (F) is an important concept in borehole geophysics; the various relations of F to porosity and resistivity can be used to calculate porosity  $\phi$  or water quality from geophysical logs. Archie (1942) defined F as the ratio of the electrical resistivity of a rock 100-percent saturated with water ( $R_0$ ), to the resistivity of the water with which it is saturated ( $R_w$ );  $F=R_0/R_w$ . He also stated that F is related to porosity as  $F=1/\phi^m$ , where m is the cementation exponent, sometimes called the porosity exponent. Many modifications exist to Archie's (1942) original concept; they were summarized recently by Ransom (1984). The more widely used modified formation factor is stated  $F=a/\phi^m$ , where the coefficient a and the exponent m can be calculated independently and are related to rock characteristics.

The coefficient a usually is 1, where clean, shale-free rocks are being investigated, but a may be less than 1, when clay or other conductive minerals are logged. The presence of conductive minerals decreases resistivity within an aquifer; a would be less than 1 as long as m remains constant. Methods also are in use in the petroleum industry that compensate directly for conductive clays; when these methods are used, a would be 1 (Waxman and Smits, 1968; and Ransom, 1977).

The porosity exponent m usually varies from 1.3 to 2.8 when a=1. This exponent is related to some of the same pore-geometry factors that affect permeability, such as: shape of pores or particles, ratio of surface area to volume of particles, cementation, compaction, and anisotropy. The occurrence of secondary porosity, such as an open fracture, will have as substantial an effect on m as it does on permeability. The F calculated from resistivity logs of fractured igneous or vugular carbonate rocks will give misleading results if it is used to estimate water quality. A consistent increase in both permeability and F with an increase in particle size has been demonstrated (Jones and Buford, 1951). Alger (1966) published both laboratory and resistivity-log data demonstrating an increase in F with an increase in particle size.

The F tends to be relatively consistent for a given aquifer within a single depositional environment. The F can be determined from resistivity logs in wells where  $R_w$  is known from water samples or from logs that are properly calibrated for porosity. The F determined in this way has been called field-formation factor and has been used to map the distribution of ground-water salinity using only resistivity logs (Turcan, 1966).

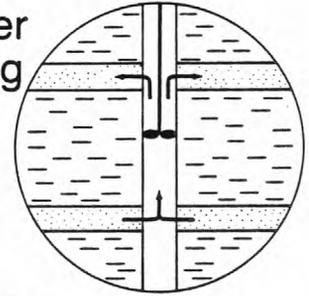
## ROCK STRUCTURE

Primary structural features, such as bedding, and secondary features, such as fractures and faults, can be detected indirectly by log response. Bedding planes can be inferred from logs only when they are contacts between lithologies with dissimilar physical properties. Lithologic changes usually produce inflections on logs; such inflections usually are the basis for stratigraphic correlation from one well to another. Unless the log inflection is very sharp, contacts usually are assumed to occur at one-half the inflection-amplitude difference between two rock types. Thin bedding planes, from a layer of laminated minerals, may not cause recognizable log response unless the logging device has sufficiently high resolution. Both thin, cyclic bedding and graded bedding can be recognized on logs under favorable conditions. Although stratigraphic correlation with logs usually is done by "matching the wiggles," correlation is likely to be more accurate when based on a knowledge of the causes of log response.

Fractures and faults may be recognized on logs if they are wide enough to be resolved by the device in use or if they are marked by changes in rock type or alteration. Many fractures are too thin for recognition by any logging devices except those with the highest resolution, like the acoustic televiewer. Only the acoustic televiewer, borehole television, and the dipmeter provide data that can be interpreted in terms of the dip and strike of planar structures, like bedding planes or fractures. The potential for error in the correlation of planar structures between boreholes needs to be recognized. One potential source of errors is produced by deviation of boreholes. All deep boreholes are deviated from the vertical, unless very careful control of drilling procedures is maintained. Borehole-deviation logs need to be obtained and corrections need to be made before three-dimensional information on bedding or fractures is valid. More information on this subject is included in the sections on borehole effects and the acoustic televiewer.

The location, orientation, and character of fractures is essential to understanding the flow of ground water in many crystalline rocks and hard sedimentary rocks. In crystalline rocks, almost all flow is through fractures, even though such rocks may have a minimal porosity. Widespread logging of wells in crystalline rocks in recent years indicates that most of the flow may be through one or several discrete fractures, even though a large number may have been intersected by the borehole. The significance of a few conductive fractures to rock permeability has been demonstrated in both geothermal reservoirs and in the Canadian Shield (Keys and Sullivan, 1979; Keys, 1984).

## Ground-Water Flow and Log Response



### GROUND-WATER FLOW AND LOG RESPONSE

Measurements of the flow of ground water and its relation to permeability and specific yield are among the most important objectives of borehole geophysics in water-resources investigations. Although no log measures permeability directly, several kinds of logs will indicate where water is moving into or out of a well. The relative magnitude of the permeability of discrete depth intervals can be estimated from flowmeter logs. Moisture content and specific yield also can be measured with properly calibrated logging equipment under the proper conditions.

### WELL HYDRAULICS

The uncased or screened interval of many wells provides a short circuit for vertical flow if two or more permeable intervals with different hydraulic heads are intersected. Vertical flow commonly is detected when several hundred feet or more of uncased borehole are available for logging. Flow may be in either direction or upward in one depth interval and downward in another depth interval in the same well. Convective movement within a well caused by thermal gradients is common; the interpretation problems caused by convective flow are discussed in the section on temperature logging.

Temperature logs, impeller-flowmeter logs, and tracer logs of various types may be used to measure vertical flow in wells. Temperature logs are most useful for locating intervals in which water flows into or out of a well. Impeller flowmeter logs can be used in continuous logging mode to locate these intervals or in a stationary mode for more accurate measurements when velocity is sufficiently fast. Tracer logging is most useful when velocities are too slow for impeller flowmeters.

When velocity of flow is not sufficient for detection by available equipment, the aquifer system may be stressed by injecting water at the land surface or by pumping the well at a constant rate. Velocities measured in the cased interval may be used to calibrate the logging equipment. Water with temperature different from that of the ground water can be injected in one well and its movement to other wells can be detected using temperature logs (Keys and Brown, 1978). Distribution of water of different salinity may be mapped using fluid-conductivity logs. Both temperature and fluid-conductivity logs will identify the more permeable intervals by locating the depths at which the anomalous water arrives. If proper permits can be obtained, a short half-life gamma-emitting radioisotope, like iodine-131, may be used for accurate measurement of vertical flow within a well or flow between wells.

Caliper logs are essential for the quantitative interpretation of flow in wells because discharge is proportional to the cross-sectional area of the borehole. Using properly calibrated flow-measuring probes and correcting for hole diameter, the relative hydraulic conductivity of depth intervals within a well can be calculated.

## HYDRAULIC CONDUCTIVITY AND INTRINSIC PERMEABILITY

No log measures hydraulic conductivity or intrinsic permeability directly; yet these measurements are essential to most ground-water studies. Hydraulic conductivity ( $K$ ) is the quantity of water that will flow through a unit cross-section area of rock, per unit time, at a specified temperature under a unit hydraulic gradient and is, therefore, a function of both the rock properties and the water contained in the rock. Intrinsic permeability ( $k$ ) is a measure of the relative ease with which a porous medium can transmit a liquid under a potential gradient and is, therefore, a function only of the rock properties.

Computer-plotted logs available from some commercial-service companies may have a scale labeled "permeability index." Although the units usually are millidarcies, the qualifier "index" is used as a disclaimer of accurate permeability measurement. To determine exactly how this index is calculated is important because the technique used may not be appropriate for aquifers that are 100-percent saturated with water, in contrast to the two-phase system, which is the basis for most log analysis in petroleum applications. Although  $K$  cannot be measured directly by borehole geophysics, a number of relations exist that permit its estimation from logs. The basic principles of these relations need to be understood as an aid to selecting and interpreting logs.

A popular misconception exists that porosity and permeability are directly related, although in a limited number of geologic environments a general relation has been demonstrated. A plot of porosity versus horizontal permeability, measured using core samples of replacement dolomites from a well completed in the Madison Limestone, is shown in figure 16 (Thayer, 1983). This plot is typical of the scatter usually obtained; permeability cannot be estimated from porosity values less than 20 percent, yet most of the samples having a porosity greater than 20 percent also are more permeable than the less porous samples. This relation may pertain elsewhere in the Madison Limestone, but this possibility would have to be established by measurement. When secondary porosity, such as fractures or solution openings, contributes substantially to flow, no relation between porosity and  $K$  is detected. Another problem in trying to establish relations of this type is the potential for error in measuring the  $K$  using core and the relatively small size of core samples; these samples are not representative if the rock is not homogeneous.

Figure 16.--Relation of porosity and horizontal permeability for replacement dolomites in the Madison Limestone (modified from Thayer, 1983).

A relation between formation factor and  $K$ , that has been previously mentioned, and a relation to radioactivity from gamma logs is shown in figure 17, modified after Kwader, 1982. These data are from a carbonate aquifer in Florida. Gamma logs usually indicate greater radioactivity in clay than in coarser sediments or in carbonates; any relation to  $K$  needs to be demonstrated by a statistically significant number of samples. This relation has been demonstrated in a number of depositional basins throughout the world.

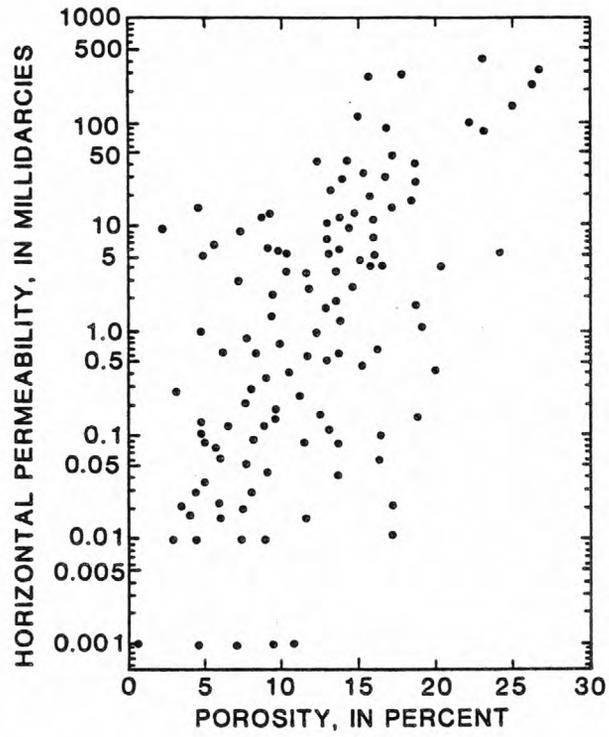


Figure 16.--Relation of porosity and horizontal permeability for replacement dolomites in the Madison Limestone (modified from Thayer, 1983).

Raiga-Clemenceau (1977) suggests a relation between intrinsic permeability and the cementation exponent in the porosity-formation factor equation. Jones and Buford (1951) and Alger (1966) demonstrated that both F and k increase with grain size. Croft (1971) used Alger's (1966) plot of k versus F to determine K from resistivity logs; he found reasonable agreement with values obtained by other methods. Worthington (1977) shows that the relation between F and k may not be systematic because of surface conduction. Urish (1981) obtained the opposite relation to that discovered by Alger (1966) and Croft (1971) and concluded that variations in porosity and matrix conduction limited the method to qualitative evaluation of k. The varying conclusions of these studies suggest that relations between formation resistivity factor and intrinsic permeability must be demonstrated for each aquifer before they can be used in a predictive sense.

Intrinsic permeability cannot be obtained directly from logs because it is related not only to the percent and kind of porosity ( $\phi$ ) but also to particle-size distribution, particle shape and orientation, and the type and distribution of cement. The Kozeny equation relates k and  $\phi$  porosity and other fundamental properties of porous media (Kozeny, 1927). The equation states that:

$$k = \frac{\phi^3 \times 10^8}{2t^2 S_v^2 (1-\phi)^2} \quad (1)$$

where t = the coefficient of tortuosity; and  
 $S_v$  = the specific surface of particles exposed per unit volume of matrix.

Figure 17.--Hydraulic conductivity and gamma response versus formation resistivity factor for a limestone aquifer in Florida (modified from Kwader, 1982).

Specific surface is controlled by grain size. At a given porosity, smaller particle size will decrease k. The Kozeny equation indicates that a combination of logs that provide information on both effective porosity and particle size might allow k to be estimated. Thus, the importance of applying several different logs to the problem of estimating hydraulic conductivity and other hydrologic characteristics is emphasized in this manual.

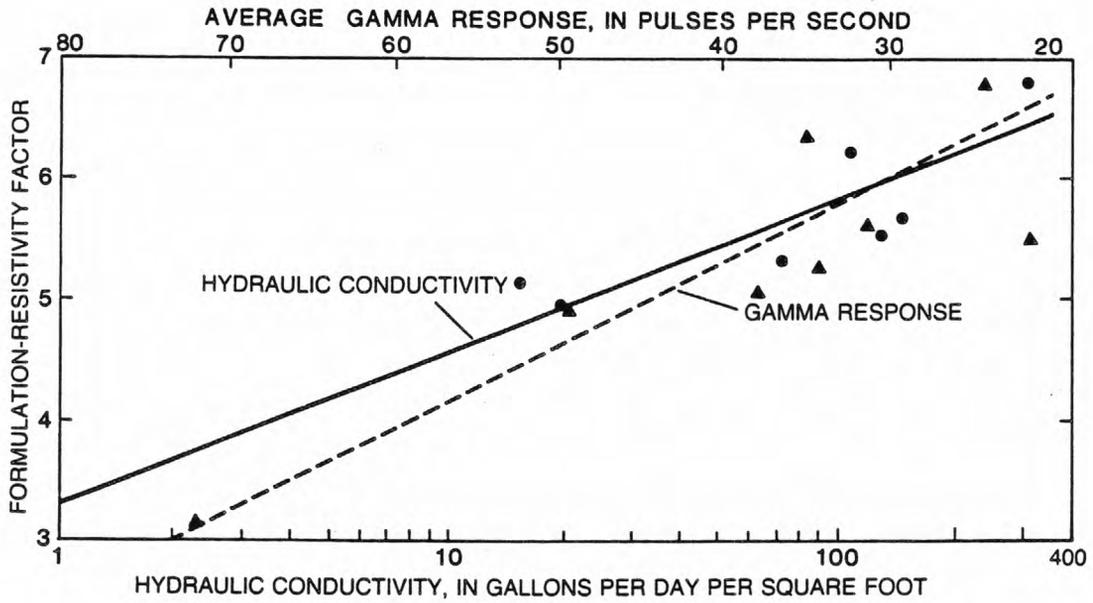


Figure 17.--Hydraulic conductivity and gamma response versus formation-resistivity factor for a limestone aquifer in Florida (modified from Kwader, 1982).

## SPECIFIC YIELD AND MOISTURE CONTENT

Specific yield is defined as the ratio of the volume of water that saturated rock will yield by gravity to its own volume (Meinzer, 1923). Specific yield plus specific retention equals effective porosity. Specific yield also is a function of particle-size distribution (Johnson, 1967). In general, maximum values of specific yield are associated with medium sand with uniform-size distribution; minimum values of specific yield are associated with clay and silt; so under the right conditions the specific yield of aquifer materials can be estimated using geophysical logs.

Specific yield or storage coefficient of an unconfined aquifer can be obtained by using neutron logs to measure the moisture remaining after gravity drainage is complete (Meyer, 1963). The moisture in the unsaturated zone is important because it is related to evapotranspiration and recharge. Neutron-moisture logging can be done on a periodic basis in order to record changes with time.

## INTERSTITIAL FLUIDS AND LOG RESPONSE

Logs respond to the fluids contained in the pore spaces as well as to the rock matrix, although separating the two effects may not always be possible. Only those logging devices designed to measure the fluid column alone provide data without matrix effects. Unfortunately, the fluid in the well bore is not always representative of the fluid in the adjacent rock mass. This problem affects all fluid-column logs, and it can only be resolved through an understanding of the flow within the well, and of the construction, drilling, and testing of the well. Vertical movement in the fluid column, including that caused by convection, will displace fluids away from their host rocks. Accurate information on well construction is essential for correct interpretation of the fluid profile. Knowledge of the character of fluids injected, and the time since drilling, circulation, pumping, or injection, will aid in determining when the fluid column might reach equilibrium and provide measurements that are related to the surrounding rock mass. Under some conditions, many months might be necessary for the fluid column to reach equilibrium, or representative information might never be obtained by logging the fluid column. McConnell (1985) reports that invasion of freshwater aquifers by drilling fluids containing sodium may require production of seven or more pore volumes before the resistivity of the water would be 90 percent of its true value.

Standard logging probes are available to measure fluid resistivity, which can be converted to conductivity, and simultaneously to measure temperature. Specific ion electrodes have been modified for well logging, and neutron-activation analysis has been done experimentally in wells, but neither of these techniques are routine or dependable at this time.

## ELECTRICAL CONDUCTIVITY

Measurement of the electrical conductivity of ground water provides data related to water quality. Most logging probes measure the resistivity of the fluid in the borehole directly, and the reciprocal is conductivity. Specific conductance can be calculated when temperature logs are available. When enough chemical analyses are available from one aquifer, the relation between specific conductance and dissolved-solids concentration can be established for that aquifer. A plot of the relation between specific conductance and dissolved solids in water from 25 wells completed in the Silurian Lockport Dolomite in Ohio is given in figure 18. Such a relation can be used to predict concentration of dissolved solids from conductivity logs.

Figure 18.-- Relation between specific conductance and dissolved solids in water from 25 wells completed in the Lockport Dolomite, Ohio (modified from MacCary, 1971).

The graph in figure 19 allows rapid conversion from resistivity to conductivity and to approximate sodium chloride (NaCl) concentration, in milligrams per liter, corrected for borehole temperature; Figure 19 is extensively modified from one published by Schlumberger Well Surveying Corp. (Alger, 1966). Temperature scales are included in both degrees Celsius and Fahrenheit because most commercial well-logging services still use Fahrenheit. Parts per million is also still in common use in the well-logging industry. Sodium chloride rarely is the only salt present, so correction needs to be made for the presence of other ions. The following multiplying factors can be used to convert to electrically equivalent sodium chloride concentrations:  $\text{Ca}^{+2} = 0.95$ ,  $\text{Mg}^{+2} = 2.00$ ,  $\text{K}^{+} = 1.00$ ;  $\text{SO}_4^{-2} = 0.50$ ;  $\text{HCO}_3^{-} = 0.27$ ; and  $\text{CO}_3^{-2} = 1.26$  (Lynch, 1962). For example, if the chemical composition of water from an aquifer is known to be consistent from chemical analyses of water samples, the approximate fluid resistivity or conductivity that would be obtained from logs can be estimated as follows:

1. Multiply the concentration of each ion, in milligrams per liter, by the factor listed previously and add the results. This concentration, in milligrams per liter, is the electrically equivalent sodium chloride concentration.
2. Plot this concentration in figure 19 at the intersection of the appropriate diagonal line representing this concentration and the borehole temperature; then either resistivity or conductivity, can be read at the bottom or top of the chart.

Figure 19.--Electrically equivalent sodium chloride solution plotted as a function of resistivity or conductivity and temperature (modified from Alger, 1966).

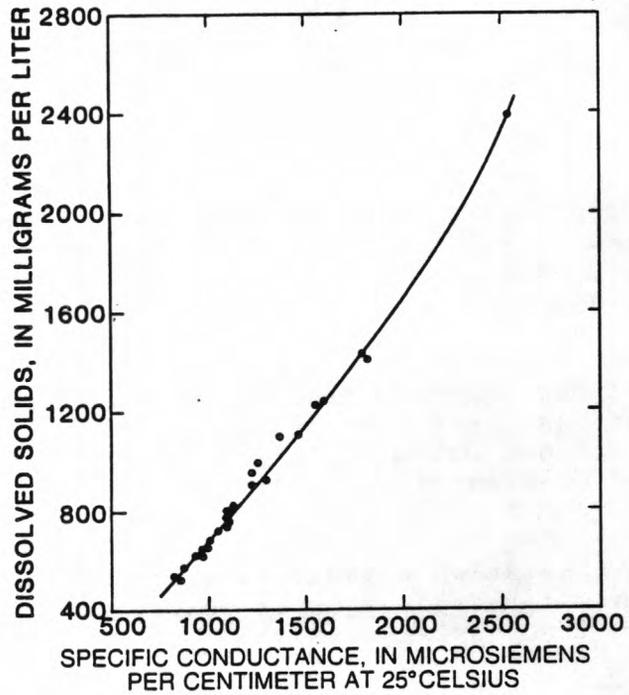


Figure 18.--Relation between specific conductance and dissolved solids in water from 25 wells completed in the Lockport Dolomite, Ohio (modified from MacCary, 1971).

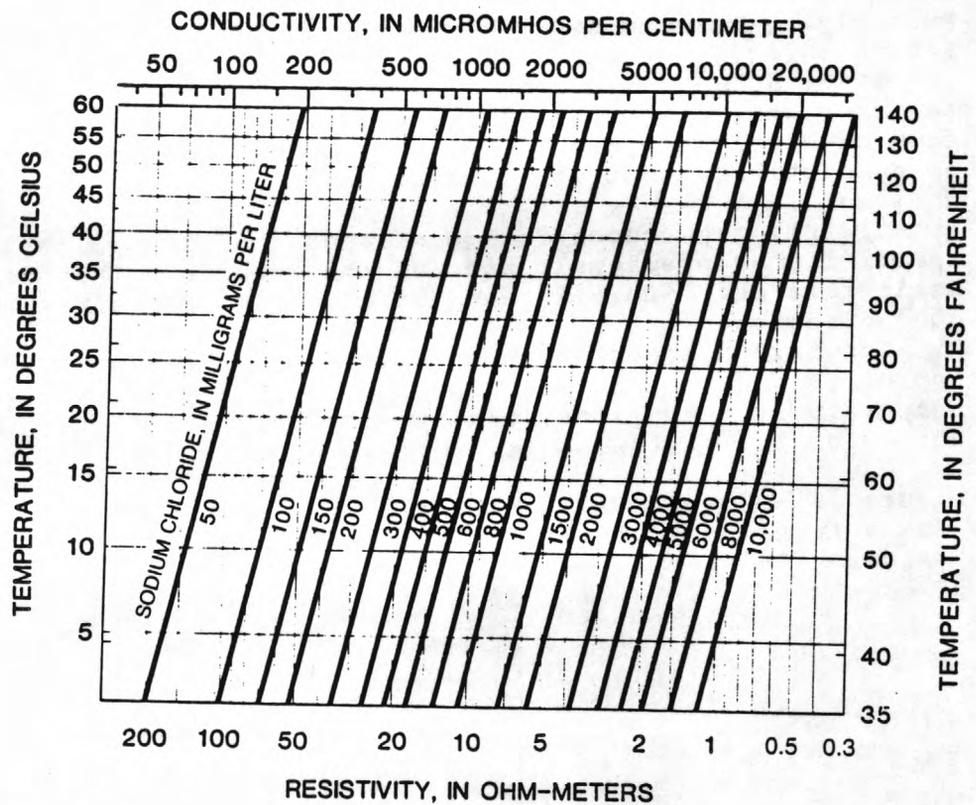


Figure 19.--Electrically equivalent sodium chloride solution plotted as a function of resistivity or conductivity and temperature (modified from Alger, 1966).

Fluid-conductivity logs have an important use in the interpretation of other logs because the salinity of the fluid column can cause extraneous effects on resistivity, gamma-gamma and neutron logs. Although multiple-electrode resistivity logs are supposed to measure only the rock surrounding the borehole, very saline water or brine in the borehole may cause some electrical current to flow through the borehole fluid, producing an error on the log. A large salt concentration also decreases the concentration of hydrogen in borehole and interstitial fluids and increases the density of those fluids. These effects may cause errors on gamma-gamma and neutron logs.

Several problems with fluid-conductivity logging are discussed later. Some probes are improperly designed; so that logs made with these probes are affected by changes in resistivity outside the fluid column. Fluid-conductivity logs need to be made at the beginning of the logging program, before the fluid column is disturbed; these logs need to be made traversing down the borehole. A temperature log needs to be made simultaneously, if possible. The flow system in the borehole needs to be understood to correctly interpret conductivity data for the fluid column and the effect of the drilling fluid must be recognized.

#### TEMPERATURE

Temperature logs of the borehole fluid have a number of important applications in ground-water hydrology. They are essential in the search for hot ground water that might be a source for geothermal energy. These logs can also be a guide to the source and movement of ground water and contaminants. Temperature data are needed to correct for the effect on ground-water flow caused by variation of viscosity with temperature. Water of a different temperature can be used as a ground-water tracer. Temperature data are needed to correct other logs, such as resistivity, and to provide evidence of unwanted temperature drift, characteristic of some probes. Temperature logs also can be used to locate cement behind casing by means of heat released by curing cement.

As with fluid-conductivity logs, temperature needs to be logged down the hole and run first, simultaneously with conductivity, if possible. Although temperature logs can help explain the flow system in a well, corroborating logs are needed. Temperature-logging equipment is relatively simple and inexpensive, but much of the available equipment is inaccurate and lacks the sensitivity necessary for many ground-water applications.

## CHEMICAL COMPOSITION

Although a great need exists for a logging probe that will provide accurate data on the chemical composition of ground water, no such probe is available at this time (1985). Specific-ion electrodes, widely used in the laboratory, have been modified experimentally for well logging, but they have not become commercially available for operation on standard logging cable. Research on neutron activation in boreholes has been in progress for a number of years, but the effort has not produced a simple, inexpensive system that yields unambiguous chemical analyses of ground water. At the present time, the best method for obtaining chemical analyses of ground water is to use one of several types of remotely controlled water samplers that are available to operate on any type of geophysical logger. Logs of fluid conductivity, temperature, and vertical flow can be used to select depths for water samples and to extrapolate analytical data vertically.

## BOREHOLE EFFECTS

The manner in which a test hole or well is drilled, completed, and tested has a marked effect on geophysical logs made in that test hole well. One of the objectives of logging is to obtain undisturbed measurements of physical properties of rocks which can be converted to approximate values for such rock properties as porosity, bulk density, acoustic velocity, and resistivity, but the drilling process disturbs the rock near the borehole to varying degrees. Although a number of different types of logging probes are called borehole-compensated or borehole-corrected, all probes are affected by the borehole to some degree. Borehole effects on geophysical logs can be divided into those produced by the drilling fluids, borehole diameter, and well-construction techniques. All these effects can be controlled to produce better logs, if that is a priority objective. In some situations, it may be cost effective to drill two boreholes close together--the first designed to optimize logging and the second cored in the depth intervals indicated by those logs. Even if drilling and completion techniques are beyond the control of the hydrologist, the effect on log response can be decreased by proper probe selection. An understanding of borehole effects will decrease errors in log analysis. Specific effects are discussed in the chapters on each type of log.

## DRILLING FLUIDS

Although cable-tool and air-rotary methods are used occasionally, most drilling today (1985) for ground-water purposes is done by mud rotary methods, with some augering used for shallow test holes. Fluid is circulated in the borehole during rotary drilling for the following purposes: to suspend and remove cuttings, to support the wall of the borehole, to cool and lubricate the bit and drill pipe, and to seal the wall of the borehole to decrease fluid loss. The fluid in the borehole also serves as the coupling medium for electrical or acoustic logging. The hydrostatic pressure of the fluid column is an important factor in preventing caving of unconsolidated materials. This same pressure can cause invasion of an aquifer by the mud filtrate and the development of a mud cake on the wall of the borehole. The pressure in the fluid column forces the water in the mud (mud filtrate) into permeable rock. The mud cake may decrease the permeability of the aquifer adjacent to the well and, thus, change results obtained from various flow-logging devices. The thickness of mud cake varies with the permeability and porosity of the rocks adjacent to the well. In oil wells, the mud cake is commonly thinner on more porous rocks than on less porous rocks. In contrast, in water wells, the thickest mud cake often occurs on more porous aquifers. Some of this difference in mud cake thickness and distribution may be caused by the carefully controlled drilling mud program used in most oil wells. Geophysical logs can be used to measure the effectiveness of well-development techniques designed to remove drilling fluids and to increase permeability adjacent to the well. Periodic neutron logs may detect changes in porosity; periodic flow logs may determine changes in source and quantity of water during pumping or injection. Gamma-gamma transmittance logs have been used to detect changes in porosity caused by injecting sediment-laden water and subsequently redeveloping the well.

Today (1985) most drillers use special additives to control the weight, viscosity, and gel strength of drilling mud. Artificial drilling mud has different physical and chemical characteristics than the rocks penetrated and the associated native fluids. The chemical composition of water used for mixing the drilling mud is seldom the same as the chemical composition of the ground water in the area. The contrast between the electrical conductivity of the fluid in the borehole and in the adjacent rocks will determine the magnitude and direction of deflection on a spontaneous potential log. Invasion by drilling fluids may change the electrical conductivity of the pore water and decrease porosity and permeability in the vicinity of the borehole. Drilling muds frequently are thinned and circulated prior to logging to reduce density and resistivity contrasts. If this is done the tendency for caving may increase so logging needs to proceed rapidly.

Hydraulic fractures can be induced in consolidated or crystalline rocks by excess hydrostatic pressure during drilling. Drilling-induced fractures commonly are observed on acoustic-televiewer logs; these fractures not only may affect log response but may increase vertical permeability. The circulation of air during air-rotary drilling will tend to remove moisture from the material adjacent to the borehole; thus it will affect the response of logs that provide data on porosity or moisture content. The character of the drilling fluids in and adjacent to the borehole will affect the response of most logs; fluid character needs to be considered in planning the logging operation and in interpreting the logs.

It is beyond the scope of this manual to describe the various drilling techniques and how they might be modified to provide the best logs or the most productive well. A companion report in this series by Shuter and Teasdale (in press) contains an excellent description of drilling and sampling techniques used in water-resources investigations; it needs to be consulted before planning a drilling and logging program.

One technique that is available for determining the extent of alteration of rock and fluid properties adjacent to the borehole is the use of different spacings between the source and detector in acoustic or nuclear probes or between electrodes in resistivity probes. Longer spacing usually increases the size of the volume of investigation or increases the percentage of the signal that is derived from material farther from the borehole. Logs made with focused-resistivity devices and induction logs are less affected by near-borehole conditions than commonly used normal-resistivity logs. A comparison of a log that measures material close to the borehole, such as a microresistivity log, with a log that measures properties deeper in the formation, such as a focused-resistivity log, will indicate the depth of invasion that has taken place.

## BOREHOLE DIAMETER

Although many logs are titled borehole-compensated or borehole-corrected, almost all logs are affected to some degree by substantial changes in borehole diameter. All boreholes, except those drilled in well-consolidated or crystalline rocks, have thin intervals where borehole diameter exceeds bit size sufficiently to cause anomalous log response. For this reason drilling needs to be planned to minimize changes in borehole diameter, and high-resolution caliper logs need to be made to detect such changes. For purposes of log interpretation, borehole-diameter changes will be subdivided into those caused by bit size, where only the average diameter is affected, and thin intervals of considerable rugosity, or roughness, caused by a combination of drilling technique and lithology. Logs usually can be corrected for average borehole diameter, but thin zones of different diameter spanned by the logging tool are difficult to correct.

A high-resolution caliper probe may enable the detection of mud cake or mud rings that are thick enough to cause a significant error in log response. Mud rings commonly are caused by clay being extruded into the borehole; these rings may cause logging probes to get stuck. Mud rings can gradually increase in size, even after drilling has been terminated, and they eventually may close the borehole.

Drilling technique can have a major effect on variations in borehole diameter. The difference in borehole diameter between a rotary-drilled borehole and a nearby core hole in an area where the sedimentary rocks change very little laterally is shown in figure 20. The first rotary hole was drilled rapidly to minimize borehole-diameter changes. The second borehole was drilled very slowly, with considerable circulation of drilling mud to maximize core recovery. Core recovery was almost 100 percent from the well-cemented mudstone and sandstone, anhydrite, and dolomite. The drilling and coring procedure caused considerable variations in borehole diameter, partly because of solution of halite cement and veins during the lengthy drilling process, which included numerous trips with the core barrel. The core hole produced some poor quality logs; an example is discussed in the section on gamma-gamma logging. Although increases in borehole diameter occurred at the same depths in both drill holes, the range of diameter was much greater in the core hole. Stratigraphic correlation can be done with caliper logs in this area because borehole-diameter changes are related to rock type. The very prominent log deflections just above a depth of 200 ft are the result of the solution of halite veins. The very rugose interval below a depth of 300 ft probably is the result of thin-bedded layers of anhydrite and mudstone.

Figure 20.--Effect of drilling technique on borehole diameter as determined by caliper logs. The boreholes are close together in an area of persistent lithology, upper Brazos River basin, Texas.

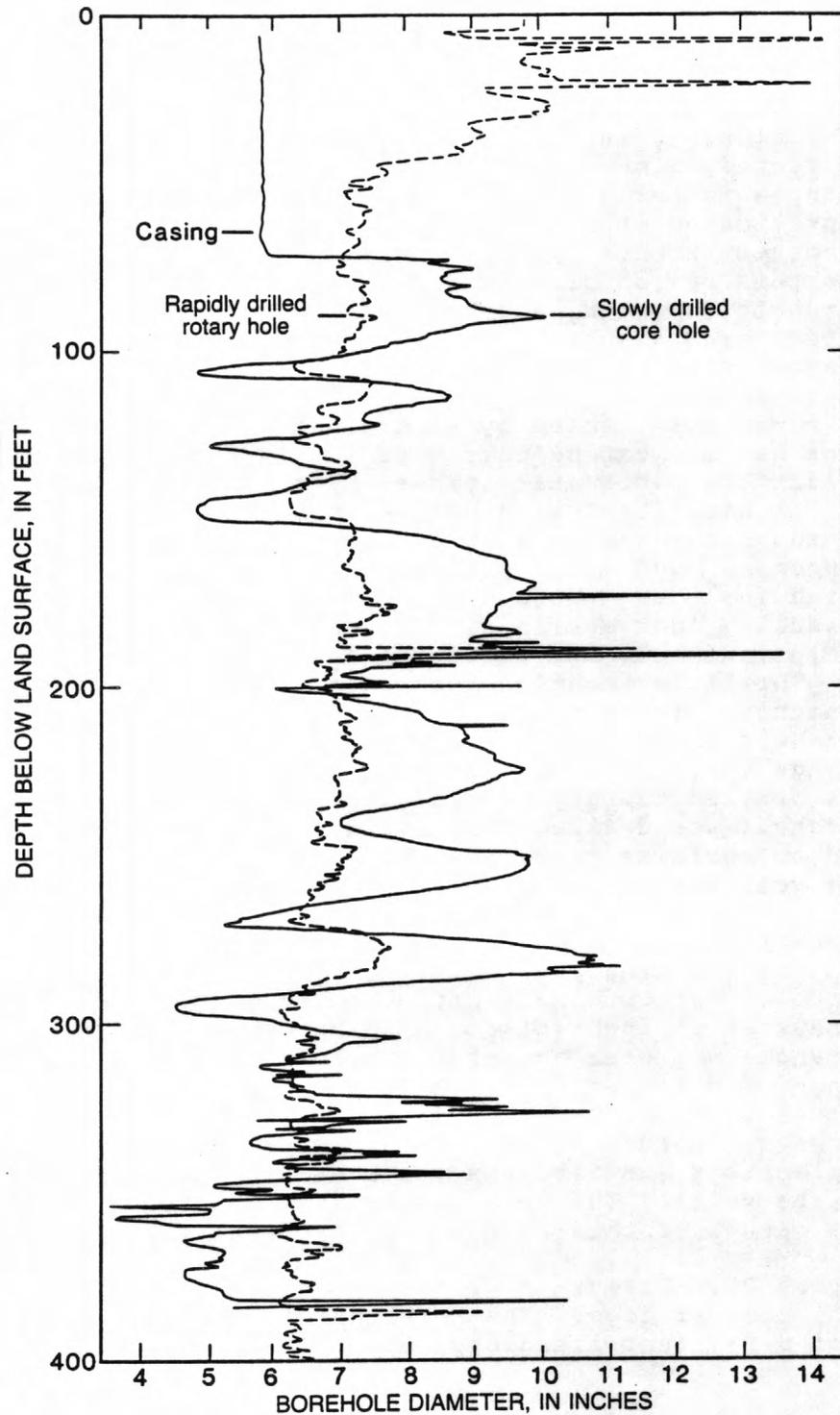


Figure 20.--Effect of drilling technique on borehole diameter. The boreholes are close together in an area of persistent lithology, Upper Brazos River basin, Texas.

Better logs generally are obtained from smaller diameter boreholes. However, the chance of having a probe stick in a borehole generally is decreased if the probe does not fit the borehole too tightly. A difference in response occurs between a centered and a decentralized logging tool; many tools are intentionally decentralized to decrease variations in response caused by changes in the distance of the probe from the borehole wall. Almost all boreholes become deviated from the vertical as depth increases; drilling procedure has a major effect on that deviation. Because of deviation, logging probes are assumed to be traveling along the wall of the borehole most of the time. Forced decentralization likely decreases periodic departure from the borehole wall caused by rugosity, or by changes in direction of deviation of the borehole.

Charts in commercial log-analysis handbooks permit correction for diameter of the borehole, but corrections for rugosity or rapid variations caused by either lithologic changes or by drilling techniques are extremely difficult. The correction charts usually refer to average drilled diameter, not the diameter of a short, irregular interval, as measured by a caliper log. Many borehole-compensated probes employ two detectors at different distances from the source of the signal, and the log is based on the ratio of output from these detectors. In theory, the different length of the paths traveled to these detectors allows cancellation of the effect of near-borehole cavities or washouts. The short-spaced detector is supposed to be affected by the cavity; the far-spaced detector is not. The usefulness of such techniques under a variety of borehole conditions is questionable.

From the standpoint of quantitative log analysis, the best procedure is to eliminate from consideration those depth intervals that have borehole diameter changes that would substantially affect the logs. It is possible that this method could eliminate one lithology, such as salt or swelling clay. Determining the significance of borehole-diameter changes might be done in several ways. Data from a specific probe may indicate the expected magnitude of the response of the log to changes in borehole diameter. If the log being analyzed shows deflections that closely match the intervals where the caliper log shows borehole-diameter changes, those intervals can be eliminated from quantitative analysis. Although such borehole-diameter changes might be caused by a different lithology, log response caused by differences in lithology is very difficult to separate from that caused by an increase in borehole diameter. Also, not all borehole-diameter changes are caused by drilling. Solution openings, open fractures, and vesicles can exist to great depths, and they are an intrinsic part of the rock fabric to be considered during log analysis. An acoustic televiewer can be particularly useful for distinguishing such primary features from drilling-induced borehole enlargements. Borehole-diameter changes behind casing will have a considerable, but undetermined, effect on through-the-casing logs. Thus, a caliper log needs to be made before casing is installed, if possible.

## WELL CONSTRUCTION

The casing, cement, and gravel pack have substantial effects on log character. Some logs are designed specifically to provide information on the location and character of casing and cement. These logs are described in the section on well-construction logging and they are useful for interpretation of logs that might provide information on rock behind the casing. For most wells, nuclear logs are the only type that will receive a signal from outside the casing, gravel pack, and cement, although acoustic logs are a possible source of such data if the cement is properly bonded to the casing and to the wall rock. In general, the thinner and more uniform the material is between the logging probe and the rock that is to be measured, the better the results.

Nuclear logs can provide data about the materials behind the casing, but thinner casing of uniform thickness will produce better results. Changes in casing thickness, such as threaded couplings, will produce anomalies on gamma-gamma logs. Two strings of casing decrease the magnitude of signal from the rocks penetrated. Usually, each string of casing will cause an offset in log response that can be used to locate the bottom of one string of casing outside another. The composition of casing is less important than its thickness and uniformity; neutron logs will detect changes in rock character through plastic casing in spite of its considerable hydrogen content, just as gamma-gamma logs will detect changes through thick steel casing. Such changes may represent a small part of the total signal received by a probe; uniform casing will represent a uniform background to this signal. Accurate information on casing location and character are prerequisite to any useful interpretation of through-casing logs.

Cement and gravel pack present similar difficulties in the analysis of logs in terms of rock character. Uniformity in thickness and in physical properties are important, but they are more difficult to attain than for casing. Varying borehole diameter causes one boundary of this annular material to be indefinite, unless a precompletion caliper log is available. Gravel pack tends to be nonuniform, as does most fill material behind the casing, because it usually includes materials slumped from the borehole wall. Gamma logs can be misleading if made through gravel pack derived from radioactive granitic rocks. Similarly, neutron logs, made to measure moisture content through casing, may give inaccurate results for many months after cementing, because of moisture changes as the cement is curing. Dry sand is probably a better backfill material for test holes where neutron logging will be important. Backfill problems and solutions are described by Keys and Brown (1971) and Brown and Keys (1985).

## GEOMETRIC EFFECTS

Geometric effects are produced on logs by variations in the relationship between the volume of investigation of a logging probe and the borehole and intersected rocks. The volume of investigation needs to be considered in log analysis, because it has a substantial effect on response to borehole characteristics and to beds of varying thickness.

## VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION

The volume of investigation is defined for the purposes of this manual as that part of the borehole and surrounding rocks that contribute 90 percent of the signal that is recorded on a log. The radius of investigation is the distance from the sensor out to the 90-percent boundary; however, these terms do not mean that the volume of investigation is spherical or that the boundary is distinct. Instead, a gradual decrease in contribution to the signal occurs. The size and shape of the volume of investigation changes in response to varying borehole conditions and to the physical properties and geometry of boundaries in the rock matrix. The effect of changes in porosity and bed thickness on the volume of investigation of a neutron probe are described in the section on neutron logging. Not only does the size and shape of the volume of material measured by the probe change, but the porosity and bed-thickness values derived from the log are affected. In the case of neutron logs, the radius of investigation is shorter in saturated porous rocks. In contrast, gamma and gamma-gamma logs will have a longer radius of investigation in more porous (less dense) rocks than in less porous (more dense) rocks. If the drill hole penetrates a series of thin beds with different properties, the volume of investigation will have an irregular shape, which is defined by those properties.

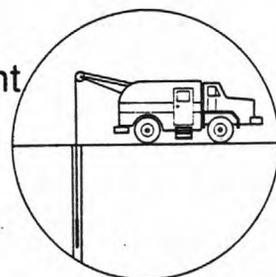
The borehole also can affect the size and shape of the volume of investigation. For example, a resistivity log made in a well filled with very saline water or brine may provide little information on surrounding rocks with substantial resistivity because most of the electrical current will flow through the borehole. Within the volume of investigation, for most logging systems, materials closest to the sensor have more effect than those farther away. The most significant exception to this rule includes some resistivity sondes, where the zone of maximum influence is located some distance from the pickup electrodes. Decentralized, side-collimated, dual-detector probes commonly are called borehole compensated, because they may decrease the percentage of the total signal coming from the borehole and the mudcake. In general, longer spacing between the source of energy and the detector increases the radius of investigation and decreases borehole effects, but also decreases resolution. The radius of investigation may vary from fractions of 1 in. for short-spaced probes to tens of feet for ultralong-spaced probes. Thus spacing needs to be considered in designing the logging program and in interpreting the logs.

Techniques for logging the material between two boreholes can decrease borehole effects. These cross-hole or transmittance logging techniques are experimental; they have relatively limited vertical resolution, but they may be advantageous under some conditions. Both gamma-gamma and neutron transmittance logs have been used by the U.S. Geological Survey between boreholes located several feet apart (Keys and Brown, 1971). One of the limitations to this technique is the difficulty of drilling two boreholes that are straight and parallel.

## BED-THICKNESS EFFECTS

Bed-thickness effects on log response can be best explained using the concept of volume of investigation and its relation to source-to-detector spacing. If a bed is thinner than the vertical dimension of the volume of investigation or thinner than the source-to-detector spacing, the log seldom provides accurate measurement of the thickness or physical properties of that bed because, under these conditions, the volume of investigation includes some of the adjacent beds, so that the signal recorded on a log is an average of several lithologic units. A radiation detector will begin to receive some data from a bed before it is opposite the bed. When the detector is centered on the contact between two beds of sufficient thickness, one half of the signal will be derived from one unit, and one half from the other; selection of contacts at one half amplitude for nuclear logs is based on this fact. If a nuclear or other slow responding log is recorded too fast, contacts will be difficult to pick and apparently will be displaced. If a bed is too thin with respect to the probe spacing, it may not cause any response on the log; this becomes a problem at rapid logging speeds. Contacts on some electric logs are picked at the inflection point where the slope of the curve changes.

Some long-spaced resistivity logs, like the 64-in. normal log commonly used on water-well logging equipment, display an anomalous response, called cratering or reversal, in thin beds. This effect is discussed in more detail under resistivity logging. Thin, resistive beds between less resistive beds actually may be logged as having a smaller resistivity than the adjacent rocks--a reversal. Most multielectrode logs will show reversals under some conditions and may provide erroneous data on bed thickness. A single-point resistance log is valuable under these conditions because it never reverses and provides high resolution in thin beds. Thus, it is an excellent log for determining lithology, but it does not provide quantitative measurement of resistivity. A spontaneous-potential log may provide useful data on bed contacts, but the log tends to be featureless in many water wells. A high-resolution caliper log may provide unambiguous location of contacts in some kinds of lithology.



## LOGGING EQUIPMENT

A thorough understanding of the theory and principles of operation of logging equipment is essential for both logging operators and log analysts. An equipment operator needs to know enough about how each logging system works to be able to recognize and correct problems at the well site and to select the proper equipment configuration for each new logging environment. A log analyst needs to be able to recognize logging system malfunctions on logs and logs that were not recorded properly. The maximum benefit usually is derived from a logging operation where operators and analysts work together in the logging truck to select the most effective adjustments for each log and to provide more detailed logs on sections of interest.

A logging system can be subdivided into subsystems or components to simplify the description. A schematic block diagram of a modern analog and digital logging system is shown in figure 21. The logger components shown in this figure can be mixed or matched in the fashion of modern computer systems. In this manual, logging-system components are described under the following categories: probes, cable and winch (including depth system), control modules, and recording. Specific information on each type of logging probe and ancillary equipment will be included in the chapter on that type of log. Other related information is discussed in the sections of this manual on planning the logging operation, quality control, and calibration and standardization.

Figure 21.--A modern analog and digital logging system.

### PROBES

Logging probes, also called sondes or tools, enclose the sensors, sources, electronics for transmitting and receiving signals, and power supplies. The probes are connected to the cable by a cable head screwed onto the top of the probe. Most probes are made of stainless steel or other noncorroding materials. Electric-logging probes commonly have lead electrodes; acoustic probes incorporate rubber and plastic materials for acoustic isolation and transmission. Probes vary in diameter from less than 1 in. to more than 4 in. The standard size used in most oil-well operations is 3 5/8 in.; most of the probes used in ground water studies are smaller. Length varies from about 2 to 30 ft or more; weight may be as much as several hundred pounds. Some electric- and acoustic-logging devices are flexible; some are rigid. They are designed to withstand pressures of many thousands of pounds per square inch plus a safety factor for heavy drilling mud, based on the maximum depth they are expected to reach.

MODERN ANALOG AND DIGITAL LOGGING SYSTEM

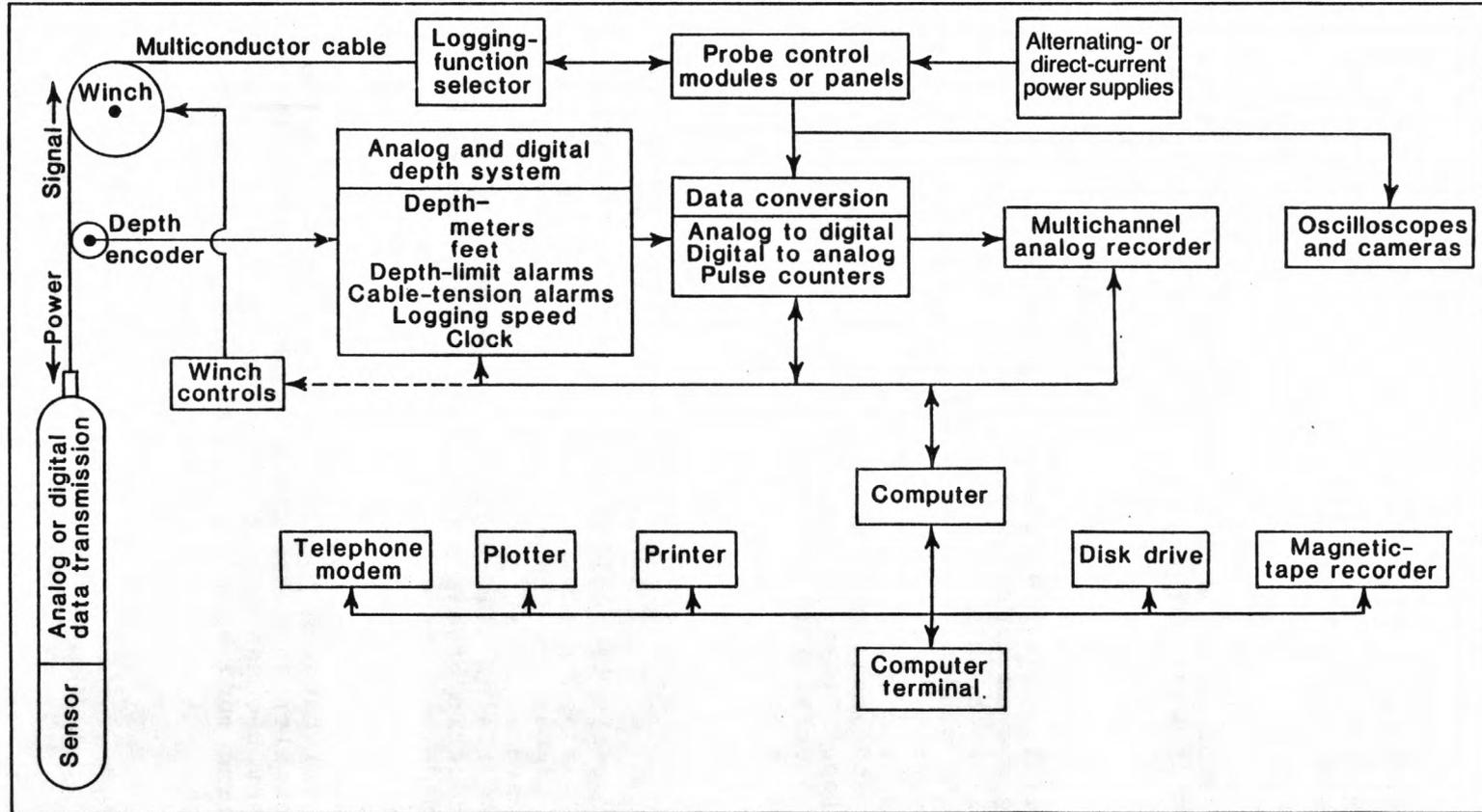


Figure 21.--A modern analog and digital logging system.

Most probes used in ground-water hydrology today (1985) transmit an analog signal to the land surface for processing. The signal usually is a varying voltage or pulses that vary in frequency. The new generation of probes converts variations in response to a digital signal for transmission up the cable. With this approach, some of the data processing can be done in the probe. For example count rates can be divided by a constant to decrease losses in the cable. Data also may be transmitted from several sensors in a single probe. Digital probes offer the added advantage of easy switching and control from the land surface by means of a computer keyboard.

Most older probes, including many used in ground-water hydrology, are axially symmetric and not side-collimated. That is, they send and receive signals 360 degrees from the probe axis; they are not intentionally decentralized. Many modern nuclear probes, often called borehole-compensated probes, are decentralized and side-collimated, and they use several detectors. Decentralization is accomplished with caliper arms or bow springs and they are side-collimated with the appropriate shielding material around the source of energy and the detector. The ratio of count rate from two detectors provides some degree of compensation for borehole effects. Compensated acoustic-velocity probes are centralized with bow springs or rubber fingers; they may use two transmitters and four receivers to transmit an average signal. The operation of centralized probes in greatly deviated boreholes can be very difficult. If centralizers are rigid enough to center the probe adequately, sometimes the probe will not go down the hole.

As wells get deeper and geothermal exploration increases, temperature becomes a limiting factor for many probes, and temperature needs to be considered when selecting probes for such an operation. Few standard logging probes will operate properly at temperatures greater than 100 degrees celsius, and many demonstrate thermal drift before that temperature is reached. Thermal drift caused by changes in temperature of the electronics in a logging probe is common and may produce a misleading log. A temperature log of a well in which temperature drift is suspected may be useful in confirming drift in other logs, but only a test in a controlled temperature environment will provide direct evidence that the problem exists and provide data to allow the logs to be corrected. The U.S. Geological Survey has designed and tested probes that have operated at temperatures as high as 260 degrees celsius, but such probes are large and expensive (Keys, 1982).

Water leaks are rare in logging probes, but they do occur. Most probes are sealed with double O-rings at the joints; faulty O-rings usually are responsible for leaks. The O-rings need to be kept clean and lightly greased and must be inspected frequently for nicks. If a probe does fill with fresh water, it usually is possible to remove the electronics, which are mounted on long boards, and dry them out at the well site, so that logging operations can be resumed. Probes may operate for years with no malfunctions; the most common failure usually is the result of a broken or intermittent solder joint. Commonly a broken joint can be located and repaired at the well site. If a probe cannot be repaired, it usually is possible to send it to the manufacturer or a repair facility and to receive a similar probe by return air freight, so that the logging job can be completed. The replacement probe needs to be calibrated if the logs are to be used quantitatively.

Probes need to be stored and transported with care. Large probes usually are stored horizontally in a probe rack where they can be locked down to prevent movement; small probes may be stored in a vertical rack. Logging probes stored in a strong, well padded box will be less likely to sustain damage.

#### CABLE AND WINCH

Most logging cable is double-wrapped with steel wire to protect the insulated conductors inside and to serve as a strength member. This armor serves as one of the electrical conductors in single-conductor cable. Many portable water-well loggers still use single-conductor cable because it is lighter and less expensive than multiconductor cable. However, in recent years, a trend toward using four-conductor cable for water-well logging has occurred, because it permits quantitative resistivity and acoustic logs to be recorded. Multiconductor cable also allows a large number of logs to be recorded at one time; this cable also has greater strength for heavy probes and deep wells. Cable with seven conductors is standard for oil-well logging and is used in deep water wells and geothermal wells. A teflon-type insulation needs to be used on high-temperature cables; special steel is needed for the armor, if corrosive fluids may be encountered.

Logging cable is expensive and needs to be treated with care if it is to be useful for a long time. Kinks need to be avoided at all times. The cable needs to be wiped or washed before it is stored on the drum after logging in corrosive fluids, and light oiling may be helpful to prevent rusting. Cable wipers and line coolers can be used to clean the cable automatically as it comes out of the well. A line cooler is essential for hot cable because it may crush the drum as it shrinks, unless it is precooled. The cable needs to be spooled on the drum with a level wind; any backlashes on the drum can be carefully removed manually. Shorts or open conductors occur more frequently in mistreated cable and they may require cutting the cable and reinstalling the cable head.

The cable head usually is the most troublesome component in a logging system. Electrical leakage in a cable head is common; when this occurs, the cable head usually has to be reinstalled, a time-consuming procedure. A volt-ohm meter is carried on every logging truck to check for cable and cable-head leakage and shorts. To decrease the occurrence of leaks, the O-rings in the cable head need to be examined and greased frequently, and the cable head filled with grease as specified by the manufacturer. When a cable head is being reinstalled, the correct number of strands in the armor need to be cut so the breaking strength is decreased to less than that of the cable. The purpose of eliminating some strands is to ensure that the cable will part or pull out at the head if the probe becomes lodged in the well. Retrieving or fishing for a lost probe is easier if there is no cable on top of it; cable also is expensive and difficult to grind up with a drill bit if it is left in a well. Drawings and dimensions of the cable head and all probes are kept on the logging truck as aids to fishing for lost probes. With this information, a fishing tool can be made that may enable the probe and cable head to be removed from the well. Companies also are available that will rent or sell fishing tools and supervise the retrieval operation. Proper tightening of the joint between the cable head and the logging probe and continuous awareness of well conditions are important steps in decreasing the chance of losing a probe.

Most winches are powered by alternating-current electric motors or driven mechanically or hydraulically from a power takeoff on the truck. They need sufficient power to break the cable if necessary. If the winch is powered by an alternating-current generator, it needs to be oversized for the load, so that voltage decrease does not affect the electronics. Some suitcase-type loggers have a hand-crank winch, but this is only practical to depths of 500 ft with light probes. An adjustable, powered, level wind is needed to prolong cable life. Slip rings provide the electrical connection between the cable and the electronics at the land surface. Although they tend to be trouble free, they need to be inspected and cleaned periodically, particularly if noise caused by winch rotation is observed on logs.

Logging cable is passed over a measuring sheave between the winch and the well. Electrical signals from an optical encoder, or selsyn, or a speedometer-type cable are used to transmit the rotation of the measuring sheave to the recording systems. The measuring sheave is precisely machined to provide accurate cable measurement and needs to be kept free of dry drilling mud or ice. Accuracy of cable-measuring systems needs to be checked periodically. When the measuring point on a probe reaches the reference point at the well head, the magnitude of any error needs to be recorded on the log. Depth errors tend to be greater with light probes and rapid logging speeds probably because of slipping on the measuring sheave. Many potential sources of depth errors exist, mostly caused by operator error rather than equipment malfunction, and frequent checks are needed to detect them.

Two types of warning systems are used in some logging trucks to decrease the chance of loss or damage to equipment. A weight indicator is essential for logging deep wells to warn the operator if the probe has become lodged in the hole while moving in either direction. The weight indicator may be connected to an adjustable audio alarm so the operator does not have to watch the indicator constantly. A depth alarm, which can be preset to sound before the bottom and top of the well have been reached, can be helpful to a busy operator who has many duties during logging.

The cable leads from the measuring sheave over one or more sheaves at the wellhead before going down the borehole. These sheaves need to be sufficiently large in diameter to avoid damage to the cable and the groove in the sheave needs to be machined to fit the diameter of the cable. For water-well logging, a sheave that will attach to different-sized casing in several different ways can be carried on the logging truck. Surface casing may vary from 2 to 20 in. or more in diameter; wells may be located in pump houses where access is difficult.

If the logging equipment is to be used regularly to log a large number of test holes and water wells, then an adjustable boom with a sheave mounted on the end can save considerable time in setting up to log. A boom similar to that shown in figure 22 also can make it much easier to handle long and heavy probes. Small folding booms have been designed that will mount on the roof of a carryall or station wagon. When large probes are being used and neither a boom nor a drill rig is available for mounting the sheave, a tripod can be constructed out of heavy pipe. A large logging truck like that shown in figure 22 is only necessary if a large suite of heavy probes is carried or if deep wells are logged.

## CONTROL MODULES

Control modules or panels are used to make most of the adjustments necessary to obtain each type of log. Plug-in modular design is desirable, because the modules can be replaced readily in the event of a failure. If a widely used design is selected, modules can be bought from several different manufacturers, and modules can be added as funds permit. Modules also take up less space than panels and usually can be connected to a common power supply. A photograph of the inside of a U.S. Geological Survey research logging truck is shown in figure 23. Both control modules and panels are mounted in standard relay racks. Although this logging truck contains more than the usual number of modules and panels, many of the modules are standard design, widely used in water well logging.

Figure 22.--Large logging truck used for deep-well logging.

Figure 23.--Electronic control panels and modules, and analog and digital recording systems in a modern logging truck.

Most logging equipment includes a function-selector switch that allows the operator to choose the proper combination of modules, panels and power supplies to record each kind of log. On some loggers, switching is accomplished by plugging wires into the appropriate module or panel. A pilot light on each module or panel shows that the power is on. The module may contain controls for adjusting the voltage and current of the power to the probe; meters may be included to indicate these values. Additionally, the module or panel will have switches to select recording scales and positioning of the pen on the recorder. Further selection of scales and positioning usually is possible with controls located on the recorder. Additional controls or switches that may be on a module or panel, depending on the logging function, include: time constant adjustment or smoothing, recorder-channel selection, and internal calibration.

Some modern logging trucks use a computer instead of modules or panels to control logging functions (fig. 24). The operator determines the way each log is to be run, and instructions, based on displayed questions, are entered from a terminal keyboard. These instructions may be transmitted to probes, power supplies, modules or panels, and recorders.

Figure 24.--Winch controls and computer in a modern logging truck.

## RECORDERS

A variety of recorders are available for geophysical-logging equipment because almost any recorder manufactured today can be adapted to this use. Most of the recorders used in ground-water applications at the present time (1985) are of the pen-and-ink type, with one to four pens. Ozalid-type recorders, using light-sensitive paper, are widely used in oil-well logging by commercial service companies; laser recorders are coming into use. Ozalid recorders are suitable for logging very deep wells and recording a large number of curves simultaneously; the disadvantage is that the log cannot be studied as it is being recorded, only after it is finished. Also, it is difficult for the untrained eye to distinguish all the overlapping curves on such a log, even when dots and dashes are displayed.

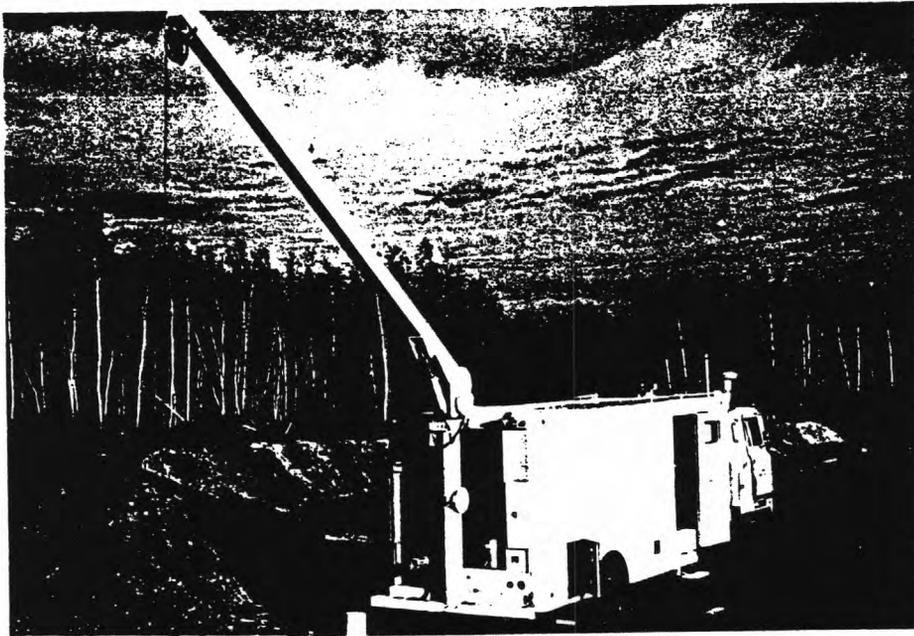


Figure 22.--Large logging truck used for deep-well logging.

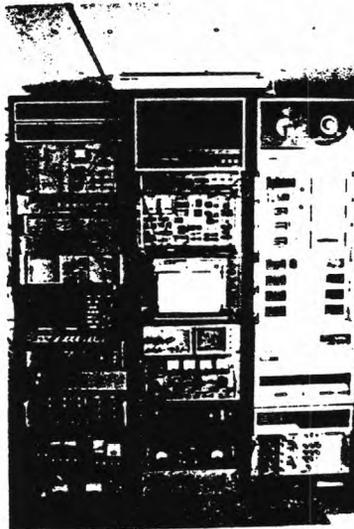


Figure 23.--Electronic control panels and modules, and analog and digital recording systems in a modern logging truck.



Figure 24.--Winch controls and computer in a modern logging truck.

Pen-and-ink recorders are relatively inexpensive and widely available in many styles. Pens are available in many colors, so that traces can be readily distinguished. The common pen types are ink-reservoir or capillary felt-tip, and ball-point pens. All these pen systems have shortcomings, but the felt-tip and ball-point pens can be replaced easily, which makes them more suitable for a logger that is not used on a regular basis. Ink-type pens that are used and cleaned frequently provide good service but they have the disadvantage of leaking ink during rapid pen travel. An important consideration in selecting the type of pen is legibility of copies made on a duplicating machine. Different colors may be indistinguishable on copies, and some colors may not reproduce well.

The number of pens or recording channels is a function of the number of logs that can be recorded simultaneously and the cost of additional channels. Recorders need to have at least two channels, so that spontaneous potential and single-point resistance logs can be recorded simultaneously. Four channels permit two normal-resistivity logs, a spontaneous-potential log, and a gamma log, to be recorded at the same time, if the probe is properly designed. Two or more channels also permit the recording of a log on several scales to provide the needed response range and sensitivity. Extra channels also provide spares that can be easily selected if a channel malfunctions. Most analog recorders permit independent adjustments for each channel; these usually are gain or attenuation and position or basing. Gain allows the operator to control the amplitude of pen deflection for a given probe signal. Positioning permits the manual location of the pen on the chart without changing gain. Recorders generally are among the more trouble-prone surface components of a logging system.

Chart paper is marked with vertical and horizontal divisions consistent with the logs to be made. In the United States, a 1-in. scale in both directions, subdivided into tenths, is most common. In other parts of the world, paper with scales in metric units is used. For oil-well logging, an American Petroleum Institute (API) horizontal scale is used for many logs; a logarithmic scale is used for some. Most of the paper used in these commercial service trucks has two recorder tracks, 2.5 in. and 5 in. wide, and the logs are confined to those tracks. Recorders from 2 to 10 in. wide are used for ground-water applications, but 10 in. is practical for most purposes, except the portable suitcase-type loggers. For the greatest versatility, all the pens need to be capable of recording on the full width of the paper.

When a log is started, depth needs to be adjusted so that even footage to the nearest 10 ft plots on a major division on the paper. Most loggers used for ground-water purposes do not have a system for automatically indicating the depth on the chart paper. Depths frequently need to be manually written on the chart paper, and checks need to be made to assure that the readings from the depth indicator agree with the divisions on the chart paper. The horizontal-scale values also are written on the log at the time it is set up and the pen positions, set by internal calibrators, are marked across the entire span of log response. The selection of the appropriate log scales is essential to obtaining the maximum information from logs; scale selection is described in the section on log-quality control. Recording paper that is too narrow will not permit adequate resolution of a large range of data. Backup curves are provided on most commercial logs as a solution to this problem, but they tend to make the log difficult to read.

Because log headings are not put on the log until after it is completed, all pertinent information needs to be written on the log as it is being recorded, including information about the well, probe, module adjustments, logging speed, and calibration. Log headings can be used as a reminder to assure that all pertinent information is noted.

Many modern loggers incorporate digital-recording equipment, so that data from the probe are recorded simultaneously in digital and analog format. Although digital recording is becoming standard, it will never completely replace an analog record because of the need to study the log as it is being made. Without analog capability, malfunctions or incorrectly selected logging parameters may not be recognized until it is too late for correction. In addition to use in computer interpretation, digitizing of logs onsite has several other benefits. Because the digital record contains all the unprocessed data before it is sent to the analog recorder, no information is lost if the analog trace goes off scale. This allows the horizontal scale on the analog record to be selected at optimum sensitivity to display small-amplitude features. Valid logs may be plotted later from the digital data, even though the analog-surface equipment may have malfunctioned. In some logging trucks, replotting with corrections immediately after the log is made also is possible. If a modem is available, a digitized log may be transmitted over the telephone, or the tape or disk may be mailed, for rapid data processing.

Several different types of digital recorders are used. The most common at the present time (1985) is magnetic tape, either standard computer-compatible tape or cassettes. The larger reel-to-reel tape has the capacity to store more data from deep wells or many logs. Floppy disks also can be used; they have advantages of smaller size, they allow random access, and they also can be used to store computer programs for onsite processing of data. Either a digital display or a printer usually is available to display the digital data being recorded. Most logs are digitized at 0.5 ft intervals; 0.1 ft intervals may be desirable if high resolution is needed in shallow wells but sampling with more than a few data points in one sample volume is redundant and does not improve resolution. Digital recording does not slow the logging speed of most logs. However, for nuclear logs, recording one to three samples of the count rate at each depth usually is desirable. The need to space these samples sufficiently close together for thin-bed resolution may require logging speeds of about 25 ft/min or slower.

Probes that transmit pulses, such as nuclear probes and some temperature probes, require only a digital ratemeter at the land surface to send data to a digital recorder. Probes that transmit an analog signal, such as the analog voltage from resistivity electrodes, require an analog to digital converter. Newer probes that transmit digital information up the cable require no data conversion at the land surface. Digital-to-analog converters are required to replot a digitized log. Replotting may be done on the analog recorder in the logging truck or on a computer-compatible X-Y plotter.

## PLANNING THE LOGGING PROGRAM

The first decision to be made in planning a logging program is the selection of equipment and operators. This selection may be in part based on the needed logs, because some of the more expensive and newer equipment may not be available from all sources. Within the U.S. Geological Survey three basic options are available: (1) Buy or rent the equipment and do the logging with staff personnel; (2) pay for logging by an internal service unit on a job basis; or (3) contract for logging by a commercial service company.

### BUYING A LOGGER

Although ordering a logger from a catalog may seem simple, many options need to be considered that are beyond the scope of this manual. If maximum benefit is to be obtained from an in-house logger that is purchased or rented on a long-term basis, an operator needs to be trained and assigned sole responsibility for the maintenance and repair of that logger. Logging equipment used by a number of people without adequate training and experience will have greater repair costs and more downtime than equipment assigned to one experienced person. In addition to selecting the probes that will be needed, several basic decisions need to be made regarding the logger. How much cable is needed? The answer is at least 500 ft more than the deepest hole anticipated. How many conductors in the cable? The answer is at least four if quantitative logging is needed. What kind of recording should be used? The answer is at least two-pen analog, or four pen analog if multi-conductor cable is used, and digital recording if computer log-analysis techniques are to be used. Owning your own logging equipment is only justified if it will be used on a regular basis. The main advantages of having your own equipment are: availability whenever needed; complete control over logging procedures; and, possibly, smaller costs per foot of borehole logged.

### IN-HOUSE SERVICE LOGGING

At the present time (1985) logging is available on a fee-per-job basis within the U.S. Geological Survey; major private companies may have a similar arrangement. The main advantages of paying by the job are that someone else takes care of equipment maintenance and operator training, and costs may be less if logging is infrequent. This approach will mean better utilization of equipment but only fair availability and control of log quality. The last factor depends to a large degree on the training and experience of the operators. Onsite quality control by the group paying for the logs is just as necessary for government-owned equipment as for private service companies. The procedures described under log-quality control need to be followed.

## CONTRACT LOGGING

Commercial-logging services are available throughout the United States and in many foreign countries, from companies that range from multinational corporations to one-person operations. The larger companies are based almost entirely on oil-well operations; smaller companies rely mostly on water wells, mineral test holes, or coal-exploration holes. The oil-well logging equipment is larger, and, therefore, more expensive, so that the costs per foot of log are much greater. Oil-well logging probes may be too large for some ground-water test holes, and a large drill rig is needed on the hole to suspend the upper logging sheave. The major service companies only have trucks available in oil-exploration or producing areas, and mileage costs are substantial. In spite of these drawbacks, oil-well type equipment increasingly is being used in ground-water studies and development, because deeper production and disposal wells justify the cost and may require this type of equipment.

A number of smaller local companies specialize in water-well or mineral logging; some drillers own their own logging equipment. Usually, the smaller equipment owned by these companies does not include all the logging techniques available from the commercial service companies; digital recording may not be included. Depth charges, standby time, and mileage costs will be less for these small companies, but they may not have the calibration facilities common to the larger companies. Even if calibration is available, the written agreements or disclaimers from most commercial service companies contain a statement to the effect that the accuracy of the data is not guaranteed.

The total cost of commercial logging may be difficult for the inexperienced person to calculate from price lists, because of the various unit costs involved. Depth and operation charges usually are listed per foot, and a minimum depth is specified. Mileage charges usually prevail for distances more than 150 miles per round trip. The well needs to be ready for logging when the equipment arrives because standby charges are relatively expensive. The customer is required to sign an agreement before any logging is done, stating that he or she assumes full responsibility for the cost of any probes that are lost, the cost of all retrieval or fishing operations for lost probes, and the cost of any damage to the well. If a radioactive source is lost, fishing is required by law, and the well must be filled with cement if the source is not recovered. Probe-protection charges may be paid per probe, or per trip in and out of the borehole, but this form of insurance cannot be legally purchased by government agencies because they are considered to be self-insured. Some government drilling contracts include the cost of commercial logging and the driller may pay for probe protection.

## SELECTION OF THE SUITE OF LOGS

The most effective logging programs are designed on the basis of the information that is needed, the rock types to be penetrated, and the construction of the test holes or wells to be logged. Commonly a complete suite of every log available is made, when an examination of these controlling factors, based on an understanding of the principles of the various logging techniques, would allow preselection of only those logs most likely to produce useful data. Conversely, bringing a logging truck back to a well to record an essential log that was not recorded on the first trip is expensive. For example, an acoustic-velocity log probably will not provide useful data in unconsolidated or slightly consolidated sediments, but a caliper log is essential to the interpretation of most logs and always is made in an open hole. If not enough logs of different types are made, the results from synergistic log analysis are likely to be decreased.

In addition to selecting the general types of logs to be obtained, many varieties of some logging tools exist; examples would be resistivity, flowmeter, and caliper. A bow-spring caliper is inappropriate where high-resolution, hole-diameter information is needed; a three-arm averaging caliper will provide no useful information in a borehole with substantial deviation. An understanding of the differences between the various probes is essential to the selection of the right one for the job. The detailed information needed for this selection is presented in the sections on the various logging techniques. The basic information needed to simplify the selection process among the more commonly used logs is provided in table 2. A quick reference to more detailed descriptions of the logging techniques listed also is provided.

Table 2.--Criteria for selection of logs

Type of log	Varieties and related techniques	Properties measured	Potential applications	Required borehole conditions	Other limitations
Spontaneous potential.	None.	Electric potential caused by salinity differences in borehole and interstitial fluids.	Lithology, shale content, and water quality.	Uncased borehole filled with conductive fluid.	Salinity difference needed between borehole fluid and interstitial fluids; correct only for NaCl fluids.
Single-point resistance.	Conventional and differential.	Resistance of rock, saturating fluid, and borehole fluid.	High-resolution lithology; fracture location by differential probe.	Uncased borehole filled with conductive fluid.	Not quantitative; hole diameter effects substantial.
Multi-electrode.	Normal, focused, or guard.	Resistivity of rock and saturating fluids.	Quantitative data on salinity of interstitial water; lithology.	Uncased borehole filled with conductive fluid.	Normal logs provide incorrect values and thicknesses in thin beds.
Gamma.	Gamma spectral.	Gamma radiation from natural or artificial radioisotopes.	Lithology--may be related to clay and silt content and permeability; spectral identifies radioisotopes.	Any borehole conditions, except large diameter, or several strings of casing and cement.	None.
Gamma-gamma.	Compensated (dual detector).	Electron density.	Bulk density, porosity, moisture content, lithology.	Optimum results in uncased borehole; qualitative through casing or drill stem.	Severe borehole-diameter effects.
Neutron.	Epithermal, thermal, compensated activation, and pulsed.	Hydrogen content.	Saturated porosity, moisture content, activation analysis, and lithology.	Optimum results in uncased borehole; can be calibrated for casing.	Borehole-diameter and chemical effects.

Table 2-- Criteria for selection of logs--Continued

Type of log	Varieties and related techniques	Properties measured	Potential applications	Required hole conditions	Other limitations
Acoustic velocity.	Compensated wave form and cement bond.	Compressional wave velocity.	Porosity, lithology, fracture location, and character, cement bond.	Fluid-filled and uncased, except cement bond.	Does not detect secondary porosity; cement bond and wave form require expert analysis.
Acoustic televiewer.	Acoustic caliper.	Acoustic reflectivity of borehole wall.	Location, orientation, and character of fractures and solution openings, strike and dip of bedding, and casing inspection.	Fluid-filled and 3- to 16-inch diameter.	Heavy mud or mud cake attenuate signal; slow logging.
Caliper.	Oriented, 4-arm high-resolution bow spring.	Borehole or casing diameter.	Borehole-diameter corrections to other logs, lithology, fractures, and borehole volume for cementing.	Any conditions.	Deviated holes limit some probes; significant resolution difference between tools.
Temperature.	Differential.	Temperature of borehole fluid near sensor.	Geothermal gradient, flow within borehole, location of injected water, correction of other logs, and curing cement.	Fluid-filled.	Accuracy and resolution of probes varies.
Conductivity.	Resistivity.	Most measure resistivity of fluid in borehole.	Quality of borehole fluid, flow within borehole, and location of contaminant plumes.	Fluid-filled.	Accuracy varies, requires temperature correction
Flow.	Spinner, radioactive tracer, brine tracer, thermal pulse.	Flow of fluid in borehole.	Flow within borehole, location and apparent hydraulic conductivity of permeable interval.	Fluid filled.	Spinners require faster velocities. Needs to be centralized.

## QUALITY CONTROL OF LOGS

Control of the quality of geophysical logs recorded at the well site is the responsibility of all concerned, from the organization providing the logs to the analyst interpreting them; the ultimate responsibility lies with the professional who ordered and accepted the logs. Commercial logging-service companies require that a representative of the customer (for example, the U.S. Geological Survey) be at the site to sign for and accept responsibility for the operation and for the logs. Oil companies commonly assign a project geologist or engineer to this job, and he or she is expected to assure that the logs meet minimum-quality standards. Neither private-logging companies nor government logging organizations accept responsibility for the accuracy of the data recorded. Agreements signed prior to logging by commercial companies usually include a disclaimer regarding the accuracy of the log data; therefore, the customer needs to assure that the best practices are followed. A quality-assurance program begins before the logging truck arrives at the wellsite; this program requires continuous input from the inspector or observer on the site. The quality control of oil well logs is described in detail by Bateman (1985).

### PRELOGGING CONTACTS

To obtain the most useful data, the logging program needs to be discussed in detail with a local representative of the government organization or the private company who will do the logging. Such discussions also may aid in deciding what logs to order. The following information is needed during prelogging discussions and will decrease the possibility of problems:

1. Purpose of logging--what information is needed from logs?
2. Construction of well--depth, diameters, deviation, caving, or lost circulation zones, casings, cement, screens, junk in the borehole, fluid type, temperature, and pressure range expected.
3. Access for logging--Roads, parking for logging truck, drill rig on borehole (required by most commercial logging companies), well-head construction (in detail, if a lubricator is needed), and time available for logging.
4. Conditions--lithologic, fluid, or hole conditions that might affect log response.

Item 4 includes a number of factors that might not be evident; it is described in detail in the section on borehole effects and in the sections on the individual logs. For example, rocks with unusually large or small values of bulk density may require special scales or probe modifications. If forewarned about large resistivity or inadequate cementation, the logging organization might be able to suggest electric and acoustic probes that would provide more accurate data.

If quantitative logs are required, questions and logging specifications discussed early in planning will improve the data and identify potential errors; examples of these questions follow:

1. How is each probe calibrated and how often?
2. What field standards are carried on the logging truck; is system response checked with these standards before and after each log?
3. What is the range of resistivity, porosity, bulk density, and so forth, within which each probe will operate and for which each probe is calibrated?
4. What vertical and horizontal scales are available? If onsite digitizing is requested, what digitizing intervals are available, and what is the recording medium and data format?
5. Specify logging conditions, such as speed, scales, calibration and standardization, reruns to demonstrate repeatability, and so forth.

#### QUALITY CONTROL AT THE WELL

A geoscientist who understands the project objectives and the local geohydrology needs to be in the logging truck during the entire operation. The observer first will specify the order in which the logs will be made. Usually fluid logs will be run first, if the fluid in the well has had time to reach equilibrium. Nuclear logs always will be run last, or through drill stem if necessary, to lessen the possibility of losing a radioactive source. Logging sequence also will be established based on the need for one log to help select the optimum logging criteria for a later log. For example, single point resistance and gamma logs might indicate the thicknesses of potential aquifers to help select the resolution needed and a caliper log might indicate that certain logs would not be meaningful.

The observer usually makes preliminary interpretations of the logs as they come off the recorder. Based on immediate analysis, reruns can be requested, if problems on the logs can be demonstrated. Usually, at least partial reruns will be made at no additional cost, if the contractor is at fault and the probe is still on the cable. After the logging truck has left the site, no-cost reruns are rarely possible. The observer needs to ask questions when part of an operation is not understood. Notes made on problems that occur can be abstracted on log headings. A few symptoms can be recognized during logging that may indicate equipment malfunctions; these include periodic oscillations, nonlinear response, temperature drift, noisy sections, or rapid transients. Almost straight sections (no horizontal pen response) are possible on a few logs, but generally such responses indicate a problem. If reruns do not repeat within the statistical range expected, the observer may request periodic repeats to determine if well conditions actually are changing. Reruns usually are at least 100 ft long and will include intervals where log values change markedly. In evaluating new logs being made, copies of logs previously run in the well, or in nearby wells, are helpful. If old logs are not available, a description of the rock types penetrated by the well will aid in anticipating log response. When the logs do not appear to be correct, changes in speed, time constant, scales, spacing, and so forth, may improve the record.

The selection of the horizontal and vertical scales that will provide the most useful data and the required resolution without "noise" is difficult; these are among the most important aspects of log-quality control. To some degree, the ability to digitize logs onsite permits more latitude in the selection of scales because later the digitized logs can be plotted at more suitable scales; however, the digitizing intervals need to have been properly chosen for this to be possible. Advice on scales to use may come from the log analyst, based on objectives and real-time analysis of the logs as they come off the recorder. Vertical scales are chosen on the basis of hole depth, needed bed resolution, and ease of comparing with other data. A vertical scale of 10 ft of borehole per inch of chart paper is common for shallow holes, where detailed information is required, but 20 ft of borehole per inch of chart paper is probably the most widely used scale over a depth range from several hundred to several thousand feet. The most common vertical scale for logs of oil wells is 50 ft/in.; 100 ft/in. also is used. The U.S. Geological Survey has used 2 ft/in. or less, where fractures were being studied and where other logs were being compared directly to the acoustic-televiewer log. The selection of horizontal scales is even more difficult, because of the range of data that may be present and the need to detect small changes. Except for temperature and fluid resistivity, logs are recorded while the probe is being pulled up the borehole. Logging up allows the operators to observe the response of most probes, except caliper, on the trip down the borehole, to help select the best scale. Many commercial logs are recorded on a scale that is too compressed, in the interest of simplifying the logs by eliminating multiple back-up curves. The wider paper used on much water-well equipment permits expanded scales without back-up curves. If the data range is too great for the resolution needed, the best technique is to record the signal from the probe on two different recorder channels at different gain settings. Thus, one log will remain on scale, and the other will show the needed detail. This technique is commonly used on temperature logs of geothermal wells where a great temperature range is expected; yet, small changes may indicate depths where water is entering the well. In a shallow well reruns to observe changes or at different scales may be economically justified but in deep wells the cost of standby time and the larger logger may make reruns too expensive.

Logging speed usually is checked with a stopwatch, using the depth indicator, because many logging speedometers are not accurate. Depth read-out needs to be checked against the analog record periodically and at the depth reference point for the well when the probe returns to the land surface. The direction and size of depth discrepancy is noted on the log heading. Depths are recorded frequently on the log. A common practice on large commercial trucks is to manually add a depth correction when the magnetic cable markers differ substantially from the depth display. This practice needs to be discouraged or, at least, a note made of the depth at which corrections are made. A uniformly distributed error can be corrected easily in a computer; random, unknown corrections by the operator cannot be reconstructed. Depth errors that are not consistent throughout a suite of logs usually can be recognized by a careful correlation of anomalies between logs. Core data may provide some information on correct log depths; however, errors on core depths are common. Lack of depth correlation between logs made at various times by different organizations is common and usually results from the use of a different depth reference. Most commercial logs are referenced to the kelly bushing on the drill rig, which may be 17 ft or more above ground level.

Depth errors can be caused by both equipment malfunction and operator error. A mechanical-backup measuring system will help detect errors from an electronic measuring system. Errors from an incorrectly machined measuring sheave or a sheave that is coated with ice or mud will affect both types of measurements. If either the logging truck or sheaves at the well are allowed to move, a depth error will be introduced. The sag in cable from the rear of the logging truck to the well will decrease gradually as weight of cable in the well increases, which will introduce an error. Cable stretch is only a significant factor in deep wells and can be corrected, but errors caused by the probe sticking, while traveling either up or down, are more difficult to interpret. Hole deviation is common and requires correction if vertical depth is required. The recorder-paper drive can slip, and the paper may not be scale stable because of humidity changes. Common operator errors include setting the starting depth on the display incorrectly, writing the starting depth incorrectly, and not allowing for the mechanical slack present in most paper-drive systems.

So many factors must be remembered by the observer to help control the quality of logs that many major oil companies provide a quality-control checklist (Lynch, 1962). These lists usually are many pages long, because they include specific items for each type of log. The checklist that follows is shortened by combining many of the log-specific criteria. Refer to the detailed descriptions of the various logging techniques elsewhere in this manual for answers to specific questions. A checkmark is adequate to indicate that the particular requirement has been met; a note is made of significant deviation from that requirement. Logging programs for special purposes may require additional items on a checklist. For example, logging a series of ground-water monitoring wells at a waste-disposal site will require careful cleaning of probes and, possibly, the cable between wells; care must be taken to avoid contamination of personnel. Log headings that have blanks for a complete set of well and log data also can serve as partial quality-control checklists. An example checklist follows:

#### LOG QUALITY-CONTROL CHECKLIST

Hole no. \_\_\_\_\_ Location \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_  
 Logging organization \_\_\_\_\_ Type of log \_\_\_\_\_  
 Observer \_\_\_\_\_  
 Log heading completed \_\_\_\_\_  
 Depth reference and errors noted \_\_\_\_\_  
 Proper logging speed maintained \_\_\_\_\_  
 Pre- and post-logging standardization recorded \_\_\_\_\_  
 Repeat-log interval \_\_\_\_\_  
 Scales and changes labeled \_\_\_\_\_  
 Curves readable with no off-scale deflections \_\_\_\_\_  
 Sample of drilling mud or water collected \_\_\_\_\_  
 Changes in fluid resistivity recorded \_\_\_\_\_  
 Logs appear reasonable \_\_\_\_\_  
 Problems noted on log headings \_\_\_\_\_  
 Did operator make requested changes? \_\_\_\_\_

## LOG HEADINGS

Incomplete log headings prevent quantitative analysis of logs and make qualitative analysis much more difficult. The increasing emphasis on ground-water-quality problems means that logs will be used more for monitoring in the future and that pre-existing logs may provide baseline data, if they are properly labeled. Lack of information on well construction may make even the simplest log analysis impossible. Log headings may be printed up in quantity, with blanks for each item large enough for all needed data. For small records of geophysical data, such as pictures of oscilloscope traces or acoustic-televiwer photographs, stick-on labels have proven effective in encouraging the recording of essential data.

Log headings may be divided into two basic sections: Information on the well and data pertaining to the logging equipment and operations. Well information usually is provided by the observer, but it is filled in by the logging operator. Data on the equipment and logging operations is best filled in by the operator before the logging tool is removed from the cable. The completed heading needs to be attached to the analog record at the well site. A short reference to the log-heading information entered on the digital recording of each log enables the two records to be related. This reference needs to include the following information, as a minimum: borehole number, date, log type, run number. If necessary, the log heading can be typed out in the office and permanently attached to the original of the log, so it will appear on all copies. The format of a log heading is not important; the information is essential.

The well-information section of the heading must contain all of the following, if available:

- Well name and number. (Lease, operator and field name if in an oil field)
- Location - township, range, section, distance from nearest town, and so forth. (API number if in an oil field)
- Owner.
- Name of driller, when drilled, drilling technique and drilled depth.
- Elevation of land surface.
- Height of casing above land surface.
- Depth reference.
- Complete description of all casing, type, size, and depth intervals.
- Location of cement, perforations, and screens.
- Borehole diameter (or bit size) and depth intervals.
- Fluid type, level, resistivity of mud and mud filtrate at measured temperature, and bottom-hole temperature.

The log information section of a heading will contain different information for each type of log, although the same heading can be used for similar logs. The following information is needed on the heading for each log:

Type of log, run number \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, date \_\_\_\_\_.

Number or description of logging truck.

Names of logging operator(s), observers and date logged.

Probe number and description--diameter, type, detector(s), spacing, centralized or decentralized, source type and size, and so forth.

Logging speed.

Logging scales--vertical (depth) and horizontal, including all changes and depths at which they were made.

Recorder scales--millivolts (span) and positioning.

Module or panel settings--scale, span, position, time constant, discrimination.

Power supply--voltage, current.

Calibration and standardization data--pre- and post-log digital values recorded on heading and analog positions on logs.

List all other logs of the well run on the same date. Also briefly describe all problems or any unusual response during logging; mark at the appropriate depth on the log.

## CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION OF LOGS

If logs are to be used for any type of quantitative analysis or used to measure changes in a ground-water system with time, they need to be properly calibrated and standardized. For example, the gamma log is most commonly used for identification of lithology and stratigraphic correlation; but studies in various sedimentary basins throughout the world have demonstrated local relations to particle-size distribution and to permeability. Such relations cannot be demonstrated, unless the logs used have a standardized response. A gradual change in gamma response across a depositional basin may be the result of a change in the percentage of clay and silt or of equipment drift. A change in gamma response during a period of several years may be the result of migration of uranium daughter products in ground water or of equipment drift. Calibration and standardization also may help establish comparability between logs made with different equipment.

For purposes of this manual, calibration is considered to be the process of establishing environmental values for log response in a semi-infinite model that almost simulates natural conditions. Environmental values are related to the physical properties of the rock, such as porosity or acoustic velocity. The signal from a probe may be recorded in units, such as pulses per second, that can be converted to environmental values with calibration data. Calibration usually is done before going to the well site to log. Standardization is the process of checking response of the logging probes at the well site, usually before and after logging. Standardization uses some type of a portable field standard that usually is not infinite and may not simulate environmental conditions. The terms calibration and standardization are not used in the same way in the oil well-logging industry, so the procedure needs to be explained before the user can be sure what has been accomplished. The basic principles of these techniques are described in the following sections, but the specific procedures for each type of log are described in the section on that log.

## CALIBRATION

Calibration of probe response needs to be done in a medium that closely simulates the chemical and physical composition of the earth materials that are to be measured. For example, a neutron probe that is to be used to measure the porosity of sandstone would not be calibrated in limestone unless the correction factor is known. Calibration pits or models are nearly infinite with respect to probe response. In a model that is infinite with respect to probe response, the response of the probe does not change substantially if either the diameter or the thickness (height) of the model are increased when the probe is located in the center of the model.

Calibration pits or models are maintained by the larger commercial service companies; these are not readily available for use by other groups, although it is possible to make arrangements to use some of the private pits. Four sets of calibration pits or models that are available for use by anyone at the present time (1985) are listed in table 3. The American Petroleum Institute maintains a limestone-calibration pit for neutron probes and a simulated shale pit for calibrating gamma probes at the University of Houston, Houston, Tex.; these have been accepted internationally as the standards for oil-well logging. The pits are available for a nominal daily fee, but they are used enough that prior reservations are advisable. Pits are available free at the Denver Federal Center, Lakewood, Colo. for calibrating gamma-gamma probes. Additionally, a set of three pits constructed of blocks quarried from three different igneous rocks are available at the same location for calibrating several types of probes. The igneous rock pits are probably the first ever made for these rock types. They contain artificial fractures of several different orientations that intersect the borehole and fractures that do not intersect the borehole. These fractures are discussed in more detail in the acoustic televiewer section. The U.S. Department of Energy maintains a set of gamma probe calibration pits in Grand Junction, Colo. This complete set of pits has the desirable feature of providing several different borehole sizes in blocks with the same concentration of radioisotopes. Borehole-diameter effects always need to be considered when applying calibration data to logs.

Table 2.-- Calibration pits available for public use.

[in., inch; ft. feet; g/cm<sup>3</sup>, grams per cubic centimeter]

Name and location	Who to contact	Probes that can be calibrated	Physical properties	Drill-hole sizes	Dimensions of pits	Remarks
American Petroleum Institute Calibration Facility: University of Houston, Houston, Tex.: two pits.	University of Houston, Cullen College of Engineering.	Pit 1: Neutron and gamma-gamma.  Pit 2: Gamma (simulated shale).	Pit 1: Six stacked blocks of limestone and marble; stacks average 1.9, 19, and 26 percent porosity.  Pit 2: Concrete twice as radioactive as the average midcontinent shale; concrete with less radioactivity above and below.	Pit 1: 7 7/8 in. diameter, uncased.  Pit 2: 5 1/2 in. diameter, inside casing.	Pit 1: 6 ft diameter; 18 ft high;  Pit 2: 4 ft diameter; 24 ft high.	Call to reserve. Daily fee required.
U.S. Department of Energy, Grand Junction, Colo.: 20 models or pits.	U.S. Department of Energy, Grand Junction Operations Office, or the prime contractor at the U.S. Department of Energy office.	Gamma calibration, in percentage of uranium; gamma spectra in percentage of potassium; and parts per million of uranium and thorium. Also gamma-gamma and magnetic susceptibility.	Uranium ore mixed with concrete; barren zones above and below. Content of radioactive elements, water, and bulk density known for most pits. Magnetic susceptibility.	Most 4+ in., uncased; 2 to 8-in. hole-size calibration. Some cased, 2, 4, 6, and 8 in. inside diameter.	4 to 7 ft diameter; 4.5 to 16 ft high.	Call to confirm availability; no charge.
U.S. Bureau of Mines density pits. Denver Federal Center, Lakewood, Colo.: three pits.	U.S. Geological Survey, Water-Resources Division, Borehole Geophysics Research Project, or Geologic Division, Geophysics Branch, Building 25, Denver Federal Center.	Gamma-gamma, acoustic, resistivity, and magnetic susceptibility.	Concrete of known density: 1.73 g/cm <sup>3</sup> , 2.33 g/cm <sup>3</sup> , and 3.00 g/cm <sup>3</sup> .	2, 3, 5, and 8 in.	4.3 and 12.5 ft in diameter; 8.2 and 9.2 ft high.	Usually available weekdays; call to confirm; no charge.
U.S. Department of Energy: Fractured igneous rock calibration models; Denver Federal Center, Lakewood, Colo.: three models or pits.	U.S. Geological Survey, Water-Resources Division, Borehole Geophysics Research Project, or Geologic Division, Geophysics Branch, Building 25, Denver Federal Center.	Fracture detection probes, neutron, gamma-gamma, short-spaced resistivity, and acoustic velocity.	Coarse-grained and medium-grained granite and altered diabase with artificial fractures intersecting and 6 in. to 1 ft from the borehole. Known porosity, bulk density, acoustic velocity, and resistivity.	7 7/8 in. corehole.	8 ft in diameter (octagonal); 20 ft high.	Usually available weekdays; call to confirm; no charge.

Boreholes that have been carefully cored, where the cores have been analyzed quantitatively, also may be used to calibrate logging probes. To decrease depth errors, core recovery in calibration holes needs to be about 100 percent for the intervals cored; log response can be used to select samples for laboratory analyses. A computer technique for matching core and log depths is described by Jeffries (1966). The importance of using log response as the basis for selecting cores for analyses is shown in figure 25. The neutron log and cores are from the Madison Limestone test well number 1 in Wyoming. The log is shown only for the cored intervals. Although the overall trend in porosity matches fairly well, average porosity from the core is less than average porosity from the log. A plot of the core analyses versus values from the neutron log at corresponding depths is given in figure 26. Based on the core analyses, it is apparent that porosity cannot be read directly from this commercial neutron log, which was calibrated for limestone. The scale on the log was labeled "porosity index", so no claim was being made for correct porosity values. The crossplot in figure 11 indicates that considerable dolomite occurs in this well, which is probably the reason for the large values on the neutron log. A crossplot like the one in figure 11 can be used to correct porosity values for matrix effects and it does provide values that are more similar to the core measurements.

Figure 25.--Porosity from core analyses and compensated neutron log for cored intervals, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

Figure 26.--Porosity from core analysis versus porosity from a compensated neutron log, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

Because of the possibility of depth errors in both core and logs, and of bed-thickness errors, samples need to be selected in thicker units, where log response is consistent. The number of samples to be analyzed is a function of the variability of the property being measured; a completely homogeneous, isotropic material needs only one sample; an infinitely variable material needs an infinite number of samples. The statistics of sampling are beyond the scope of this manual. The core needs to be analyzed for more than the required properties, such as porosity or bulk density. Mineralogy and chemical composition are important because of the dependence of the response of many logs on rock chemistry. The chemistry of interstitial fluids also may be important; changes in pore fluid during the period the borehole is being used for calibration may cause errors, as will core resaturated with water of different quality for laboratory tests. Laboratory analyses need to measure the same physical property that controls log response, if possible. For example, effective porosity does not control the response of neutron and gamma-gamma logs unless it is the same as total porosity.

Care needs to be taken to assure that a calibration facility does not change with time: either the fluid, rock matrix, or borehole. An example of change would be wear of the borehole caused by centralizing or decentralizing bow springs or caliper arms. A well frequently used for testing the acoustic televiwer at Mobil Oil's Dallas Research Center has three obvious grooves worn by the centralizing bow springs of televiwer probes.

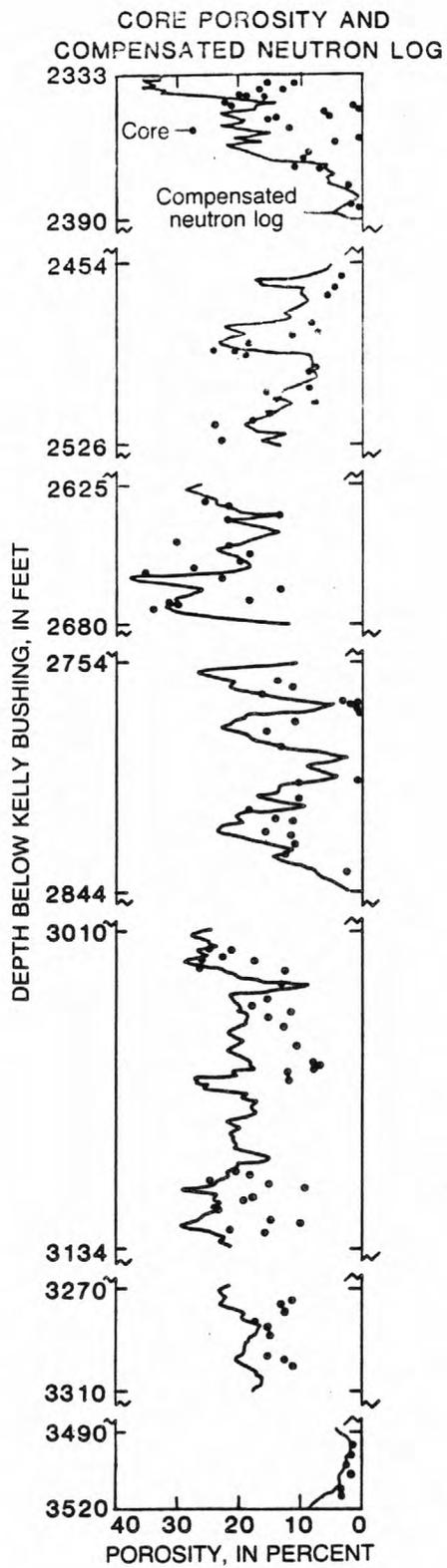


Figure 25.--Porosity from core analyses and compensated neutron log for cored intervals, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

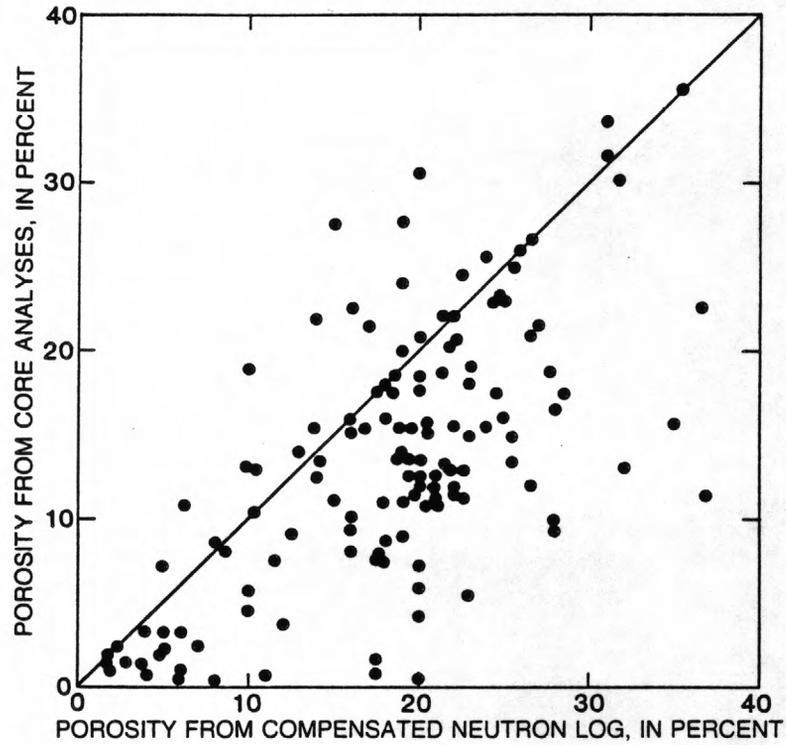


Figure 26.--Porosity from core analysis versus porosity from a compensated neutron log, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

At least three, and preferably more, values are needed to establish a calibration curve using pits; many more values are needed if core is used. Log values for calibration need to be based on both continuous logging runs and on stationary measurements. They are best measured at depths where the physical property being measured is consistent for a depth interval greater than the vertical dimension of the volume of investigation of the probe. Particularly for the nuclear probes, the logs need to be run very slowly, and the stationary measurements need to be long term to decrease the statistical error. If spacings or other probe parameters are to be changed, then calibration is needed at each of these adjustments. The field standards to be used on the logging truck need to be checked before and after calibration to obtain the relation between log values given by these standards and calibration values, and to assure probe stability during the testing period. Corrections to nuclear logs may have to be made for the decay of radioactive sources based on half-life.

## STANDARDIZATION

Field standards need to be checked before and after each log is recorded and the values placed on the log if the data are to be used quantitatively. Frequent standardization of probes provides the basis for correcting for system drift with time. Radioactive decay of sources used in probes or in calibration is the only form of drift that can be calculated; standardization is needed to check the calculations. Obviously field standards need to be portable and easily used, but they also need to be stable and affected little by the different conditions at each well site. An example of a non-stable standard was a commercially available neutron "calibrator" that changed as the plastic insert gradually absorbed water. Most field standards are not infinite with respect to the probes on which they are used, so they are susceptible to changes caused by the environment. The best that can be done is to raise the standard and probe off the ground and move away from the logging truck to decrease these extraneous effects. Neutron probes, for example, are affected by moisture changes at the ground surface near the probe; a pair of folding sawhorses is useful for reducing ground effects. Values for field standards usually are point values and these digital values need to be recorded on the log heading. Several long-time readings are needed for the nuclear probes, for at least 100 s. While the readings are being recorded, the analog recorder needs to be operated on time drive so variations in probe output are recorded as a function of time. If drift is observed on the analog record, the final measurement needs to be made when the readings have stabilized. The long-time value is then divided to produce the same count-rate units as the log.

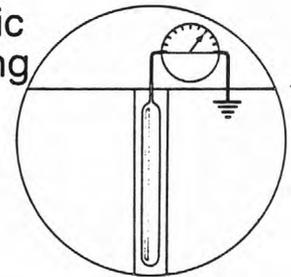
Two or more field standards need to be used to provide at least two values; more values may be included if size and time involved are not limiting factors. These values need to be in the same range as the borehole data being recorded. For example, a 100-percent porosity value is fairly easily obtained for a neutron probe in a large volume of water, but this small count-rate point does not establish probe response at less than 1 percent porosity where the count rate will be more than an order of magnitude greater. Some standardization can be done in a borehole; zero resistivity can be measured in a water-filled steel casing of sufficient length to include all electrodes. Casing of known diameter also provides an excellent check of caliper and flowmeter calibration. Logs without standardization data cannot be used with confidence because all logging probes are susceptible to malfunction and drift and the effects of any malfunction or drift may not be identified readily on a rapidly varying log.

Test 1.--PRINCIPLES, EQUIPMENT, AND LOG-ANALYSES TECHNIQUES

1. Geophysical well logging reduces project costs because:
  - a. It eliminates the need for coring.
  - b. It provides more information from each borehole.
  - c. It enables the lateral and vertical extrapolation of test results.
  - d. It permits the selection of depth intervals for hydraulic testing.
2. The intrinsic accuracy of geophysical logs is usually limited by:
  - a. Inadequate electronic circuits.
  - b. Borehole effects.
  - c. Operator error.
  - d. The fluid in the borehole.
3. Some geophysical logs can indicate permeability because:
  - a. Porosity and permeability are always related.
  - b. Clay content can be related to permeability.
  - c. Water flow measured in a well is an index of permeability.
  - d. Computer analysis of several logs provides accurate values of permeability.
4. Which of the following geophysical logs measure porosity directly?
  - a. Neutron.
  - b. Acoustic velocity.
  - c. Gamma-gamma.
  - d. Resistivity.
5. Formation resistivity factor is equal to:
  - a. Porosity ( $\phi$ ).
  - b.  $1/\phi^2$ .
  - c. Water resistivity (Rw).
  - d. Saturated rock resistivity divided by water resistivity ( $R_o/R_w$ ).
6. Synergistic analysis of geophysical logs is beneficial because:
  - a. It helps you find errors in individual logs.
  - b. It can improve the accuracy of porosity from logs.
  - c. It can provide more diagnostic identification of lithology.
  - d. It might decrease the number of logs you need.
7. Computer analysis of geophysical logs:
  - a. Eliminates the need to understand the logs.
  - b. Decreases project costs.
  - c. Can correct some operator errors.
  - d. Is the best means to collate data from a large suite of logs.
8. The volume of investigation of a logging probe:
  - a. Usually is related to the source-detector spacing.
  - b. Limits the resolution of thin beds.
  - c. Includes all material 5 ft from the borehole.
  - d. Varies according to the rock type.
9. Quality control of geophysical logs is the responsibility of:
  - a. The equipment operator.
  - b. The company providing the equipment.
  - c. The U.S. Geological Survey observer at the site.
  - d. The project chief who planned the operation.

10. Standardization (field calibration) of geophysical logs needs to be done:
  - a. Only when a problem is identified.
  - b. Daily.
  - c. Before and after every log.
  - d. Whenever the operator has time.
11. The difference between a portable or suitcase logger and a large oil-well logging truck:
  - a. Is mostly depth capability and suite of probes rather than log response.
  - b. Is basically the number of cable conductors and recording capability.
  - c. Means the suitcase unit can log smaller diameter boreholes.
  - d. Results in lower costs for the suitcase logger.
12. Digital recording of geophysical logs at the well site is preferable because:
  - a. It is more accurate than digitizing the analog record.
  - b. It is less expensive than digitizing later if the equipment is available.
  - c. It may permit correction of analog errors.
  - d. You can log faster.

## Electric Logging



### ELECTRIC LOGGING

The term electric logging sometimes is used to encompass all types of geophysical logs. As used in this report, electric logging refers only to those logs where potential differences due to the flow of electric current in and adjacent to the well are measured. Logical subdivisions of electric logging are spontaneous-potential and resistivity logging, although the latter can include a variety of techniques with the purpose of measuring rock resistivity. Many types of resistivity logs are used in the petroleum industry that have been used very little in ground-water hydrology, and they will be discussed briefly here.

### SPONTANEOUS-POTENTIAL LOGGING

Spontaneous potential is one of the oldest logging techniques. It uses simple equipment to produce a log whose interpretation may be quite complex, particularly in freshwater aquifers. This complexity has led to misuse and misinterpretation of spontaneous-potential logs in ground-water applications. Spontaneous potential logs are widely used in the oil fields to provide information on lithology and the salinity of interstitial water, but these logs are not universally applicable in fresh ground-water environments. See Lynch (1962) for a more detailed discussion of spontaneous potential.

### PRINCIPLES AND INSTRUMENTATION

The spontaneous-potential log (sometimes called an SP or self potential log) is a record of potentials or voltages that develop at the contacts between shale or clay beds and a sand aquifer, where they are penetrated by a borehole. The natural flow of current and the spontaneous potential curve or log that would be produced under the salinity conditions given are shown in figure 27. The spontaneous potential measuring equipment consists of a lead electrode in the well connected through a millivolt meter or comparably sensitive recorder channel to a second lead electrode that is grounded at the land surface. The spontaneous potential electrode usually is incorporated in a probe that makes other types of logs simultaneously. When the electrode is pulled through a rock-water system like that shown in figure 27, small changes in potential, usually in the millivolt range, are recorded as the spontaneous potential curve shown on the left. The static spontaneous potential is rarely the same as the recorded spontaneous potential, except in thick conductive units, where resistance is minimal. In thin units, the recorded value may be much less than the static spontaneous potential because the total resistance along the flow path (shown in figure 27) is the sum of the resistances of the borehole fluid, mud cake, invaded zone, aquifer, and shale. The spontaneous potential is a function of the chemical activities of fluids in the borehole and adjacent rocks, the temperature, and the type and quantity of clay present; it is not directly related to porosity and permeability.

Figure 27.-- Flow of current at typical bed contacts and the resulting spontaneous-potential curve and static values (modified from Doll, 1948)

The chief sources of spontaneous potential in a borehole are electrochemical and electrokinetic or streaming potentials. Oxidation-reduction potentials may constitute another source. Electrochemical effects probably are the most significant contributor; they can be subdivided into membrane and liquid-junction potentials. Both these effects are the result of the migration of ions from concentrated to more dilute solutions, and they are mostly affected by clay, that decreases negative (anion) mobility. Membrane potentials are developed from formation water (water in the aquifer) to adjacent shale, to fluid in the borehole; a three component system. Liquid-junction potentials are those developed between the mud filtrate in the invaded zone and the formation water. When the fluid column in the borehole is fresher than the formation water, current flow and the spontaneous potential log are as illustrated in figure 27; if the fluid column in the borehole is more saline than water in the aquifer, current flow and the log will be reversed.

Electrokinetic or streaming potentials usually are less important than electrochemical effects; yet, they can change the magnitude and direction of the spontaneous potential log under some circumstances. Streaming potentials are caused by the movement of an electrolyte through permeable media. Thus, the movement of ions across the mudcake caused by the pressure differential between the fluid column and interstitial fluids can produce a streaming potential. In water wells, streaming potential may be substantial at depth intervals where water is moving in or out of the hole. These permeable intervals commonly are indicated by rapid oscillations on an otherwise smooth curve.

#### CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

Spontaneous-potential logs are recorded in millivolts per inch of chart paper or full scale on the recorder, and the span used needs to be clearly marked on the log heading. Span or sensitivity switches on electric-logging modules usually provide a few fixed scales from 10 to several hundred millivolts per inch, but a continuously variable potentiometer may allow the selection of almost any scale. Positioning may be adjusted independently; frequent repositioning is required in many water wells. Any type of accurate millivolt source may be connected across the spontaneous potential electrodes to provide calibration or standardization at the well. These sources, which contain a battery and selectable resistors, are available for calibrating analog recorders, or one may be fabricated easily. Pen response, in millivolts per inch, needs to be recorded directly on the log. The accuracy of some of these calibrators may be no better than +10 percent; however, this accuracy usually is adequate for most applications.

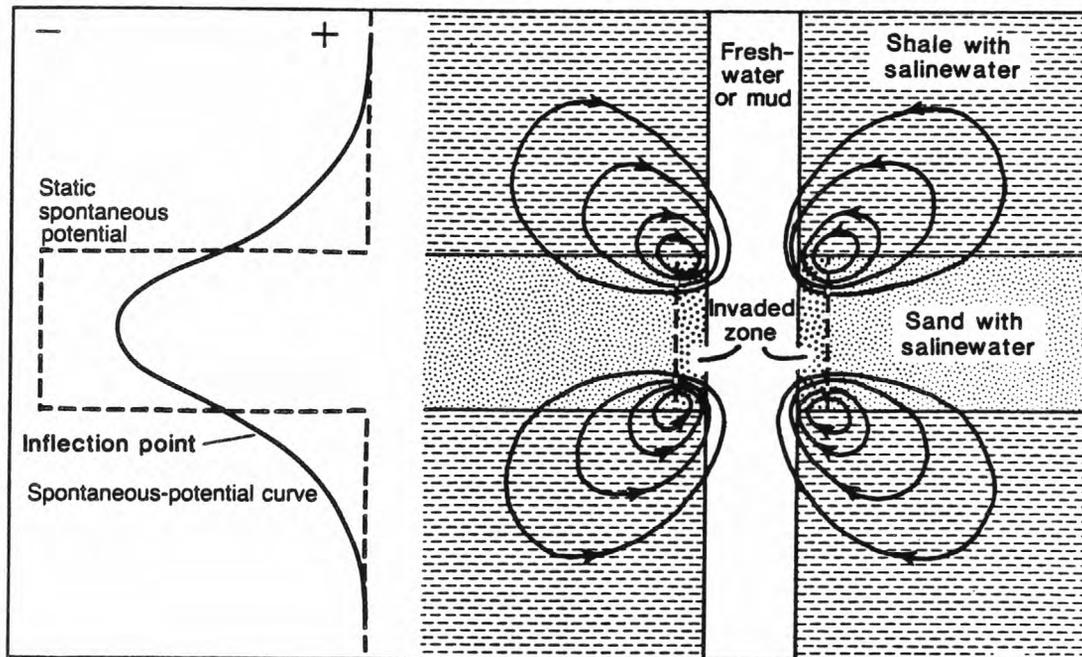


Figure 27.--The flow of current at typical bed contacts and the resulting spontaneous-potential curve and static values (modified from Doll, 1948).

## VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION

The volume of investigation of a spontaneous potential probe is variable, because it depends on the resistivity and cross-sectional area of beds intersected by the borehole. For a given current flow, a greater cross-sectional area of resistive rock is required than of conductive rock. Thus, the current will travel farther from the borehole in shale adjacent to resistive beds to find sufficient cross section to move through the more resistive material.

## EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

Spontaneous-potential logs are more affected by stray electrical currents and equipment problems than most other logs. These extraneous effects produce both noise and anomalous deflections on the logs. The steel armor on the logging cable may become magnetized and produce periodic oscillations on the logs. The steel armor is electrochemically active when immersed in an electrolyte such as drilling fluid. Variations in this battery effect while the cable is moving may impress noise on the spontaneous potential log. Wrapping the cable with insulating tape for some distance above the electrode may decrease this problem. Stray currents, even from distant lightning strikes and magnetic storms, can render a spontaneous potential log useless. Electrical currents related to the corrosion of buried pipelines or well casing can produce anomalous potentials in the ground, as can nearby electric motors, such as pumps. Railroad tracks and powerlines also can cause problems.

An increase in borehole diameter or depth of invasion decreases the magnitude of the spontaneous potential recorded. Obviously, changes in depth of invasion with time will cause changes in periodic spontaneous potential logs. Because the spontaneous potential is largely a function of the relation between the salinity of the borehole fluid and of the formation water, any changes in either will cause the log to change as well. This factor is important to interpretation and applications; it will be discussed in detail in the next section. Streaming potential produced by water moving in the well is considered an extraneous factor when attempting quantitative interpretation of spontaneous potential logs, but it also can provide important hydrologic information.

## INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

Spontaneous-potential logs have been used widely in the petroleum industry for determining lithology, bed thickness, and the salinity of formation water. Although it is one of the oldest types of logs, it is still a standard curve, included in the left track of most electric logs. The chief limitation that has decreased the application of spontaneous potential logs to ground-water studies has been the considerable range of salinity differences between borehole fluid and formation fluid in freshwater environments. Water wells commonly are logged after drilling mud has been totally or partly replaced by formation fluids; vertical circulation is common in water wells. As shown in figure 27, if the borehole fluid is fresher than the native interstitial water, a negative spontaneous potential occurs opposite sand beds; this is the so-called standard response typical of oil wells. If the salinities are reversed, then the spontaneous potential response also will be reversed, which will produce a positive spontaneous potential opposite sand beds. Thus, the range of response possibilities is very large and includes zero spontaneous potential (straight line), when the salinity of the borehole and interstitial fluids are the same.

Differences in spontaneous-potential and resistivity logs occurring between two wells located 160 ft apart near Houston, Tex. (Guyod, 1966), are illustrated in figure 28. The differences result from the drilling-mud resistivity being 10 ohm-m in well 1 and 1.3 ohm-m in well 2. Note that not only has the amplitude of the spontaneous potential changed, but in the shallow part of the well, little similarity exists between the logs. Salinity differences probably are greater in the shallow part of well 2. The amplitude of the resistivity log also has changed, but stratigraphic units still can be correlated between the wells using these logs.

Figure 28.--Changes in spontaneous-potential and resistivity logs caused by differences in mud salinity in two closely spaced wells, Houston, Tex. (Guyod, 1966).

Lithologic contacts are located on spontaneous potential logs at the point of curve inflection, where current density is maximum (fig. 27). When the response is typical, a line can be drawn through the positive spontaneous potential values recorded in shale beds and a parallel line may be drawn through negative values that represent intervals of sand containing little clay. If salinity and composition of the borehole and the interstitial fluids are constant throughout the logged interval, shale and sand lines will be vertical on the log; however, this is not common in water wells (Guyod, 1966). Where the individual beds are thick enough these lines can be used to calculate sand-shale ratios or to calculate net thickness of each. The shale fraction is proportional to the relative spontaneous potential deflection between sand and shale beds.

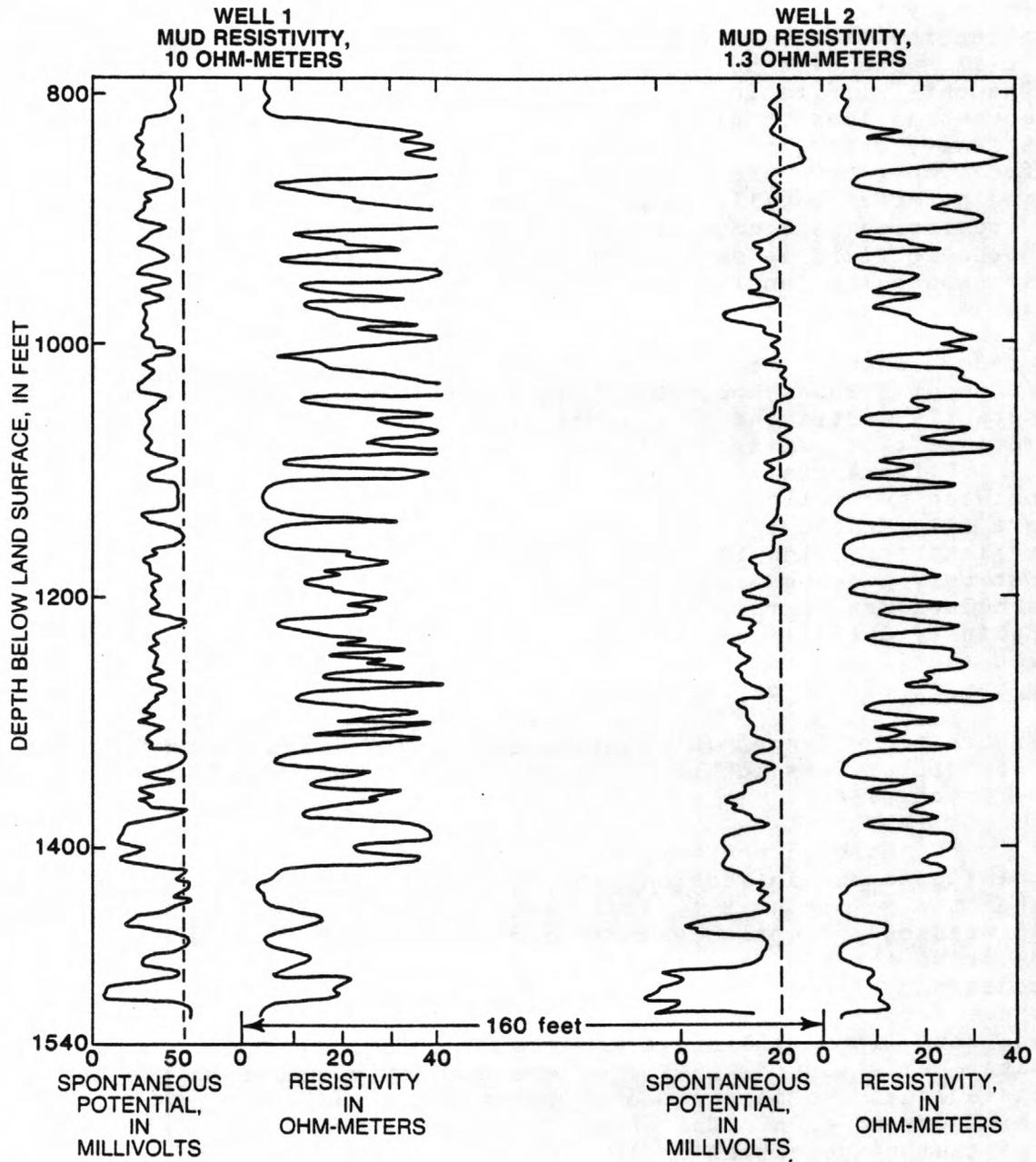


Figure 28.--Changes in spontaneous-potential and resistivity logs caused by differences in mud salinity in two closely spaced wells, Houston, Tex. (Guyod, 1966).

A typical response of a spontaneous potential log in a shallow water well, where the drilling mud was fresher than the water in the aquifers, is shown in fig. 29. The maximum positive spontaneous potential deflections represent intervals of fine-grained material, mostly clay and silt; the maximum negative spontaneous potential deflections represent coarser sediments. The gradational change from silty clay to fine sand at the bottom of the well is shown by a gradual change on the spontaneous potential log. The similarity in the character of a spontaneous potential log and a gamma log under the right salinity conditions also is shown in this figure. Under these conditions, the two types of logs can be used interchangeably for stratigraphic correlation between wells where either the gamma log or the spontaneous potential might not be available in some wells. The similarity between spontaneous potential and gamma logs can be used to identify wells where salinity relationships are similar to those shown in figures 27 and 29.

Figure 29.--Caliper, gamma, spontaneous-potential, normal-resistivity, single-point-resistance, and neutron logs compared to lithology, Kipling, Saskatchewan, Canada (Dyck and others, 1972).

Spontaneous-potential logs have been used widely for determining formation-water resistivity ( $R_w$ ) in oil wells, but this application is limited in fresh ground-water systems. In sodium chloride type salinewater, the following relation is used to calculate  $R_w$ :

$$SP = -K' \log (R_m/R_w) \quad (2)$$

where  $SP$  = log deflection, in millivolts;  
 $K'$  =  $60 + 0.133T'$ ;  
 $T'$  = borehole temperature, in degrees Fahrenheit;  
 $R_m$  or  $R_{mf}$  = resistivity of borehole fluid, in ohm-meters; and  
 $R_w$  = resistivity formation water, in ohm-meters.

The spontaneous potential deflection is read from a log at a thick sand bed;  $R_m$  is measured with a mud-cell or fluid-conductivity log. If the borehole is filled with mud, then water needs to be filtered out and  $R_{mf}$ , resistivity of the mud filtrate, is used in the equation. Temperature may be obtained from a log, but it also can be estimated, particularly if bottom-hole temperature is available. The calculated resistivity can be converted to concentration of sodium chloride, using figure 9.

The unreliability of determining  $R_w$  of freshwater using the spontaneous potential equation has been discussed by Patten and Bennett (1962) and Guyod (1966). Several conditions need to be met if the equation is to be used for ground-water investigations where the water contains less than 10,000 mg/l of dissolved solids.

1. Both borehole fluids and formation water need to be sodium chloride solutions.
2. The borehole fluid needs to be quite fresh, with a much greater resistivity than the combined resistivity of the sand and shale; this requirement usually means that the formation or interstitial water needs to be quite saline.
3. The shale needs to be ideal ion-selective membranes, and the sand needs to be relatively free of clay. No contribution can be made to the spontaneous potential from such sources as streaming potential.

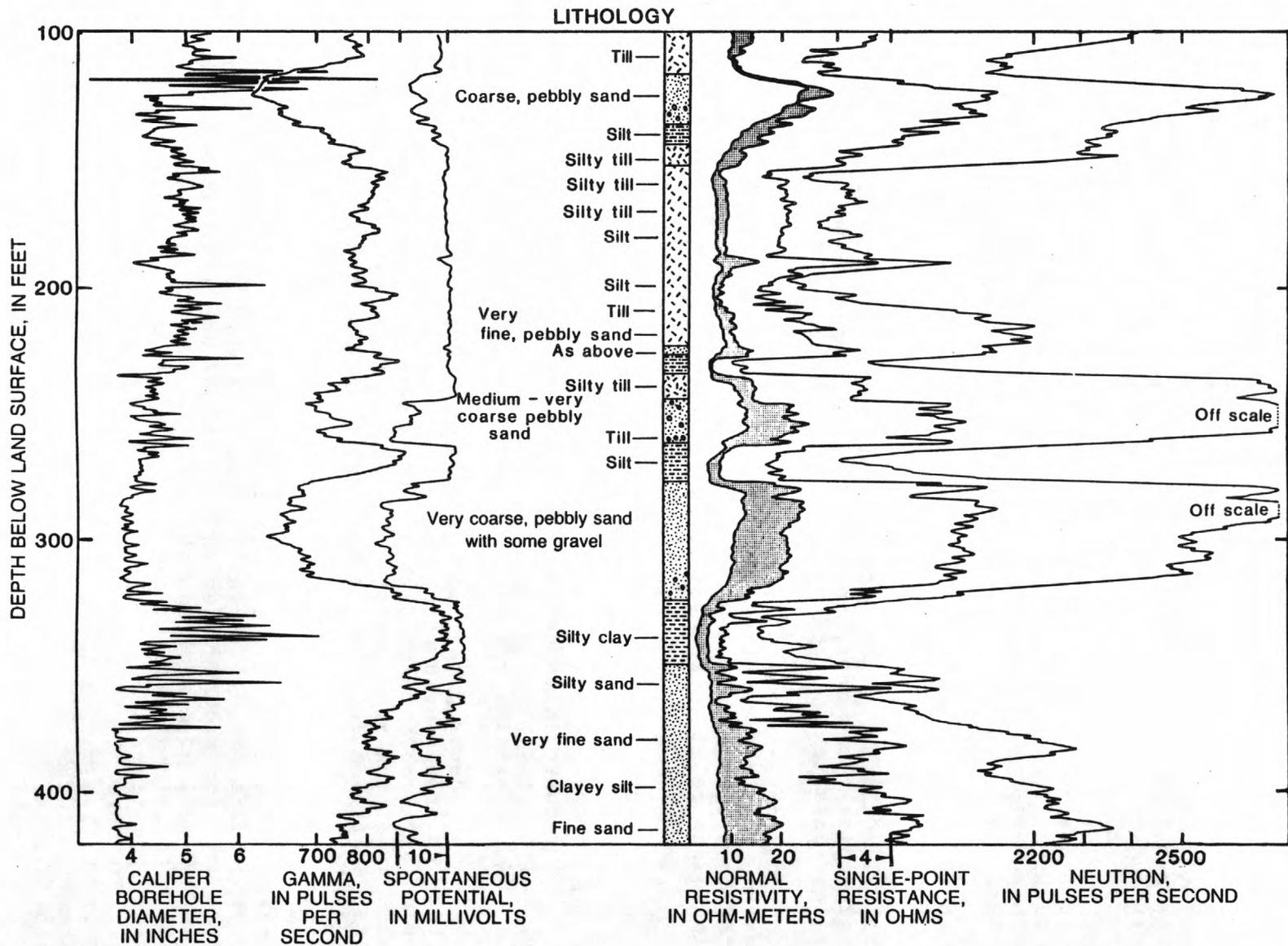


Figure 29.--Caliper, gamma, spontaneous-potential, normal-resistivity, single-point-resistance, and neutron logs compared to lithology, Kipling, Saskatchewan, Canada (Dyck, Keys and Meneley, 1972).

These conditions are not satisfied in most freshwater wells. In spite of these conditions, in some ground-water systems, water quality has been calculated using the spontaneous potential equation. Vonhoff (1966) stated that a "---workable empirical relationship exists between the spontaneous-potential deflection on the electric log and the water quality in glacial aquifers." His study was made in test wells in Saskatchewan, Canada, where the chemical compositions of the drilling and formation fluids were similar, and the drilling fluid was much more resistive than water in the aquifers. Dissolved solids in the formation water ranged from 1,191 to 3,700 mg/L. Alger (1966) described the use of the spontaneous potential equation to determine the resistivity of fresh water, but he had to convert all anions and cations in the water to an equivalent sodium chloride concentration. He assumed that chemical composition would be relatively constant within one ground-water system; he started with a well where he already had chemical analyses of water samples and a spontaneous potential log. These data were extrapolated to other wells in the area on the basis of spontaneous potential logs. The method probably is not appropriate for determining the quality of water containing less than 10,000 mg/L dissolved solids, unless many other data are available to support the results.

#### SINGLE-POINT-RESISTANCE LOGGING

The single-point-resistance log has been one of the most widely used in ground-water hydrology in the past; it is still useful, in spite of the increased application of more sophisticated techniques. Single-point-resistance logs cannot be used for quantitative interpretation, but they are excellent for lithologic information. The equipment to make single-point-resistance logs usually is available on most small water-well loggers, but it is almost never available on the larger units used for oil-well logging.

#### PRINCIPLES AND INSTRUMENTATION

Ohm's law provides the basic principle for all logging devices that measure resistance, resistivity, or conductivity. The law states that the rate of current flow through a conductor is proportional to the potential or voltage difference causing that flow, and is inversely proportional to the resistance of the medium. Ohm's law is the electric analog of Darcy's law for hydraulic flow. Ohm's law can be expressed as :

$$r = E/I \qquad (3)$$

where r = resistance, in ohms;  
E = potential, in volts; and  
I = current, in amperes.

The resistance of any medium depends not only on its composition, but also on the cross-sectional area and length of the path through that medium. Single-point-resistance systems measure the resistance, in ohms, between an electrode in the well and an electrode at the land surface or between two electrodes in the well. Because no provision exists for determining the length or cross-sectional area of the travel path of the current, the measurement is not an intrinsic characteristic of the material between the electrodes. Therefore, single-point resistance logs cannot be related quantitatively to porosity or to the salinity of water in those pore spaces even though these two parameters do control the flow of electric current. Although some conductive minerals occur and surface conduction on clay can contribute to current flow in most rocks, effective porosity and fluid salinity have a much greater effect on resistance or resistivity than the mineralogy.

A schematic diagram of the equipment used to make conventional single-point-resistance and spontaneous-potential logs is shown in figure 30. The two curves can be recorded simultaneously if a two-channel recorder is available. The same ground and down-hole lead electrodes (A and B) are used for both logs. Each electrode serves as a current and as a potential sensing electrode for single-point-resistance logs. The single-point-resistance equipment on the right side of the figure actually measures a potential in volts or millivolts, which can be converted to resistance by use of Ohm's law, because a constant current is maintained in the system. For the best single-point-resistance logs, the lead electrode in the well needs to be a relatively large diameter, with respect to the hole diameter, because the radius of investigation is a function of electrode diameter. A schematic diagram of the system used to make differential single-point-resistance logs is given in figure 31. In this system, the current flows around an insulated section from the lead electrode to the probe shell. The insulated section usually is less than 1-in. thick. The differential system provides much higher resolution logs than does the conventional system.

Figure 30.--System used to make conventional single-point  
-resistance and spontaneous-potential logs.

Figure 31.--System used to make differential single-point  
-resistance and spontaneous-potential logs.

In both types of single-point equipment, a constant alternating current is supplied by a generator, so that resistance is inversely proportional to the potential, read in millivolts. Single-point logging systems function much like a volt-ohm meter in the ohms position. In a volt-ohm meter, the unknown resistance is connected in series with a meter and a battery. In the case of the volt-ohm meter the battery voltage is constant, instead of current, so that when the resistance is small, a large current deflects the meter (or a recorder); when the resistance is large, the current is small. For both a volt-ohm meter and single-point resistance system, the response is nonlinear. A 10-ohm change is a much greater percentage of full-scale deflection at small values of resistance than at large values of resistance, which has the advantage of decreasing off-scale deflections on the log.

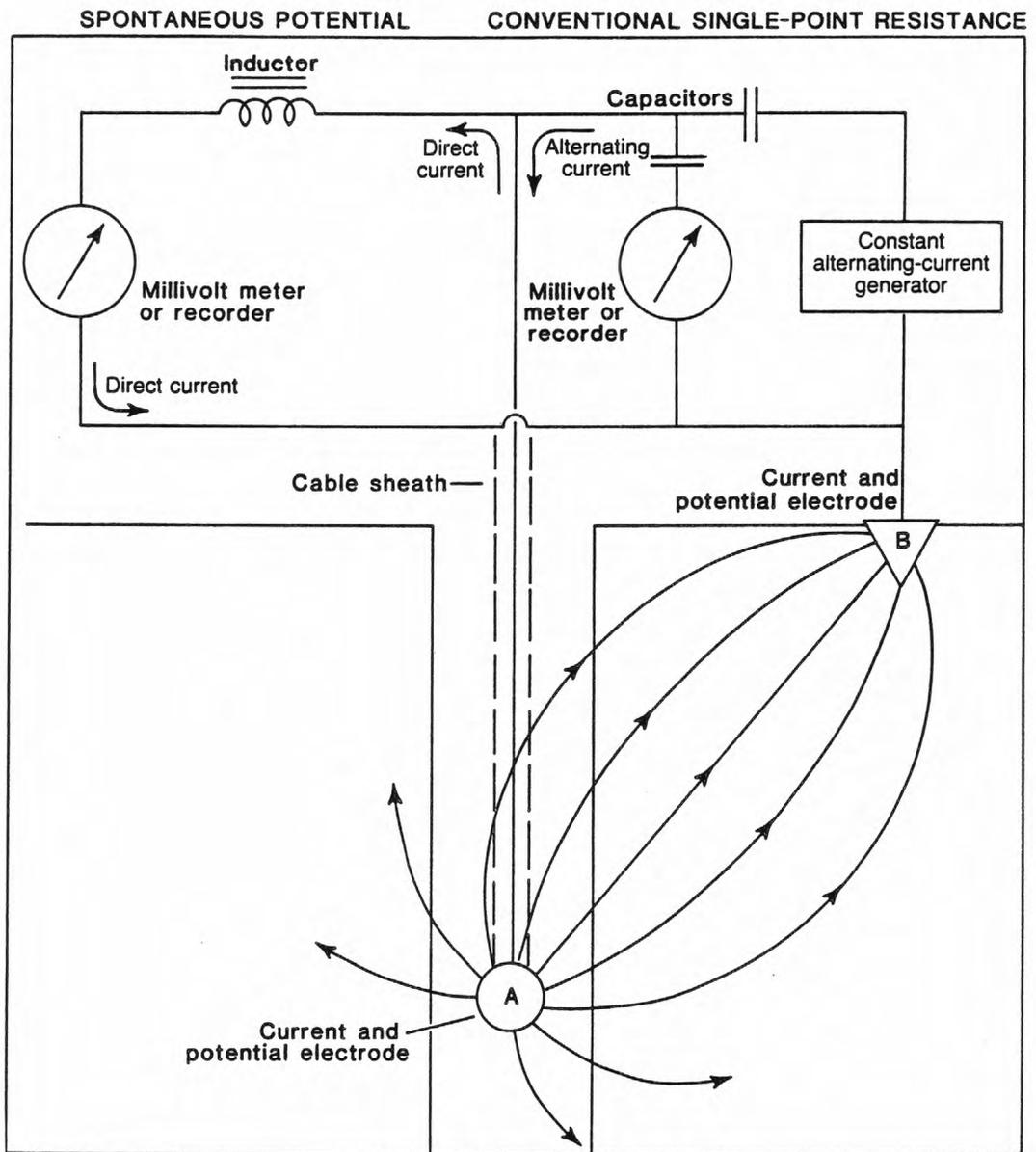


Figure 30.--System used to make conventional single-point-resistance and spontaneous-potential logs.

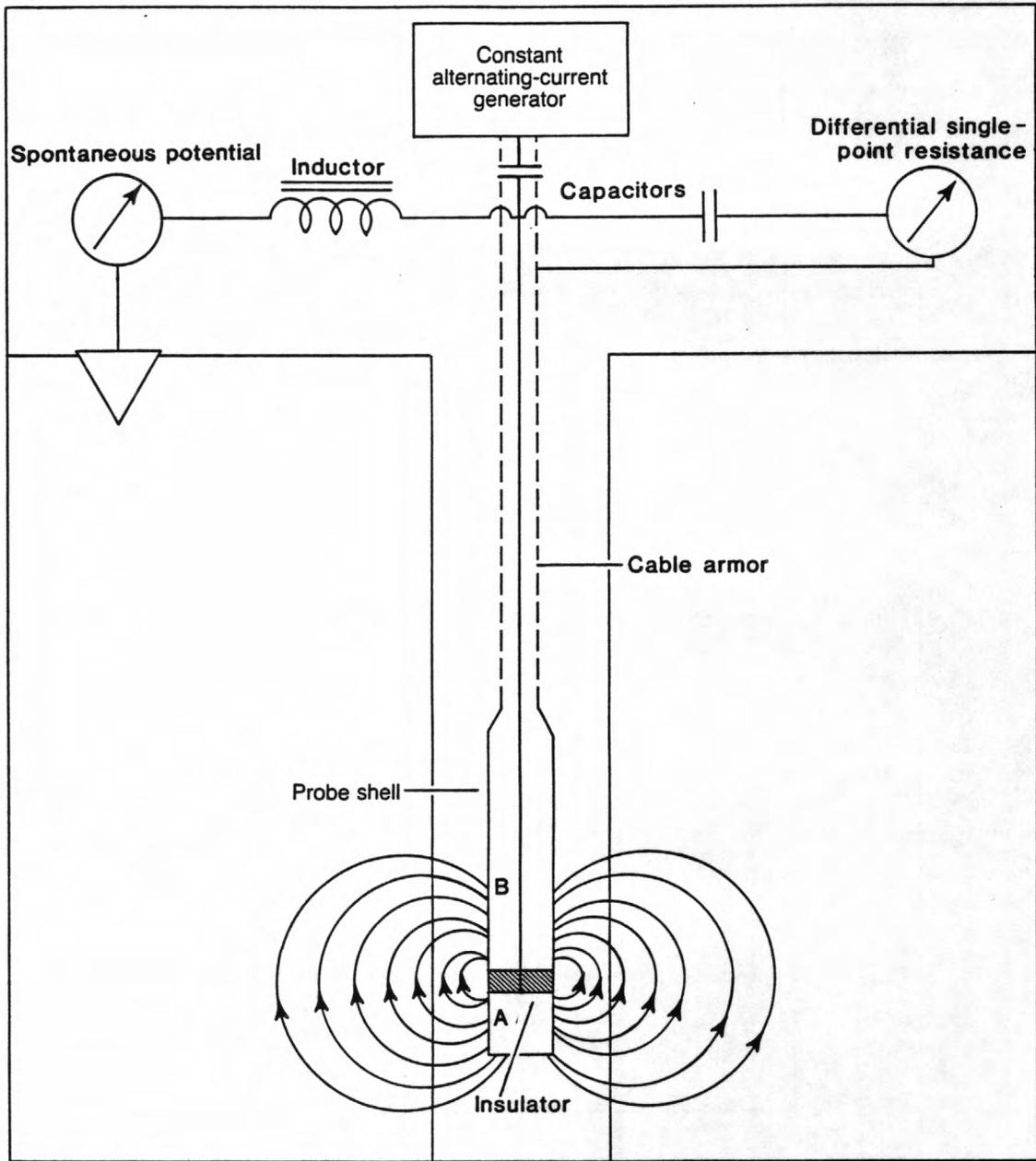


Figure 31.--System used to make differential single-point resistance and spontaneous-potential logs.

## CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

Scales on the single-point-resistance log are calibrated in ohms per inch of span on the recorder. Common scales are 20, 50, 100, 200, and 500 ohms/in.; some loggers offer continuous adjustment of span. Scales are not calibrated in ohm-meters, because the single point does not measure these units. Both calibration and field standardization can be done using fixed resistors or a decade resistance box between electrodes A and B. The spontaneous-potential-calibration box provided with some loggers may be used by turning off the battery and switching between the various resistances, which can be determined with a volt-ohm meter.

## VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION

The volume of investigation of the single-point resistance probe is small, about 5 to 10 times the electrode diameter. Larger electrodes will produce more signal from the rocks and less from the borehole. When a borehole in resistive rocks is filled with saline fluid, most of the current will flow in the borehole. Under these conditions, thin resistive units will be difficult to identify on the log.

## EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

Single-point-resistance logs are affected by many of the same external and equipment phenomena that produce noise on spontaneous potential logs. Dirty or worn slip rings or brushes will produce sharp deflections of consistent amplitude and frequency that usually can be related to revolutions of the winch. A common problem is a fixed-frequency sinusoidal fluctuation of the pen, even when the probe is not moving in the well. This fluctuation usually is caused by the alternating current that is supplied to the electrode superimposed on a 60-cycle alternating current that is present in the ground from nearby powerlines or other sources. Some loggers have a provision for adjusting the frequency of the power to the electrode, or the generator frequency may be adjusted, while observing the pen with the electrode stationary in the well. Differential single-point-resistance logs may be affected by changes in the logging truck ground through the tires and surface materials. Although the resistance of such a ground is large, a significant proportion of the current may follow this path, if the rocks being logged have a substantial resistivity. Most of the sheaves used for logging with single-conductor cable are insulated from the ground, even though they usually are mounted on the casing. If the cable armor intermittently touches the casing, fluctuations in log response may be noted. Grounding problems sometimes may be solved by the addition of a ground at the logging truck or at the casing-mounted sheave.

Single-point logs are greatly affected by changes in borehole diameter, partly because of the relatively small volume of investigation. Increases in borehole diameter add to the cross section of the current path through the more conductive borehole fluid; thus, larger diameter decreases the apparent resistance. As discussed later, this aberration can be used for the location of fractures.

## INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

The single-point resistance log is useful for obtaining information about lithology; the interpretation is straightforward, with the exception of the extraneous effects described previously. Single-point-resistance logs have a significant advantage over multielectrode logs because they do not have reversals as a result of bed-thickness effects. Single-point-resistance logs deflect in the proper direction in response to the resistivity of materials adjacent to the electrode, regardless of bed thickness; thus, they have a very good vertical resolution.

Typical response of a single-point-resistance log to various types of lithology and changing borehole diameter and the difference between a single-point-resistance and a long normal-resistivity log are shown in figure 32. The logs in figure 32, which is an enlargement of part of figure 7, are hypothetical because no logs could be found that illustrate all the different lithologies and hole conditions demonstrated. The purpose of the figure is to show relative log response, so scales are not included. In addition, the hypothetical log response shown cannot be used to predict response in similar rock types because of the great variability of lithology and relative salinity of formation and borehole fluids that are possible. In figure 32, the well is considered to be filled with salinewater from below the freshwater salinewater interface that exists in the rocks. In this figure, solution openings and fractures are indicated by hole enlargements on the caliper log and by sharp, small-resistance anomalies on the single-point-resistance log. Thin beds of greater resistance, such as the limestone and gypsum in the upper part of the figure, are indicated correctly on the single-point-resistance log in contrast to the long normal-resistivity log, which shows a reversed response. The single-point-resistance log shifts at the depth where drilled diameter changes from 8 in. to 6 in., but the normal curve does not.

Figure 32.--Typical response of single-point-resistance, caliper, and long-normal-resistivity logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks.

A single-point-resistance log is included in figure 29 as part of a suite of logs of a sedimentary sequence. Note that the scale on the single-point-resistance log, in ohms, numerically is different from the scale on the normal resistivity logs, in ohm-meters. The differential single-point-resistance log has much higher resolution than the normal logs, showing thin beds also detected by the caliper log. Single-point-resistance and normal resistivity logs also may be similar to neutron logs in some rock types (fig. 29). This similar response to lithology can be used to correlate between holes where one type of log might not be available; however, similar response of different types of logs need to be used with caution. When different types of logs are based on entirely different measuring principles, they probably will not respond the same to a variety of rock types and hole conditions. For example, neutron response will be the opposite of single-point-resistance response in coal or gypsum beds; the difference can be used to identify these rock types.

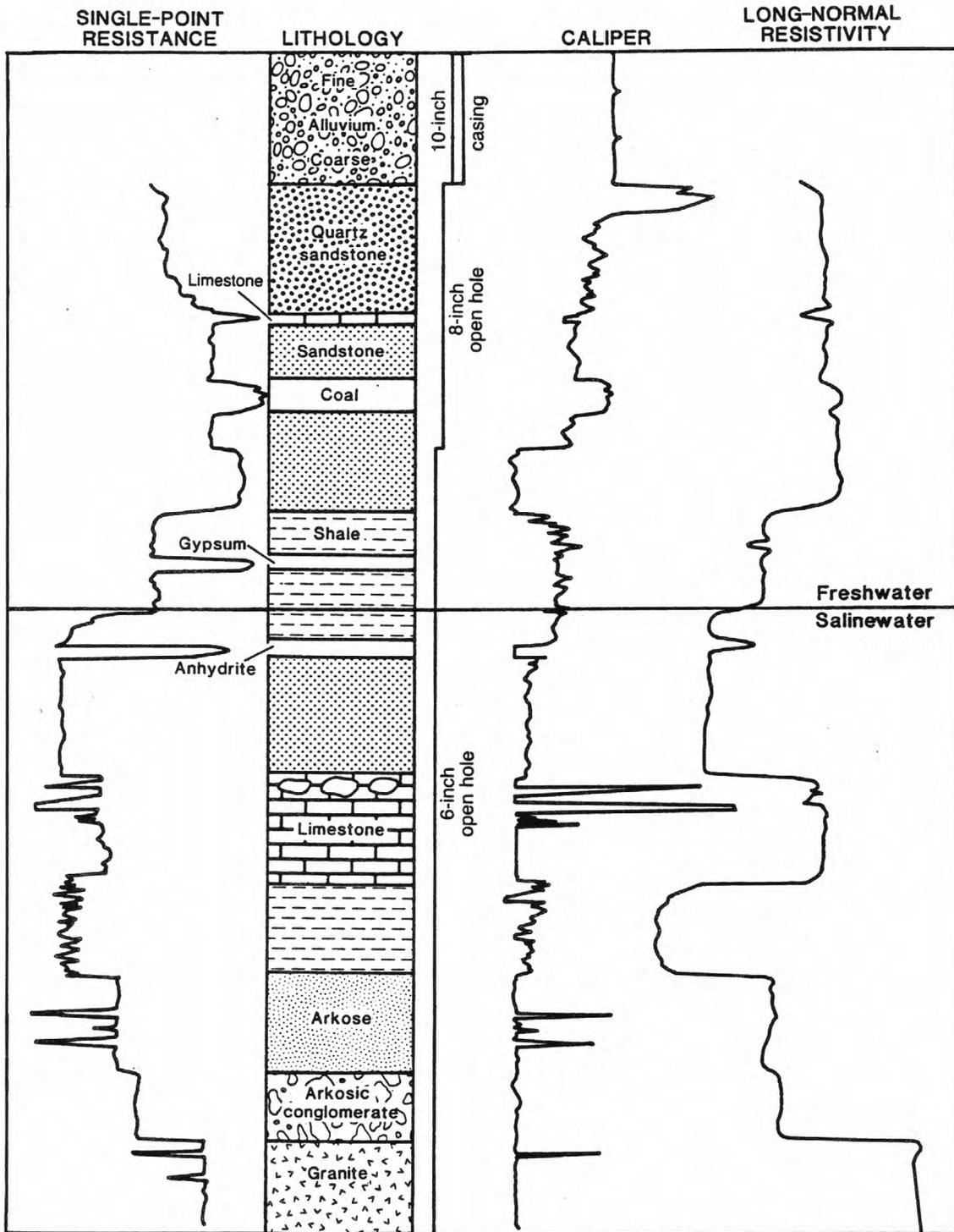


Figure 32.--Typical response of single-point-resistance, caliper, and long-normal-resistivity logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks.

The response of both differential and conventional single-point-resistance logs to fractures is illustrated in figure 33. In this figure, at least one of the logging systems was not properly calibrated, because the scales differ by an order of magnitude. Borehole enlargements shown on the caliper log are almost entirely caused by fractures in the crystalline rocks penetrated by this borehole. The differential single-point-resistance log defines the fractures with much more resolution than does the conventional system. Note that some relation exists between the hole diameter shown by the caliper deflection and the amplitude of the negative deflections on the differential log. In most cases, differential single-point-resistance logs will define narrow or partly closed fractures and solution openings better than caliper logs, if the rock has a uniform resistivity. Single-point-resistance logs may help distinguish between a steeply dipping fracture, which may be shown as three anomalies on a caliper log, as in figure 8, and several low-angle fractures. Steeply dipping fractures are not usually detected by single-point-resistance logs because the lower resistivity is spread over a large depth interval.

Figure 33. Caliper and differential and conventional single-point-resistance logs in a well penetrating fractured crystalline rocks.

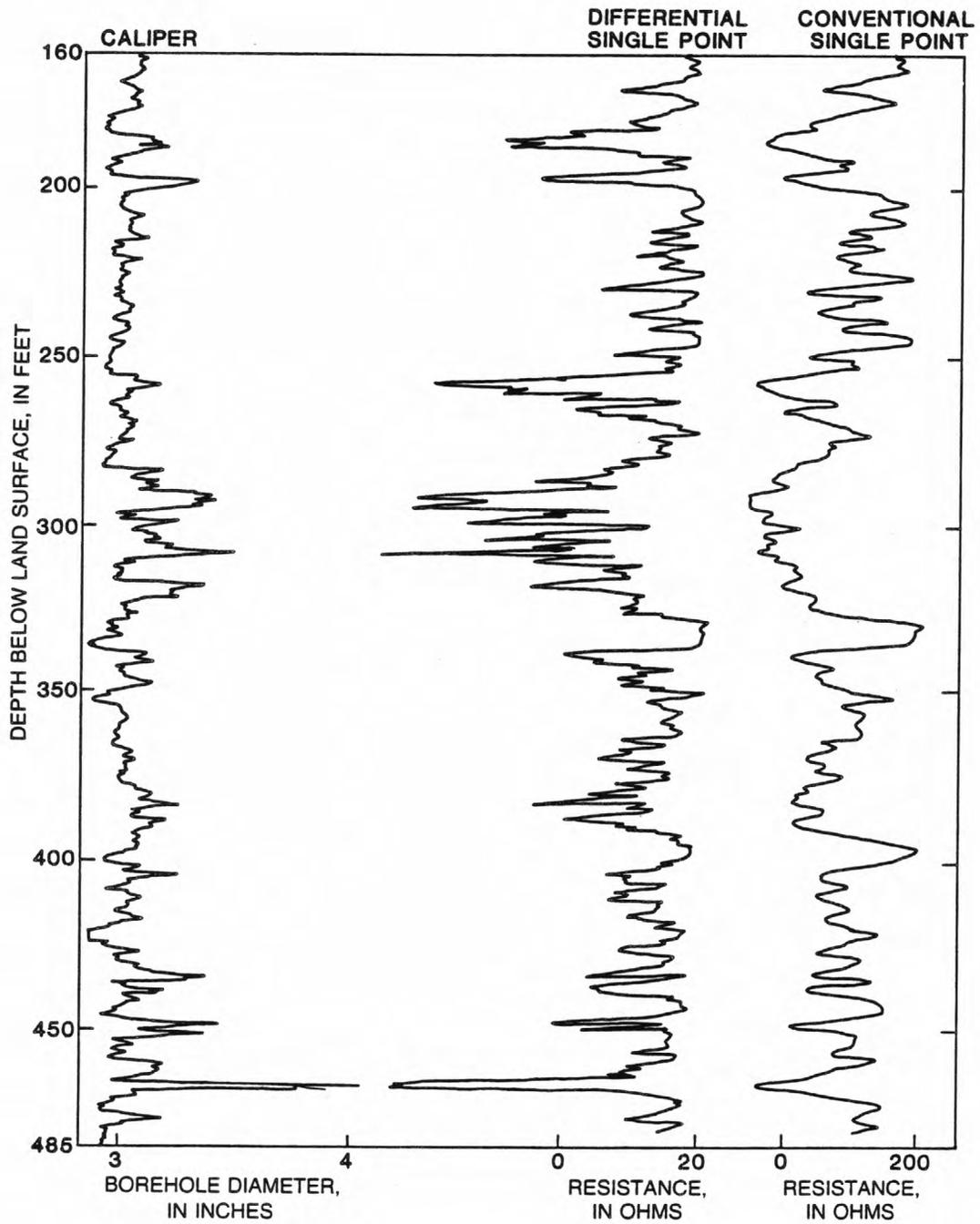


Figure 33.--Caliper and differential and conventional single-point-resistance logs in a well penetrating fractured crystalline rocks.

## NORMAL-RESISTIVITY LOGGING

Among the various multielectrode resistivity-logging techniques, normal resistivity is probably the most widely used in ground-water hydrology, even though the long normal resistivity log has become nearly obsolete in the oil industry. Normal-resistivity logs can be interpreted quantitatively when they are properly calibrated in ohm-meters. The logs actually measure apparent resistivity, which may need to be corrected for bed thickness, borehole diameter, mudcake thickness, and fluid invasion, to determine true resistivity. The capability to make normal logs is available on most water-well logging equipment that has multiconductor cable; however, both long and short normal resistivity logs may not be available on some equipment used for logging oil wells.

### PRINCIPLES AND INSTRUMENTATION

By definition, resistivity includes the dimensions of the material being measured; therefore, it is an intrinsic property of that material. The difference between resistance and resistivity is analogous to the difference between weight, in grams, and density in grams per cubic centimeter. Resistivity is defined by the formula:

$$R = r \times S/L \quad (4)$$

where R = resistivity, in ohm-meters;  
r = resistance, in ohms;  
S = cross sectional area normal to the flow of current,  
in square meters; and  
L = length, in meters.

The principles of measuring resistivity are illustrated in figure 34, where 1 A of current from a 10-V battery is passed through a 1-m<sup>3</sup> block of material producing a decrease in potential of 10 V. The current is passed between electrodes A and B, and a voltage drop of 1 V is measured between potential electrodes M and N which, in the example, are located 0.1 m apart. By ohm's law, the resistance is  $r = E/I = 1V/1A = 1$  ohm and the resistivity is  $R = r \times S/L = 1 \text{ ohm} \times 1 \text{ meter}^2 / 0.1 \text{ m} = 10$  ohm-m. The current is maintained constant, so that the higher the resistivity between M and N is, the greater the voltage drop will be. Alternating current is used to avoid polarization of the electrodes that would be caused by the use of direct current.

Figure 34.--Principles of measuring resistivity, in ohm-meters.  
Example is 10 ohm-meters.

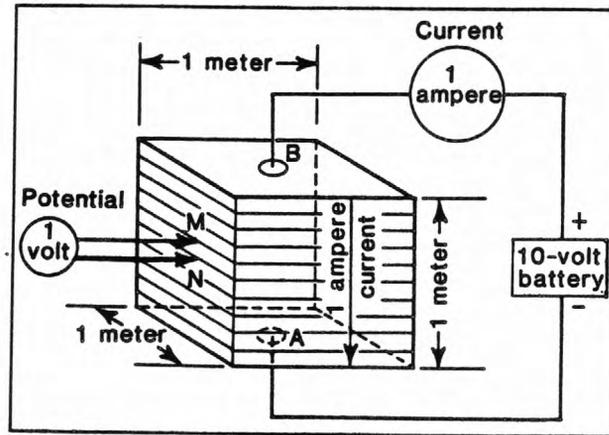


Figure 34.--Principles of measuring resistivity, in ohm-meters.  
 Example is 10 ohm-meters.

In logging equipment, electronic circuits, rather than a battery, are used to maintain a constant current, and the electrodes are arranged differently than for measuring a sample. For normal-resistivity logging, electrodes A and M are located in the well relatively close together, and electrodes B and N are distant from A and M and from each other. The electrode spacing, from which the normal curves derive their name, is the distance between A and M, and the depth reference is at the midpoint of this distance. The most common spacings are 16 and 64 in.; however, some loggers have other spacings available, such as 4, 8, 16, and 32 in. The distance to the B electrode, which usually is on the cable, is about 50 ft; it is separated from the A and M electrodes by an insulated section of cable. The N electrode usually is located at the land surface, but in some equipment, the locations of the B and N electrodes may be reversed.

A simplification of a normal-resistivity logging system with the electrode letters omitted is shown in figure 35. Constant current is maintained between a current electrode at the bottom of the probe and a remote-current electrode at a distance of 50 ft or more. The voltage for the long normal (64 in.) and the short normal (16 in.) is measured between a potential electrode for each, located on the probe, and a remote potential electrode. In an actual logging system, the remote current and potential electrodes will be distant from each other. The spontaneous potential electrode is located between the short normal potential and current electrodes. The relative difference between the volumes of material investigated by the two normal systems also is illustrated in figure 35. Volume for the long normal is shaded dark; volume for the short normal is lighter and smaller. Because the depth-reference point is different for the long and short normal when logging up the hole, the long normal will sense a change in resistivity before the short normal. The long normal reference is 2 ft above that for the short normal, but this can be corrected by adjustment of the pens on the recorder. Usually the spontaneous potential is recorded in the left-recorder track and the resistivity curves in the right-recorder track, distinguished by color or a patterned trace. Because the resistivity of rocks penetrated by a borehole may vary considerably, back-up scales are useful so information is not lost. Decreasing sensitivity so all data will be on scale can result in the loss of small changes that may be significant. Onsite digitizing of the data overcomes some of these problems.

Figure 35.--System used to make 16- and 64-inch normal-resistivity logs. Shaded areas indicate relative size of volumes of investigation.

From a practical standpoint, at least four conductors are required in the cable to make two normal-resistivity logs simultaneously along with a spontaneous potential log. In the past, most water-well logging has been done with single-conductor cable; however, four-conductor cable has become more widely used, largely because of the need to make quantitative resistivity logs. Equipment has been designed and tested by the U.S. Geological Survey to make the normal logs on single-conductor cable, but it proved to be expensive, complex, and relatively unreliable. Selecting the optimum current for a considerable range of resistivity also was difficult with this equipment. Recent advances in electronics may increase the feasibility of making multielectrode logs using single-conductor cable.

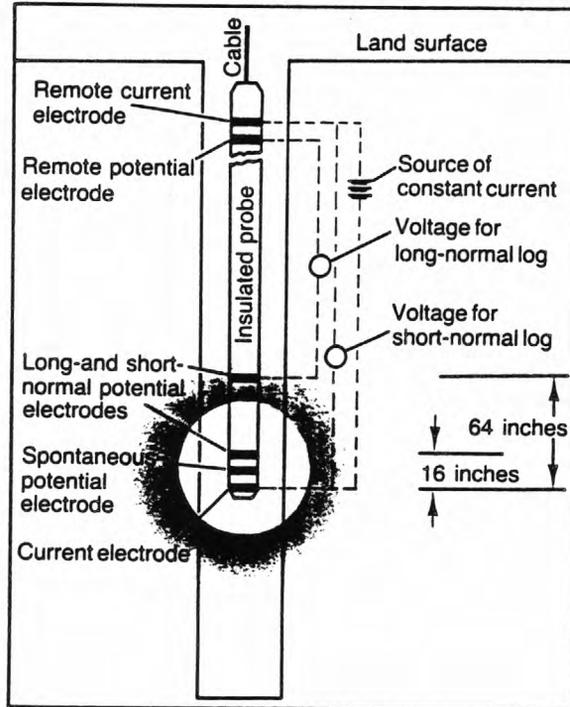


Figure 35.--System used to make 16- and 64-inch normal-resistivity logs.  
 Shaded areas indicate relative size of volumes of investigation.

The older, normal-resistivity logging systems used a mechanical commutator to generate the square-wave alternating current transmitted to the potential electrodes. Newer equipment uses a solid-state generator, which probably is a more reliable approach. Regardless of which type is used, a provision for changing the output frequency is necessary. Constant current can be maintained by placing a large resistance in series with the generator and the current electrodes, so that, within a range, the same current will flow regardless of the resistance of the rocks. The current produced is changed by the resistivity scale switch on the module. As the resistivity increases, the current decreases. To maximize log response, the optimum scale and current need to be selected. If the current is too small in less resistive rocks, the potential drop will be too small, and the log will lack character. If the current is too great in more resistive rocks, excess voltage will saturate the recorder circuits.

#### CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

Normal-resistivity logging systems may be calibrated at the land surface by placing fixed resistors between the electrodes. A schematic diagram of a system that is used in the U.S. Geological Survey is shown in figure 36. The formula for calculating apparent resistivity ( $R_a$ ) of an infinite medium in ohm-meters, incorporates a geometric factor with Ohm's Law:

$$R_a = E/I \times 4AM \quad (5)$$

where the AM spacing is in meters. Because  $E/I = r$ , the formula can be rewritten:

$$r_f = R_a/4AM \quad (6)$$

where  $r_f$  = equivalent resistance of the formation. This formula can be used to calculate the resistance values to be substituted in the calibration network shown in figure 36. The value for the geometric factor  $4AM$  is 5.11 for the 16-in. normal probe. Using this value in the equation yields the values for the equivalent resistance for the 16-in. normal probe shown in figure 36. Contact resistance between the electrodes and fluid is simulated by 100-ohm resistors in the calibrator shown. This resistance may not be large enough in very resistive rocks saturated with freshwater, where contact resistance may be several thousand ohms.

Figure 36.--System for calibrating normal-resistivity equipment.

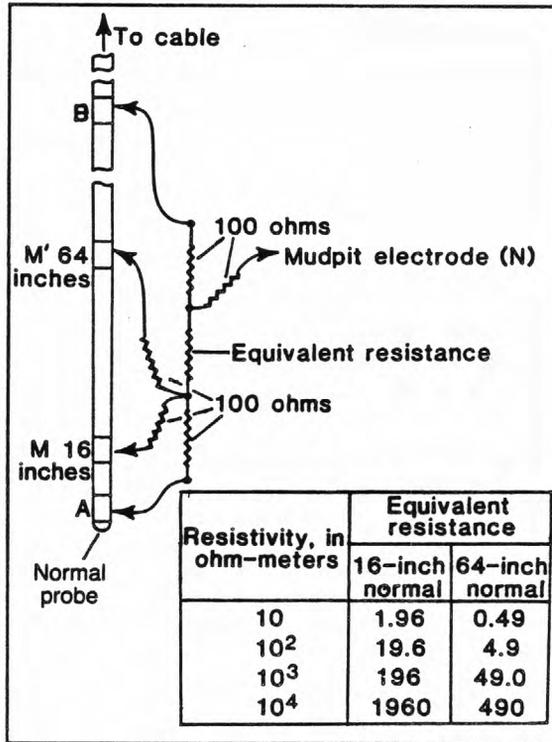


Figure 36.--System for calibrating normal-resistivity logging equipment.

A small board can be made with 100-ohm resistors and terminals to allow substitution of other resistors to simulate other values of  $r_f$ . Large clips of the type used to connect to auto batteries can be used to make electrical contact with the logging electrodes. This resistor system is sufficiently compact to be carried with any logger for onsite calibration. At the well, only one or two values of resistivity may need to be checked within the range of interest. As with logging, the proper scales need to be selected for the resistor values used. For example, 10 ohm-m would not be calibrated on the 1,000-ohm-m scale. A check for zero resistivity can be done in a well with steel casing. The entire electrode assembly needs to be in the water and within the cased interval for this purpose. All calibration or onsite-standardization values will be recorded directly on the log in the appropriate channel, along with information on equipment settings. If onsite digitizing equipment is in use, these data also need to be on the digital record.

### VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION

The volume of investigation of the normal resistivity probes is considered to be a sphere, with a diameter approximately twice the AM spacing. This volume contributes most of the measured signal, but it does not have distinct limits. This volume changes as a function of the resistivity and bed thickness, so that size and shape of the sphere are changing as the well is being logged. Although the depth of fluid invasion is a factor, short normal (16 in. or less) devices are considered to investigate only the invaded zone, and long normal (64 in.) probes are considered to investigate both the invaded zone and the zone where native formation water is present. These phenomena are illustrated in figure 29. In this figure, the area between a 32-in. curve on the left and 4-in. curve on the right is shaded. The longer spaced curve indicates less resistivity farther from the borehole than in the invaded zone near the borehole, which suggests that the formation water is relatively saline with respect to the borehole fluid.

### EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

Long-normal-resistivity logs are affected by some of the same instrumentation problems discussed under single-point-resistance logs, which usually appear as noise or periodic oscillations on the logs. Interference from 60-cycle alternating current from local sources usually can be eliminated by changing the alternating current frequency of the generator on the logging truck. Random noise originating from external sources may not always be possible to eliminate; changing the equipment ground usually will help.

Long-normal response is affected markedly by bed thickness; this problem can make the logs quite difficult to interpret. The bed-thickness effect is a function of electrode spacing, as illustrated in figure 37. The theoretical-resistivity curve (solid line) and the actual log (dashed line) for a resistive bed, with a thickness six times the AM spacing, is shown in the top part of the figure. The resistivity of the limestone is assumed to be six times that of the shale, which is of infinite thickness. As the electric-logging probe moves opposite the bed from below, the measured resistivity increases gradually until the M electrode reaches the bottom contact of the limestone. The resistivity then is constant, until the A electrode reaches this contact, when the curve shows a gradual increase in apparent resistivity ( $R_a$ ) until the center of the bed is reached. The upper one-half of the curve is a mirror image of the lower one-half. With a bed thickness six times AM, the recorded apparent resistivity approaches, but does not equal the true resistivity ( $R_t$ ); the bed is logged as being one AM spacing thinner than it actually is. The actual logged curve is a rounded version of the theoretical curve, in part because of the effects of the borehole.

The log response when the bed thickness is equal to or less than the AM spacing is illustrated in the bottom part of figure 37. The curve reverses, and the resistive limestone actually appears to have a smaller resistivity than the surrounding material. The log does not indicate the correct bed thickness, and anomalies indicating a resistivity that is too large occur both above and below the limestone. Therefore, although increasing the spacing to achieve a greater volume of investigation would ordinarily be considered desirable, bed-thickness effects would diminish the usefulness of the logs.

Figure 37.--The relation of bed thickness to electrode spacing for normal probes at two thicknesses. (modified from Lynch, 1962).

The accuracy of measurement of rocks with a resistivity greater than several thousand ohm-m is questionable for most logging systems. Most sedimentary rocks have a smaller resistivity; however, igneous and metamorphic rocks have a resistivity that may exceed 10,000 ohm-m, and values on logs made in these rocks may be considerably in error.

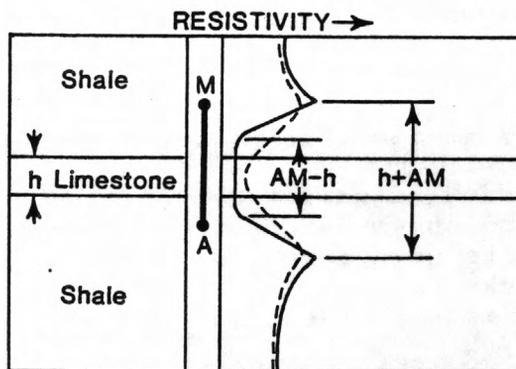
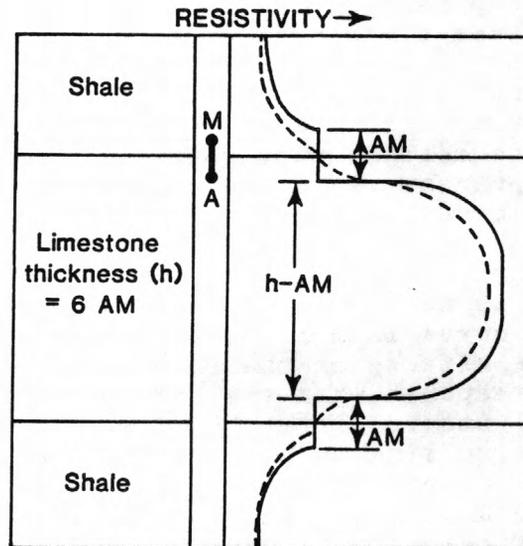


Figure 37.--The relation of bed thickness to electrode spacing for normal probes at two thicknesses (modified from Lynch, 1962.)

## INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

The most important application of normal resistivity logs in ground-water hydrology is for determining water quality, as explained in the section on fluid conductivity. Normal-resistivity logs measure apparent resistivity; if true resistivity is to be calculated from these logs, a number of factors need to be considered (Lynch, 1962). Although all these factors are not significant under all conditions, corrections need to be applied for each under some conditions. The factors include: Resistivity of the invaded zone, ( $R_i$ ) and the diameter of that zone, ( $D_i$ ); mud resistivity, ( $R_m$ ); borehole diameter, ( $d$ ); bed thickness, ( $h$ ); resistivity of adjacent beds, and AM spacing. Temperature corrections need to be applied to any measurement of resistivity. Apparent resistivity from logs may be equal to, greater than, or less than true resistivity, depending on the specific factors. Departure curves have been developed to correct the normal resistivity logs for these effects. Departure curves for the normal probes were included in the older manuals of log-interpretation charts provided by the commercial logging-service companies, but they are omitted from recent editions because of infrequent use of all but the 16-in. normal resistivity log. Simplified versions of some of the departure curves are included in Lynch, (1962) and Pirson (1963). Guyod and Pranglin (1959) present a set of charts for determining true resistivity and the resistivity and diameter of the invaded zone based on an electric log consisting of 16- and 64-in. normals and an 18-ft, 8-in. lateral. These charts were derived from an analog-computer study and include a variety of conditions encountered in oil exploration. A summary of these techniques has been compiled and published by the Society of Professional Log Analysts (1979).

Resistivity-porosity cross plots, also called Hingle plots, provide a graphical method of estimating water quality from resistivity logs and logs that can be converted to porosity. Hilchie (1982) published an explanation of this technique and included the necessary graph paper for different cementation factors. When corrected log data are plotted on the appropriate paper the intercept at 100-percent porosity approximates  $R_w$ . The technique only is valid in water saturated, relatively clay-free sediments and the cementation factors must be consistent for the depth intervals on a single plot.

A practical field method was used by Turcan (1966) to estimate ground-water quality in Louisiana from resistivity logs. The method is based on establishing field-formation factors for aquifers within a limited area, using electric logs and water analyses. After a consistent field-formation factor is established, the long-normal log or any other resistivity log that provides a reasonably correct  $R_t$  can be used to calculate  $R_w$  from the relation:  $F=R_o/R_w$ . Under these conditions,  $R_o$ , the resistivity of a rock 100 percent saturated with water, is assumed to approximate  $R_t$ , after the appropriate corrections have been made. The specific conductance of water samples in microsiemens per centimeter at 25 degrees C, can be converted to resistivity, in ohm-meters, by the following:

$$R_w = 10,000/\text{specific conductance.} \quad (7)$$

Resistivity values from logs can be converted to standard temperature using figure 19, and the factors listed in the section on fluid conductivity may be used to convert water analyses to electrically equivalent sodium chloride concentrations. If enough data are available, the specific conductance can be related empirically to dissolved-solids concentrations, as in figure 18.

The relation between resistivity from normal-resistivity logs and the concentration of dissolved solids in ground water is only valid if the porosity and clay content are relatively uniform and  $R_a$  from the logs approximates  $R_t$ . Only in sediments with uniformly distributed intergranular pore spaces is bulk resistivity proportional to  $R_w$ . This relation applies to some limestone and dolomite, but the method does not apply to rocks with randomly distributed solution openings or fractures. Because the flow of electrical current is related to tortuosity, two rocks with the same average porosity will have different resistivities, if one has uniformly distributed intergranular porosity and the other has randomly distributed vugs.

Additional factors that may cause errors determining water quality from resistivity logs because of their effect on apparent formation factor are: shape, packing, uniformity and mean size of the particles; pore-water resistivity; matrix resistivity; ion exchange and surface conduction (Biella et. al., 1983).

The normal-resistivity logs in figure 29 were used to calculate the quality of the water in the aquifers at the Kipling well site in Saskatchewan, Canada. The left trace of the two normal resistivity logs shown is the 32-inch normal, which was used to calculate  $R_w$  for three of the shallower aquifers intersected. The 32-inch normal was selected because many of the beds in this area are too thin for longer spacing. Wyllie (1963) describes a method for estimating  $F$  from the ratio  $R_i/R_m$ ; where  $R_i$  is the resistivity of the invaded zone from a short normal log like the 4 in.; and  $R_m$  is the measured resistivity of the drilling mud. On the basis of the 4-in. curve,  $F$  was estimated to be 2.5 for the upper aquifer and 1.8 for the lower two aquifers. The true resistivity values for the three aquifers obtained from departure curves for the 32-inch normal are 30, 20, and 17 ohm-m at depths of 130, 250, and 300 ft. A formation factor of 3.2 provided good agreement with water quality calculated from spontaneous potential logs and from laboratory analyses. Using an  $F$  of 3.2,  $R_w$  was calculated to be 9.4, 6.2, and 5.3 ohm-m at 4 degrees C for the three aquifers. The offset of the two normal curves substantiated the fact that the water in the aquifers was more saline than the drilling mud which had a resistivity of 13 ohm-m. Although normal resistivity logs may be used for lithology and locating contacts, this application is subject to considerable error because of the bed-thickness effects previously described.

## FOCUSED-RESISTIVITY LOGGING

Focused-resistivity systems were designed to measure the resistivity of thin beds or resistive rocks in wells containing conductive fluids. A number of different types of focused-resistivity systems are used commercially; the names "guard" or "laterolog" are applied to two of these. Focused-resistivity logs can provide high resolution and great penetration under conditions where other resistivity systems may fail.

### PRINCIPLES AND INSTRUMENTATION

Focused-resistivity probes use guard electrodes above and below the current electrode (M) to force the current to flow out into the rocks surrounding the well. The guard electrodes are electrically connected together and a current is applied to them. This current is automatically adjusted so that the potential between M and the guard electrodes is always zero. The resulting balanced potential forces the current from M to flow outward in a relatively thin sheet. A constant current is applied to M, so that the voltage drop to the remote electrode N is proportional to the resistivity. The thickness of the beam of current from M is proportional to the length of the M electrode, which usually is between 3 and 12 in. The depth of investigation is considered to be about three times the length of one guard, so a 6-ft guard should investigate material as far as 18-ft from the borehole.

With conventional guard systems, a spontaneous potential measurement cannot be made within 25 ft of the upper guard; thus, the bottom of the hole cannot be measured. Another variety of a focused probe, the laterolog, overcomes this problem. The laterolog uses four M electrodes to focus the current in a sheet about 32 in. thick. The depth of investigation is about the same as that for a 6-ft guard, but the resolution is not as good because the current beam is thicker. With this system, the spontaneous potential can be measured at the potential electrodes. A number of different laterolog systems exist with different characteristics, so specific information needs to be obtained from the company supplying the equipment.

The difference between the current distribution around a normal electrode system and a lateral system, with the probe located opposite a resistive rock, such as limestone, is shown in figure 38. The sheet-like current pattern of the focused probes increases the resolution and decreases the effect of adjacent beds in comparison with the normal probes.

Microfocused devices include all the focusing and measuring electrodes on a small pad; they have a depth of investigation of only a few inches.

Figure 38.--Current distribution around a normal-electrode system and a focused-electrode system (laterolog).

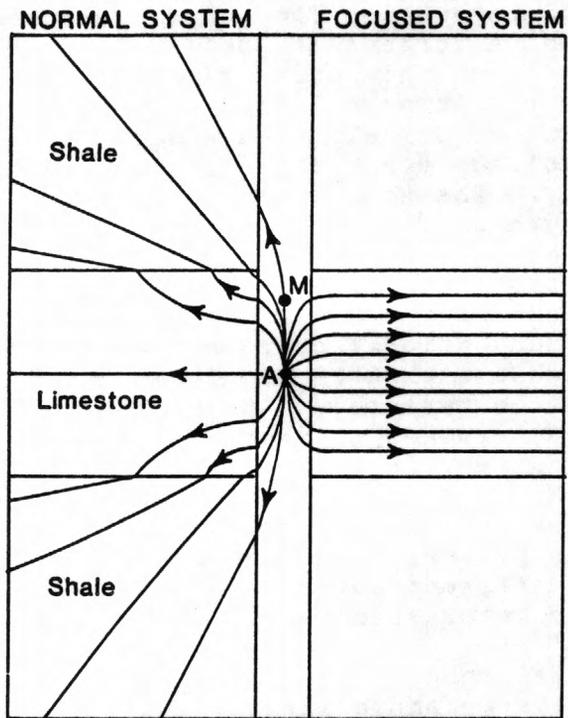


Figure 38.--Current distribution around a normal-electrode system and a focused-electrode system (laterolog).

## CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

Because the geometric factor, which is related to the volume investigated, is difficult to calculate for the focused probes, calibration usually is done in a test well or pit where resistivity values are known. When this is done, the voltage recorded can be calibrated directly in terms of resistivity. Zero resistivity can be checked when the entire electrode assembly is within a steel-cased interval of a well that is filled with water. Resistivity values measured in shale with a focused system need to be checked by comparing to values obtained from other types of resistivity logs. The current supplied to the guard electrodes needs to be continuously recorded on the log; if the record is not relatively straight, the log may be erroneous (Lynch, 1962).

## VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION

The volume of material investigated by a focused system is a function of the length of the guard and current electrodes. For a guard system, the radius of investigation is about three times the length of the guard electrodes. For a laterolog 7 (number of electrodes), the thickness of the current beam starts to diverge from a constant 32 in. at a distance of about 10 ft from the borehole; so most of the signal is from material inside this distance. For the laterolog 8, about 90 percent of the signal is derived from material within less than 4 ft of the borehole.

## EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

In general, focused-resistivity systems require less correction for extraneous effects than normal resistivity systems. Correction for bed thickness ( $h$ ) is only required if  $h$  is less than the length of  $M$ , which is 6 in. on some common probes. Resistivity values on guard logs will nearly equal  $R_t$ , and corrections usually will not be required if the following conditions are met:  $R_m/R_w < 5$ ,  $R_t/R_m > 50$ , and invasion is shallow. If these conditions are not met, correction charts and empirical equations are available for calculating  $R_t$  (Pirson, 1963). Borehole-diameter effects tend to be relatively small. For example, the laterolog 8 will provide values within 10 percent of  $R_t$  for borehole diameters ranging from 6 to 12 in. (Lynch, 1962). Currents in the ground from other sources can produce errors on focused logs. If the monitoring current is not properly balanced, substantial errors may be produced on the logs.

## INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

Focused-resistivity logs are very useful for providing accurate resistivity values in thin and resistive rocks when conductivity of the borehole fluid is relatively great. Various types of guard systems provide excellent resolution of thin beds and require no correction for  $h$ , under these conditions. The focused systems provide quantitative information under favorable geometry and salinity conditions; the normal systems require considerable correction. The application of these logging systems in ground-water hydrology has been limited because the equipment is not available on most water-well loggers. The equipment is available on many loggers used in the oil fields and correction charts are included in manuals provided by the commercial logging-service companies.

## LATERAL-RESISTIVITY LOGGING

Lateral-resistivity logs are made with four electrodes like the normal-resistivity logs, but with a different configuration of those electrodes. The potential electrodes M and N are located 32 in. apart; the current electrode A is located 18 ft, 8 in. above the center (O) of the MN spacing, in the most commonly used probe. The distance AO has varied over the years from 4 ft, 8 in. to the present standard of 18 ft, 8 in., although the shorter spacings still may be used for special purposes. The midpoint (O) is the reference for depth measurements on lateral-resistivity logs.

Lateral-resistivity logs are designed to measure resistivity beyond the invaded zone by use of long spacing. They have several limitations that have restricted their use in water wells. Best results are obtained when bed thickness is greater than twice AO, or more than 40 ft for the standard spacing. Marginal results are obtained in saline drilling fluid and highly resistive rocks. Corrections need to be made for borehole diameter and for the effects of adjacent beds (Pirson, 1963). Although correction charts are available, the logs are difficult to interpret. Anomalies are unsymmetrical about a bed, and the degree of distortion is related to bed thickness and the effect of adjacent beds. Lateral-resistivity logs have not been used widely in ground-water hydrology, but the equipment is still available through oil-well logging-service companies.

## INDUCTION LOGGING

Induction-logging systems originally were designed to solve the problem of making resistivity measurements in oil-based drilling mud, where no conductive medium occurred between the probe and the formation. The basic induction-logging system is shown in figure 39. A simple version of an induction probe contains two coils: one for transmitting an alternating current into the surrounding rocks and a second for receiving the returning signal. The transmitted alternating current, at about 20,000 cycles per second (20 kHz), induces the flow of eddy currents (a ground loop) in conductive rocks penetrated by the borehole. These eddy currents set up secondary magnetic fields that induce a voltage in the receiving coil. That signal is amplified and converted to direct current before being transmitted up the cable. Magnitude of the received current is proportional to the electrical conductivity of the rocks. Induction logs measure electrical conductivity, which is the reciprocal of resistivity. Additional coils usually are included to focus the current in a manner similar to that used in guard systems.

Figure 39.--System used to make induction logs.

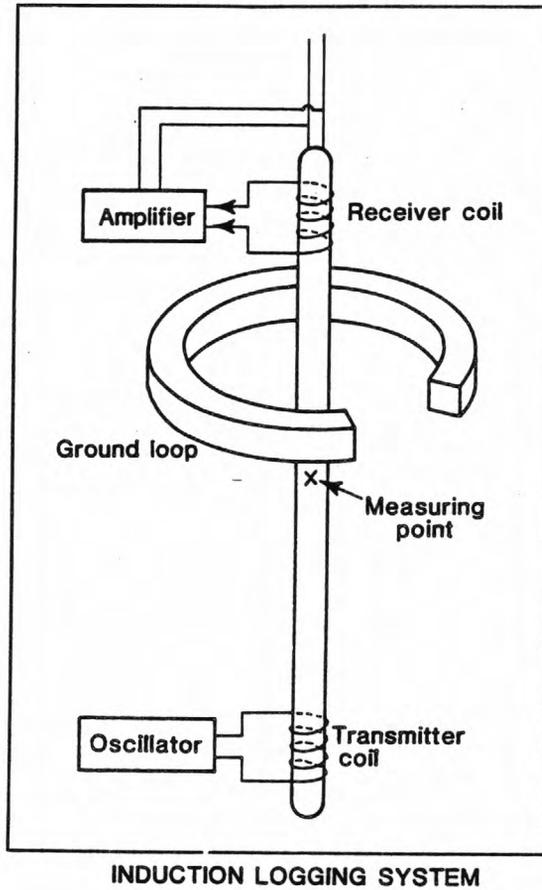


Figure 39.--System used to make induction logs.

Induction logging systems provide resistivity measurements regardless of whether the well contains oil-based mud or is filled with air or fresh mud. The measurement of electrical conductivity usually is inverted to provide curves of both resistivity and electrical conductivity. The unit of measurement for conductivity is the mho-meter however, induction logs are calibrated in millimho-meters (one-thousandth of a mho) Calibration is checked by suspending the probe in air, where the humidity is minimal, in order to obtain a zero electrical conductivity. A copper hoop is suspended around the probe while it is in the air to simulate known resistivity values. It is also possible to suspend the probe in a lake or any body of water that is large enough to be infinite with respect to probe response. The electrical conductivity of the water can be measured with a conductivity cell. The volume of investigation of an induction probe is a function of coil spacing, which varies among the probes provided by different service companies. For most probes, the diameter of material investigated is 40 to 60 in.; for some probes, the signal produced by material closer than 30 in. is small; the effects of borehole size and the invaded zone are minimized. Induction probes are not greatly affected by changes in borehole diameter, but they are affected by eccentricity, so they usually are centralized. Vertical resolution of the logs is good for beds that are more than 6 ft thick.

The application of induction logs in ground-water hydrology is limited because the probe is most responsive to small changes in resistivity when the background resistivity is minimal. The ratio of  $R_m$  to  $R_w$  usually determines the applicability of induction probes. If the value of  $R_w$  exceeds 5 times  $R_m$ , which is common in wells containing freshwater, resistivity values on an induction log depart substantially from  $R_t$ .

#### MICRORESISTIVITY LOGGING

A large number of microresistivity probes exist, but all have short electrode spacing, so that they have a shallow depth of investigation. They can be divided into two general groups: non-focused and focused. Both groups incorporate pads or some kind of contact electrodes to decrease the effect of the borehole fluid.

Nonfocused probes are designed mainly to determine the presence or absence of mud cake, but they also can provide high-resolution lithologic detail. Names used for these logs include microlog, minilog, contact log, and micro-survey log. A microlateral and a micronormal configuration may be included on one rubber-covered pad, with dime-sized electrodes spaced from 1+ to 2 in. apart. In this example, the microlateral would measure material only 1+ in. from the pad; the micronormal would measure material somewhat farther away. Lateral electrodes respond mostly to the mud cake, normal electrodes to the material just beyond the mud cake. In shale, where mud cake would be absent, the two will record the same resistivity. A uniform mud cake that might occur on sand would be indicated by a greater resistivity on a micronormal log. In general, the nonfocused-microresistivity logs are used to provide information about the mudcake and are not as effective where the borehole is rough. Most of these logs are limited to holes between 6 and 16 in. in diameter, because of the pads; the substantial spring pressure on those pads exerts a strong pull on the logging cable, so a sturdy tower is needed.

Focused microresistivity probes also use small electrodes mounted on a rubber-covered pad forced to contact the wall of the borehole hydraulically or with substantial spring pressure. The electrodes are a series of concentric rings less than 1 in. apart, that function in a manner analogous to a laterolog system. The radius of investigation is from 3 to 5 in., which provides excellent lithologic detail beyond the mudcake, but probably still within the invaded zone. The chief use of these probes in the petroleum industry is for determining the resistivity of the flushed zone or the invaded zone. The focused microprobes are most effective with a saline mud in the borehole. The logs also are called microlaterolog or minifocused log.

#### DIPMETER LOGGING

The dipmeter includes a variety of wall-contact microresistivity probes that are widely used in oil exploration to provide data on the strike and dip of bedding planes. The most advanced dipmeters include four pads located 90 degrees apart, oriented with respect to magnetic north by a magnetometer in the probe. Older dipmeters used three pads, 120 degrees apart. The modern dipmeter provides much information from a complex tool, so it is an expensive log to make. Furthermore, because of the quantity and complexity of the data, the maximum benefit is derived from computer analysis and plotting of the results. Interpretation is based on the correlation of resistivity anomalies detected by the individual pads, and the calculation of the true depth at which those anomalies occur.

A dipmeter log, made with a three-arm probe, displays the three resistivity curves in the right track, along with a caliper log. The left track includes traces showing the azimuth of the number 1 electrode, the degree of borehole deviation from the vertical, the direction of that deviation, and the angle between electrode 1 and the direction of borehole deviation or drift. The log usually displays circular plots at the top, showing the relation between the various directions recorded and magnetic and true north. The log from a four-arm probe has four resistivity curves and two caliper traces, which are recorded between opposite arms, so that the ellipticity of the hole can be determined. The four-arm probe can be run in 6 to 18-in. holes, but a version is available that can be used in a 4-in. diameter borehole. A more detailed description of dipmeters is provided by Bigelow (1985). The equipment needed to make and interpret dipmeter logs usually is available only from commercial oil-well service companies.

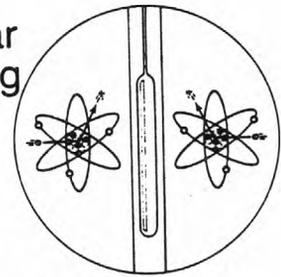
Although strike and dip can be determined from the analog record at the well, using a stereographic net, complete analysis is only possible with a computer. A computer program can make all necessary orientation and depth corrections and search for correlation between curves with a given search interval. Computer printout usually consists of a graphic plot and a listing of the results. The graphic plot displays the depth, true-dip angle, and direction of dip by means of a symbol called a "tadpole" or an arrow. The angle and direction of the probe also is displayed. Linear polar plots and cylindrical plots of the data also are available. A printout that lists all the interpreted data points as well as the quality of the correlation between curves, also is provided.

The dipmeter probably is the best source of information on the location and orientation of primary sedimentary structures over a wide variety of hole conditions. The acoustic televiewer can provide similar information for a less variable set of conditions. The dipmeter also has been advertised widely as a fracture finder; however, it has some of the same limitations as the single-point-resistance log when used for this purpose. Computer programs used to derive fracture locations and orientations from dipmeter logs are not as successful as those designed for distinguishing bedding. Fractures usually are more irregular, with many intersections, and may have a greater range of dip angles within a short depth interval. Comparisons have been made between the acoustic televiewer and the dipmeter for providing information on the location, orientation, and character of fractures, and the acoustic televiewer has provided an understanding of complex fracture systems, where the dipmeter did not (Keys, 1979).

Test 2.--ELECTRIC LOGGING

1. A spontaneous-potential log is one of the most useful logs in water wells because:
  - a. It provides accurate R under most conditions.
  - b. It usually provides detailed lithologic information.
  - c. It is not affected by salinity of the borehole fluid.
  - d. The theoretical basis for the log is simple.
2. If the drilling mud has resistivity of 1.5 ohm-m at 25 degrees C, and the 64-in. normal curve shows much lower resistivity than the 16-in. normal in a 65-ft sand bed, water in the sand is:
  - a. Potable.
  - b. Low conductivity.
  - c. Too saline to drink.
  - d. Indeterminant.
3. The single-point resistance probe is superior to the 16- and 64-in. normal probes for distinguishing lithologic units because:
  - a. It provides information about very thin beds.
  - b. Log values are more accurate.
  - c. It never reverses.
  - d. It is not affected by borehole diameter.
4. The 64-in. normal curve is more accurate than the 16-in. normal curve for determining formation water quality because:
  - a. It is less affected by the borehole fluid.
  - b. Measurements are more accurate for thin beds.
  - c. It is less affected by clay content.
  - d. It measures beyond the invaded zone.
5. Focused or guard logs:
  - a. Are used when borehole mud is saline and the rock is resistive.
  - b. May have shallow or deep penetration.
  - c. Are available on most water-well loggers.
  - d. Are nonlinear at large resistivity values.
6. The type of resistivity logs to be made needs to be selected based on:
  - a. Salinity of fluid in the borehole.
  - b. Thickness of beds to be resolved.
  - c. Anticipated resistivity of rocks .
  - d. Equipment available.

7. The dipmeter is an excellent logging system because it is:
  - a. Inexpensive to use.
  - b. Best for location and orientation of fractures.
  - c. One of the best methods for obtaining strike and dip of beds.
  - d. Available on most water-well loggers.
8. Induction logging is useful because:
  - a. It is inexpensive and readily available.
  - b. It provides good results in saline mud.
  - c. It is the only way to measure resistivity in air- or oil-filled boreholes.
  - d. It works well in small-diameter boreholes.
9. Lateral logs are:
  - a. Not symmetrical.
  - b. Distorted by thin beds and adjacent bed effects.
  - c. Used to measure the resistivity of the noninvaded zone in thick beds.
  - d. Widely used in ground-water hydrology.
10. F:
  - a. Equals  $R_o$  obtained from resistivity logs divided by  $R_w$ .
  - b. May be estimated from neutron, gamma-gamma and acoustic-velocity logs.
  - c. May be consistent within a depositional basin.
  - d. Is widely used in carbonate rock aquifers.
11. The presence of a thin, large amplitude negative deflection on a single-point-resistance log in a depth interval where the 64-in. normal-resistivity log indicates a uniform resistivity of 1,000 ohm-m means that:
  - a. The single-point-resistance log is demonstrating a reversal.
  - b. The 64-in. normal-resistivity log probably is not correct.
  - c. The anomaly on the single-point-resistance log may indicate a fracture or borehole enlargement.
  - d. An induction log would give more accurate values in these rocks.



## NUCLEAR LOGGING

Nuclear logging includes all techniques that either detect the presence of unstable isotopes, or that create such isotopes in the vicinity of a borehole. Nuclear logs are unique, because the penetrating capability of the particles and photons permits their detection through casing, and they can be used regardless of the type of fluid in the borehole. Nuclear-logging techniques described in this manual include gamma, gamma spectrometry, gamma-gamma, and several different kinds of neutron logs.

### FUNDAMENTALS OF NUCLEAR GEOPHYSICS

An understanding of the basic structure of the atom and of the energy that may be emitted is as important to the use of nuclear logs as Ohm's law is to resistivity logs. The principles essential to the interpretation of gamma, gamma spectrometry, gamma-gamma, and various types of neutron logs include the nature of subatomic particles and the particles and photons emitted by unstable isotopes.

The nucleus of an atom consists of protons with a mass of 1 and a positive electrical charge and neutrons with a mass of 1 and no electrical charge. Electrons orbiting the nucleus have a negative charge to balance that of the protons and a mass equal to 1/1,840 of the mass of a proton. The mass number (A) is equal to the number of protons plus the number of neutrons in the nucleus. The atomic number (Z) is equal to the number of protons; Z is usually the same as the number of orbital electrons and determines the chemical characteristics of the elements. Isotopes are one of two or more different states of an atom, with the same atomic number but different mass numbers, because of a change in the number of neutrons. Isotopes of a given element have the same chemical characteristics but a different mass. For example, uranium present in rocks consists of three isotopes with mass numbers of 234, 235, and 238, which can be separated by their difference in weight. Of the 104 known elements, 83 consist of more than two isotopes. The term "nuclide" refers to each of the possible combinations of protons and neutrons.

Stable isotopes are those that do not change structure or energy with time. Unstable or radioactive isotopes change structure and emit radiation spontaneously, as they decay, to become different isotopes. Almost 1,400 isotopes are known; 1,130 of these are unstable, although only 65 unstable isotopes occur naturally. Most of the radiation emitted during decay originates in the nucleus of an atom, but x-rays are derived from shell transitions by the orbital electrons. Radiation from the nucleus consists of alpha particles, positive and negative beta particles, and gamma photons or rays. Alpha particles are stopped by a sheet of paper; beta particles are stopped by 1/25-in. of aluminum. Several inches of lead, however, are required to stop gamma radiation. Of the three types of radiation, only gamma photons are measured by well-logging equipment, because they are able to readily penetrate dense materials like rock, casing, and the shell of a logging probe.

Neutrons also are able to penetrate dense materials; however, they are slowed more effectively and ultimately captured in materials that have a substantial content of hydrogen, like water. Neutrons produced by a source in a logging probe are measured after they pass through material in and adjacent to the well. Gamma photons produced by neutron reactions are measured by some types of logging equipment. Neutron reactions that produce gamma radiation include scattering, capture, and activation. Neutron activation produces a new isotope, which may be identified on the basis of the energy of the gamma radiation it emits and its half-life. Half-life is the time required for a radioisotope to lose one half of its radioactivity from decay.

The processes of transformation of one isotope to another may leave the resulting nucleus with an excess of energy, which may be emitted as electromagnetic radiation, called gamma photons or rays. Because photons have some characteristics of both particles and high-frequency waves, the term gamma photon is more technically correct than gamma ray; both terms are used in logging literature. The energy of gamma photons may be used to identify the isotope that emitted them; this is the basis for gamma-spectral logging and neutron-activation logging. Scintillation detectors emit flashes of light that produce electrical pulses with amplitude proportional to the energy of the impinging radiation. These pulses may be sorted and recorded as a function of energy by a pulse-height analyzer. The energy of radiation, both neutrons and gamma photons, is measured in electron volts (ev), thousands of electron volts (kev), and millions of electron volts (Mev). Radiation intensity is measured directly as the number of pulses detected per unit time, which may be converted within the logging equipment to some other unit of measurement, based on calibration.

#### DETECTION OF RADIATION

Radioactivity is measured by converting it to electronic pulses, which then can be counted and sorted as a function of energy. The detection of radiation is based on ionization that is directly or indirectly produced in the medium through which it passes. Three types of detectors presently are used for nuclear logging: scintillation crystals, Geiger-Mueller tubes, and proportional counters. Scintillation detectors are laboratory-grown crystals that produce a flash of light or scintillation when traversed by radiation. The scintillations are amplified in a photomultiplier tube to which the crystal is optically coupled, and the output is a pulse with amplitude proportional to that of the impinging radiation. These pulses can be used for spectral logging. The pulses from a photomultiplier tube are small enough that they require additional amplification before they can be transmitted to the land surface and counted. The number of pulses detected in a given radiation field is approximately proportional to the volume of the crystal, so probe sensitivity can be varied by changing crystal size. Scintillation crystals probably are the most widely used detectors of gamma photons and neutrons in nuclear-well logging. Sodium-iodide crystals are used for gamma logging, and lithium-iodide crystals are used for many types of neutron logs. These crystals have a much greater efficiency compared to geiger tubes, but standard crystals cannot be used at temperatures greater than about 65 degrees C.

Geiger detectors are gas-filled glass tubes that contain two electrodes at different potentials. The electrodes collect the charged ions that are produced in the gas by radiation; the output pulse is so large that additional amplification is not required. Geiger-mueller tubes were used extensively in early gamma probes, but they have been replaced largely by crystals, because of the much greater efficiency of crystals. Geiger tubes also have the disadvantage that the amplitude of the output pulse is not proportional to the energy of the radiation detected. Geiger tubes may be more resistant to breakage from mechanical shock than crystals, but shock-resistant crystals now are available for well logging. Geiger tubes also can operate at higher temperatures than most scintillation crystals.

Proportional counters also are gas-filled tubes, but the amplitude of the pulse produced is proportional to the energy of the ionizing radiation. Neutrons will produce a higher amplitude pulse than gamma photons; so, energy discrimination can be used to eliminate unwanted gamma contribution to the recorded signal. Helium-3 detectors commonly are used for neutron logging, as are lithium-iodide crystals.

Most detectors used for neutron and gamma-gamma logging are side-collimated with the appropriate shielding material; so, most of the radiation measured comes from the side of the borehole against which the logging probe is being decentralized. Both borehole diameter and the position of the detector within the borehole have an effect on the response of the system; these are discussed in the sections on the various types of nuclear logs. Detector length also is an important factor that affects the vertical resolution of a logging probe. A longer detector averages the signal from a greater volume of material; therefore, the vertical resolution of lithologic changes will be decreased.

## INSTRUMENTATION

Nuclear probes include power supplies for the photomultiplier or gas-filled tube and electronics to amplify, shape, and discriminate the pulses detected. In most modern probes, the power is sent down the logging cable to be regulated and divided into the voltages needed in the probe. Pulse amplification is needed in most probes; the pulses may need to be shaped, to optimize transmission up the cable. If two detectors are being operated on a single-conductor cable, the output of the two will be segregated into positive and negative pulses for separate recording at the land surface. Except for spectral probes, all pulses are transmitted at the same height, so that information on the energy of the radiation is not available.

In the logging truck, the pulses coming up the cable are received by ratemeters. An analog ratemeter converts the pulses per unit time to an analog voltage that is used to drive a graphic recorder. A digital ratemeter counts the pulses for a preselected time interval and transmits a proportional signal to a digital-recording system. The pulses usually pass through an adjustable discriminator before they are counted, so that unwanted noise may be eliminated. Analog ratemeters incorporate scale-selection controls that permit the sensitivity of recorder response to be adjusted. They also have a time-constant switch, which controls the time period during which the pulses are counted. Time constant is so important to the proper recording and interpretation of nuclear logs that it is described in detail in the section on Counting Statistics.

When the count rate is rapid, dead-time or resolving-time corrections must be made on nuclear logs, if they are to be used quantitatively. Coincidence error is caused by: (1) the fact that two pulses that occur in a time interval shorter than the resolving time of the equipment will be counted as one pulse, or (2) by positive and negative pulses that cancel. This causes a nonlinear response at rapid count rates. If the dead time of the instrumentation is known, count rate can be corrected, using the following equation:

$$N = n/(1-nt) \quad (8)$$

where  $N$  = the corrected count rate, in pulses per second;  
 $n$  = the measured count rate, in pulses per second, and;  
 $t$  = dead time, in seconds.

Dead time can be calculated using two sources of equal size. The procedures are described in Crew and Berkoff (1970). Dead-time corrections usually are not significant for count rates less than several thousand pulses per second.

If information on the energy distribution of the pulses is desired for spectral logging, or if variable height pulses are being transmitted from the probe, they are routed to single or multichannel analyzers in the logging truck. A single-channel analyzer discriminates against all pulses not within a preselected energy range, and the resulting signal can be used to make a continuous recording of the count rate within that energy range. The signal from the probe may be transmitted to several single-channel analyzers, so that logs representing different energy ranges can be recorded simultaneously. A multichannel analyzer permits the analog or digital recording of a spectrum that represents the chosen energy range; the measurement usually is made at selected depths in the borehole while the probe is stationary.

#### COUNTING STATISTICS AND LOGGING SPEED

The statistical nature of radioactive decay needs to be considered when making or interpreting any nuclear logs. Half-life is the time required for one half the atoms in a radioactive source to decay to a lower energy state. Half-life of the different radioisotopes varies from fractions of a second to millions of years and it has been accurately measured. In contrast, it is impossible to predict how many atoms will decay or gamma photons will be emitted during the few seconds that commonly are used for logging measurements. Photon emission has a poisson distribution; the standard deviation is equal to the square root of the number of disintegrations recorded. Therefore, the accuracy of measurement can be calculated; accuracy is greater at rapid count rates and for a long measurement period. The statistical variations in radioactivity cause the recorder pen to wander, even when the probe is stationary; these variations have produced the mistaken impression that nuclear logs are not repeatable. If the count rate is rapid enough and the measuring time is long enough, the statistical error will be small and the logs will be repeatable.

Time constant ( $t_c$ ) is an important adjustment on all analog nuclear-recording equipment. Time constant is the time, in seconds, during which the pulses are averaged. Pulse averaging is done by a capacitor (C) in series with a resistor (R), so that  $t_c = R \times C$ . Time constant is defined as the time for the recorded signal level to increase to 63 percent of the total increase that occurred, or to decrease to 37 percent of the total decrease that occurred. Thus, if the probe moved opposite a bed where the long-time average-count rate changed to 200 p/s from a previous average of 100 p/s, and the time constant was 4 s, the recorder only will show 163 p/s, after 4 s; 186 p/s, after 8 s; and 195 p/s, after 12 s. The true value nearly is equaled after 5 time constants, if the probe is still opposite the same bed that long. If the probe is moving too fast, or if the time constant is too long in thin-bedded materials, the true value never will be recorded before the probe moves away from a unit of interest. Specific time constants for each type of log cannot be recommended, for several reasons. Time constants labeled on the switches on some logging equipment are quite inaccurate and considerable difference occurs between loggers. The logging speed, the count rate being measured, the vertical resolution required, and equipment variations have such a substantial effect on the selection of a time constant that recommended values would have very limited application.

The difference between a digital recording with a sample time of 1 s and an analog recording with a time constant of 1 s and is shown in figure 40. The average or mean radioactivity is shown as the wider line. Note that the digital system changes more rapidly because the time window used does not have a memory like the RC circuit used for time constant in analog measurements. Note also that the analog measurement did not equal the mean value for short time periods.

Figure 40.--Comparison of a digital recording of a gamma signal with 1-second samples to an analog recording with a 1-second time constant.

The results of a study using U.S. Geological Survey research equipment is shown in figures 41 and 42 (Dyck and Reich, 1979). The gamma and neutron probes were stationary at different depths in a borehole while analog records were made of the varying count rate at different time constants. Mean and standard deviations were calculated for all but the 1-s time constant. Note that standard deviation decreases as time constant increases. At a time constant of 1 s, changes in gamma count rate would have to exceed 20 p/s to be significant, which is about 25 percent of the mean value. In contrast, changes of about 10 percent of the mean may represent real lithologic changes on a neutron log run at a 1-s time constant in this borehole. At a 10-s time constant, the standard deviation of the gamma record is nearly 2 percent of the mean while the deviation is less than 1 percent of the mean value at the same time constant on the neutron record. The differences are the result of the faster count rate on the neutron log. At a time constant of 50 s (not shown), the gamma record showed only minor variations. The recorder sensitivity could be decreased to decrease the apparent magnitude of the statistical fluctuations, but this also would decrease the amplitude of changes caused by lithology.

The effect of logging speed in the same study is shown in figure 43. The differences between the logs, run at 5 and 40 ft/min are very significant. Both amplitudes and depth to contacts are much more accurate on the log run at 5 ft/min.

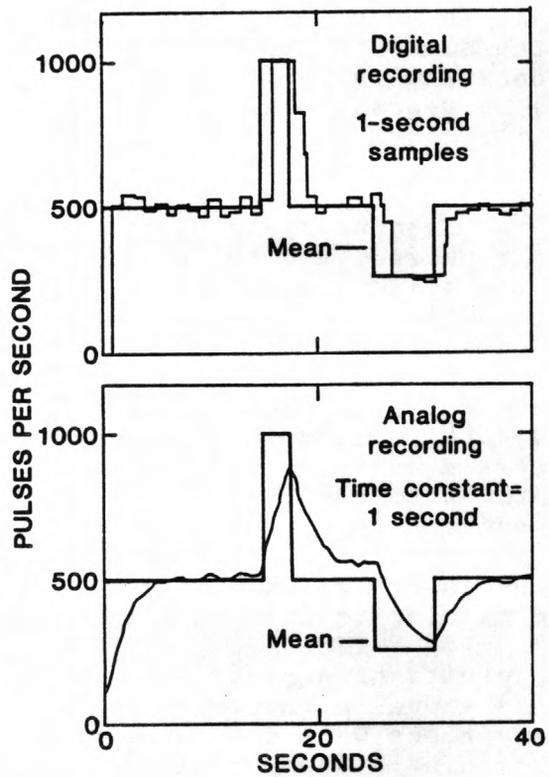


Figure 40.--Comparison of a digital recording of a gamma signal with 1-second samples to an analog recording with a 1-second time constant.

Figure 41.--Effect of time constant on data from a gamma probe at one position in a well (modified from Dyck and Reich, 1979).

Figure 42.--Effect of time constant on data from a neutron probe at one position in a well (modified from Dyck and Reich, 1979).

Figure 43.--Difference between gamma logs run at 5 and at 40 feet per minute (modified from Dyck and Reich, 1979).

Some commercial logs are recorded at a minimal sensitivity, long time constant, and rapid logging speed so that real changes are small; the curve is quite smooth and thin beds are not detected. The difference between a gamma log recorded this way (log A) and a log recorded on an amplified scale with a shorter time constant (log B) is shown in figure 44. Even though the log run at a greater sensitivity shows some statistical variations, the resistivity log indicates that the major deflections result from changes in lithology. If the log on the left had been digitized onsite, much of the lost detail could be recovered by replotting on an amplified scale with a computer; however, information lost by running the log at excessive speed cannot be recovered. The more sensitive log was run at 25 ft/min; no information on the logging speed was written on the commercial log, but it probably was run at least twice as fast.

Figure 44.--Gamma logs run by a commercial service company (log A) and by the U.S. Geological Survey (log B) with a resistivity log to aid in identifying lithology, Madison Limestone test well number 1, Wyoming.

The effect of a time constant that is so short that it makes the log difficult to interpret is shown in figure 45. The log on the left and the repeat log were made with a time constant of 8 s and a logging speed of 10 ft/min. The log on the right was run with a 1-s time constant and a logging speed of 20 ft/min using different equipment. Note that the left log repeated well and that the real changes are much easier to distinguish from the statistical variations than on the right log. Interpretation of the right log with the short time constant is complicated further by the fact that the operator repositioned the pen at four different depths, which are not labeled. The effects of two extremes--a time constant that is too long and a logging speed that may be too fast, contrasted with a time constant that is too short--are shown in figures 44 and 45. If a long time constant is used to improve repeatability, then a slow logging speed is best. If time is an important factor, as it often is on an oil well where standby time is being paid, then 10 ft/min may be too costly.

Figure 45.--Gamma logs recorded at two different logging speeds and time constants, well EX-1, Guam.

Bed thickness and lag are additional factors related to the speed at which nuclear logs need to be run. Lag ( $L'$ ), in feet, is defined as the distance the detector moves during one time constant:

$$L' = (ls \times tc) / 60 \quad (9)$$

where  $ls$  is the logging speed, in feet per minute.

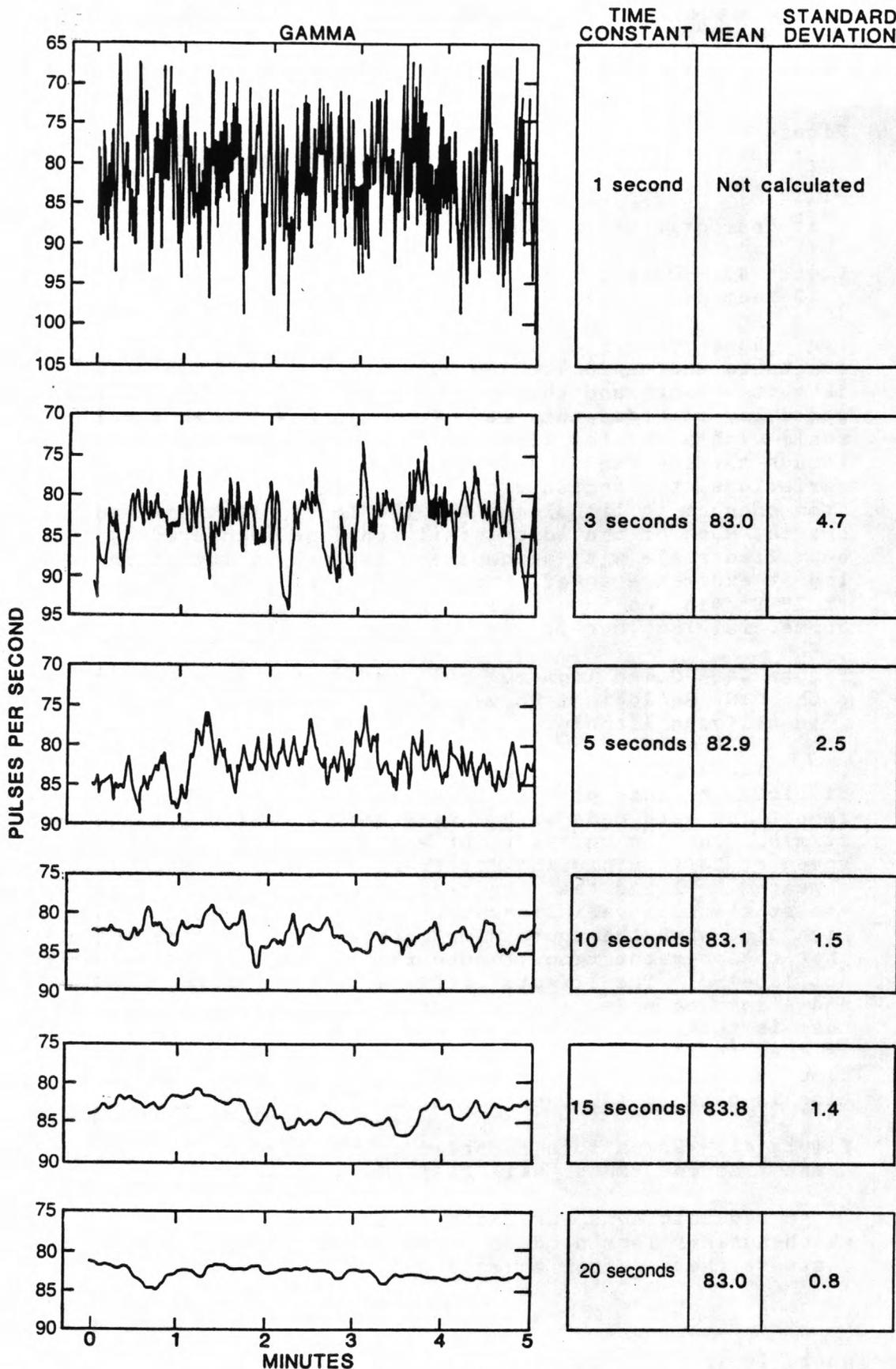


Figure 41.--Effect of time constant on data from a gamma probe at one position in a well (modified from Dyck and Reich, 1979).

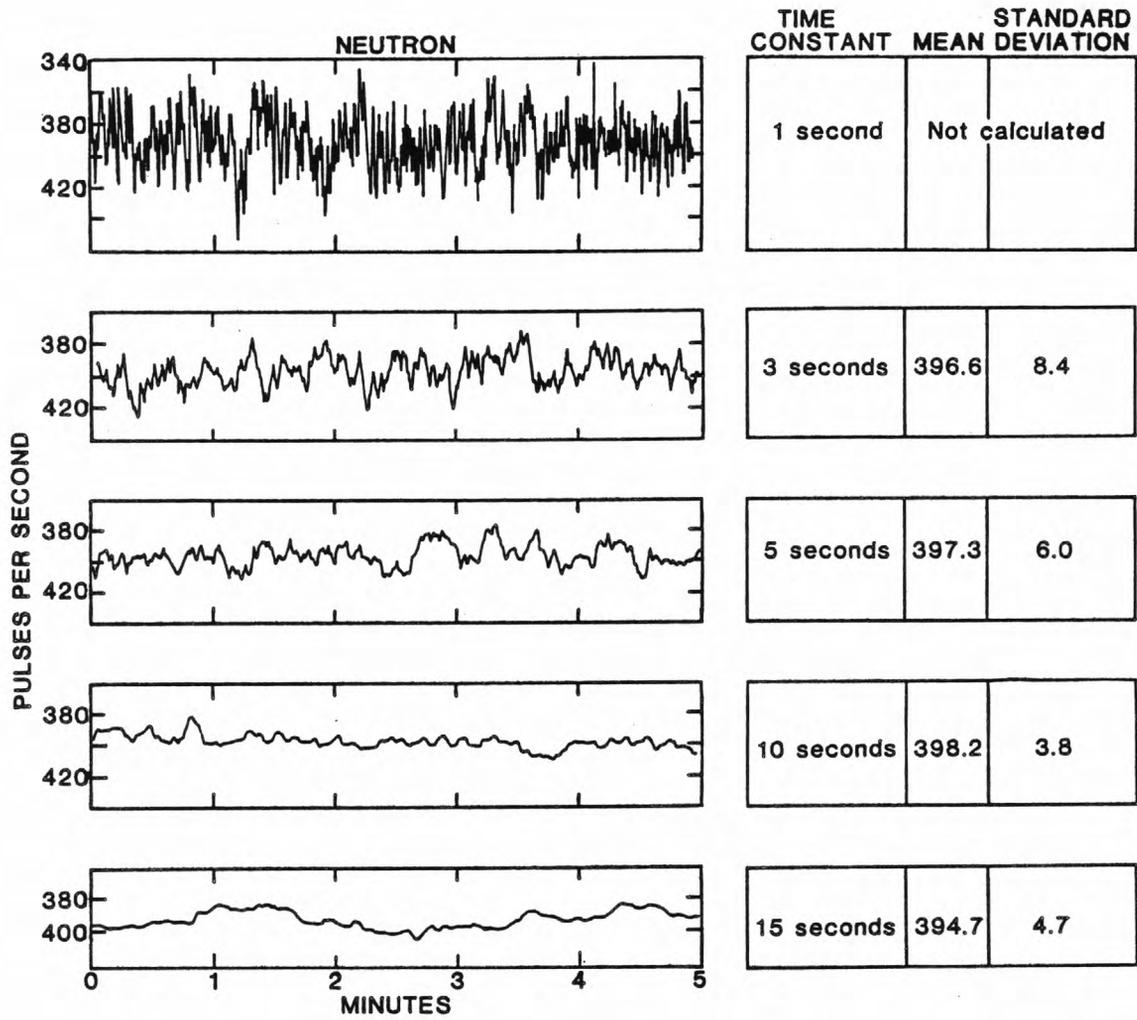


Figure 42.--Effect of time constant on data from a neutron probe at one position in a well (modified from Dyck and Reich, 1979).

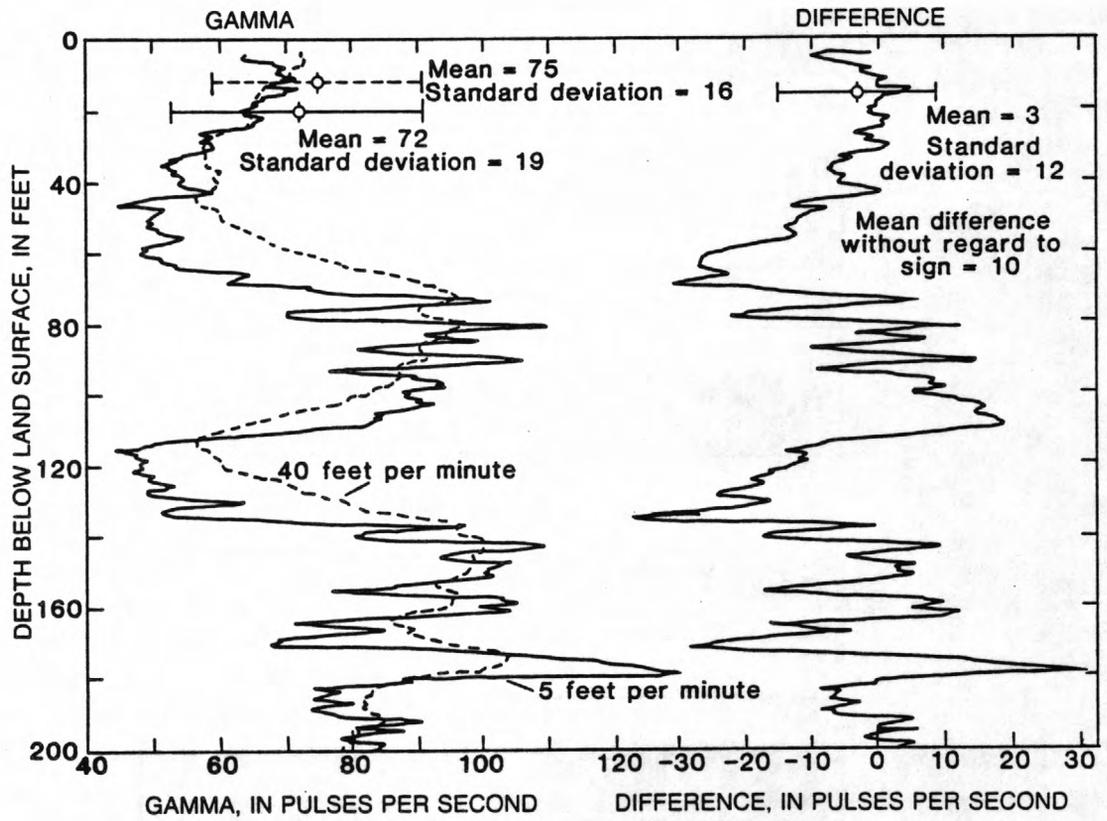


Figure 43.--Difference between gamma logs run at 5 and at 40 feet per minute (modified from Dyck and Reich, 1979).

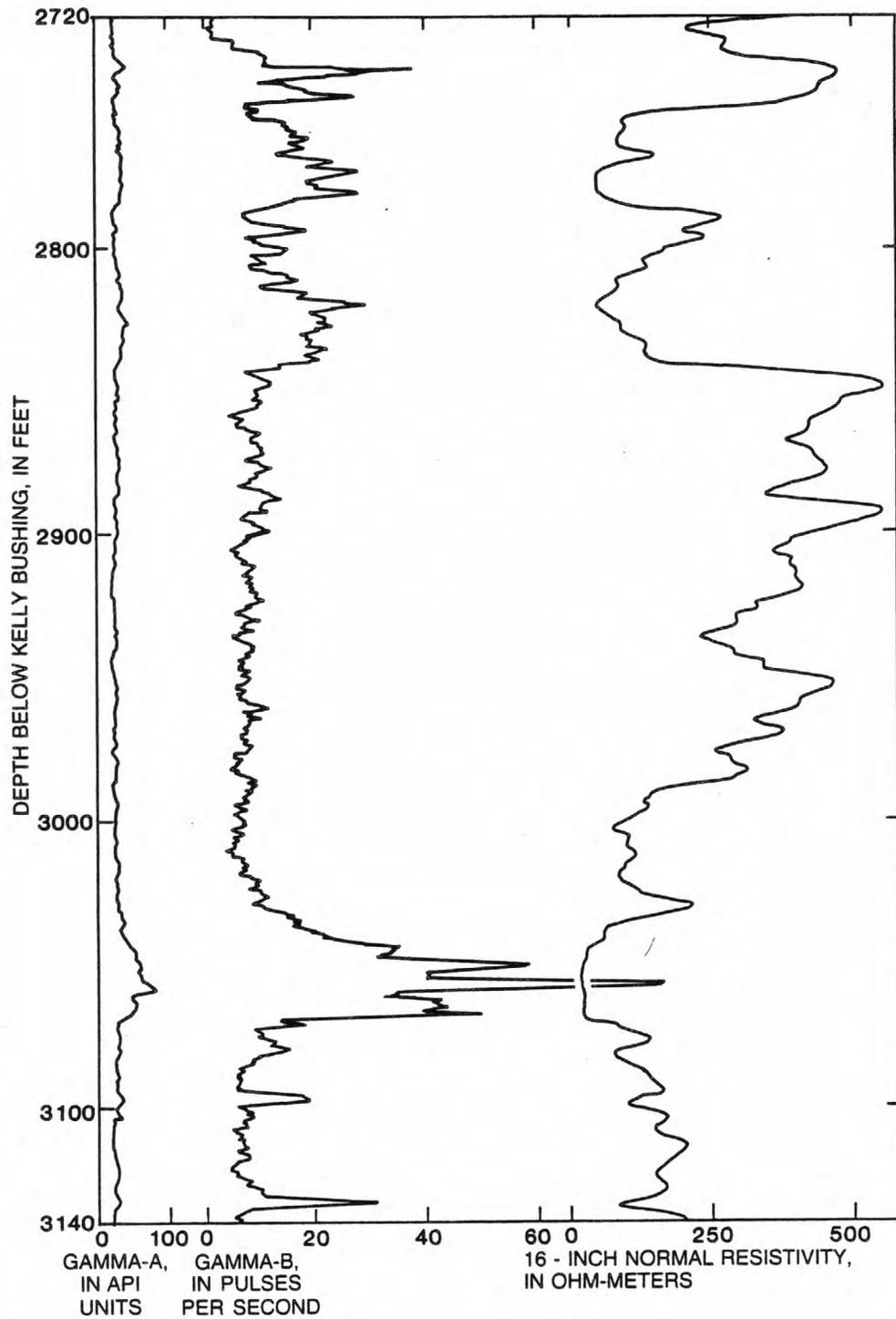


Figure 44.--Gamma logs run by a commercial service company (log A) and by the U.S. Geological Survey (log B) with a resistivity log to aid in identifying lithology, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

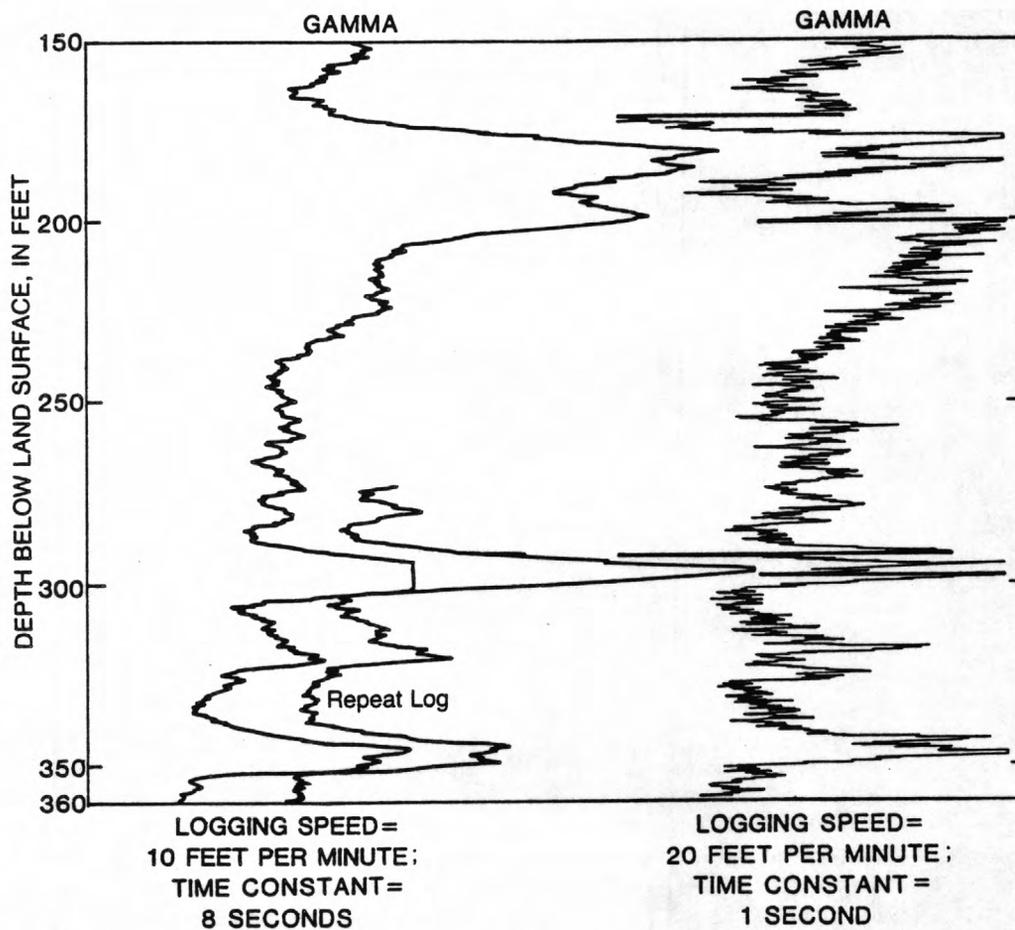


Figure 45.--Gamma logs recorded at two different logging speeds and time constants, well EX-1, Guam.

Note that on some commercial logs, the speed is recorded in feet per hour. The contacts between lithologic units on a nuclear log are shifted by about the length of the lag. Furthermore, beds that are thinner than L' are not defined. Both ls and tc can be controlled by the logging equipment operator, but the count rate cannot. The resolution of thin beds that is needed is a decision that may be made by the ultimate user of the logs. The log analyst needs to be in the logging truck to help in the selection of optimum logging parameters.

If the count rate is slow, then tc may have to be increased to decrease statistical fluctuations and speed will have to be decreased to permit the proper response to thin beds. Full log response to the lithology of a thin bed will not be attained if ls is too fast or if the tc is too long. Bed-thickness effects are further described in the section on neutron logging.

The general practice for locating lithologic contacts on nuclear logs is to place them at one-half of the maximum log amplitude for a given bed. Thus, if the average count rate for a gamma log in a sandstone was 100 p/s, and the average count rate for a shale was 200 p/s, the contact would be placed at a 150 p/s, using the half-amplitude rule. The true depth of the contact would be deeper by the amount of lag. Morland (1984) has demonstrated by computer analysis of the theoretical response of a gamma probe, that, for beds less than 4 ft thick, a substantial decrease occurs in the amplitude of the log deflection. He also determined that both the half-amplitude and inflection-point methods of locating contacts indicate thicknesses that are too large for beds less than 4 ft thick, and that the contacts were located about 6 in. below their true positions, after correction for lag using detectors either 4 or 8 inches long. Errors in bed thickness and the location of contacts can be significant, if logs are used to determine the length and placement of screens in water wells. Morland (1984) provides an example of a sand that is 1.5 ft thick, with shale above and below. The gamma log would indicate that this sand was 2 ft thick, and the decrease in radioactivity would be only 65 percent of the true difference; therefore, the interpretation of the log would indicate a greater clay content than was actually the case. He provides equations for making corrections for beds thinner than 4 ft. Although he did not model the response of neutron and gamma-gamma probes using the computer, the same conclusions will apply; thin-bed deflections will be decreased and the thicknesses will appear too large.

## THE USE OF RADIOACTIVE SOURCES IN WELL LOGGING

Radioactive sources are placed in probes used for making gamma-gamma neutron and some types of tracer logs, and for calibrating various nuclear probes. No source is needed to make gamma logs, but one may be used for onsite standardization of the probe. The use and transportation of artificial radioisotopes for these purposes is regulated by various government agencies; persons involved with the making of nuclear logs need to be aware of the applicable laws. It is even more important to avoid exposure of personnel to more radiation than is necessary to do the job and to prevent any contamination of ground water. Neither of these potential problems have proven to be significant in ground-water applications of borehole geophysics because, in general, radioactive sources have been used with care. Radiation-exposure risks to logging personnel are described by Fujimoto and others (1985).

The use and transportation of radioactive materials is regulated by both Federal and State government agencies. Because of the numerous agencies involved and of the frequent changes in regulations, specific information on the subject cannot be provided in this manual. A potential user must consult the appropriate government agency for regulations that apply to the specific type and area of use. To purchase and use radioactive sources, a license is necessary from either the U. S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission or the counterpart State agency, or both. A specified duration and type of training and experience are required to qualify for such a license. Courses on handling logging sources are available from private companies. Information on these courses and licensing requirements may be obtained from local Commission offices or the counterpart State agency.

The transportation of radioactive sources is governed by the U.S. Department of Transportation and counterpart State agencies. Because radioactive sources for logging may be transported across the country, it is difficult to be aware of all State regulations. For example, particularly in the eastern part of the United States, numerous bridges, tunnels, and toll roads cannot be used to transport radioactive materials. A private company has compiled and sells a table of State regulations on the transportation of radioactive materials, that includes a compendium of regulations on bridges tunnels and toll roads. Information on reports of this kind is available from the DOT. Most States have adopted the department's rules, but many exceptions exist.

Radioactive materials used in water-well logging are available in two forms: sealed sources and water-soluble tracers. Although the radioactive tracers provide an excellent method for determining the direction and velocity of ground-water movement, they have not been widely used because the regulations require a permit for each specific application and much information is needed about a ground-water system before a permit will be issued. Ground-water users are protected by the use of short half-life tracers that will decay before reaching a supply well. All radioactive sources used in neutron and gamma-gamma probes are sold in a welded stainless-steel capsule with double walls. The sources are protected further by the source sub, which is a removable section of the probe containing the source. Little danger of the radioisotope entering the ground water exists unless both the capsule and source sub are crushed.

All sources must be transported and stored in a shield, except when they actually are being used for well logging. Shields for neutron sources are filled with hydrogenous materials, such as plastic. Shields for gamma sources are filled with heavy material, usually lead. Shields must be attached securely to the vehicle, and they must be labeled and locked. The size of a source determines the size of the shield required; shields for large sources may weigh several hundred pounds. The radiation level measured outside a shield determines if regulations require radioactive signs on the exterior of the logging truck. Shields need to be as thick as practical to decrease exposure to personnel. The radiation that might be measured on the outside of a shield can be estimated, based on tables of half-value thickness for various materials and the energy of radiation emitted by the source. Half-value is the thickness that will decrease radiation of a given energy to one-half its original value. The half-value thickness of lead is about 0.25 for cesium-137 and 0.50 for cobalt-60, which emits more energetic gamma radiation. Probes with sodium-iodide crystals should not be stored near neutron sources, because the crystals can be activated so they emit gamma radiation.

Most regulations specify that radiation-monitoring equipment must be carried on a truck that transports sources. Monitoring equipment must have the capability of measuring the kinds of radiation emitted by the sources being used and the equipment must be calibrated periodically. Hand-carried counters commonly have interchangeable probes for measuring alpha, beta, gamma, and fast and slow neutrons. The equipment is used to make periodic radiation checks of logging equipment and logging sites. The sources also must be wipe-tested periodically to determine if they are leaking. The wipes usually are done with a piece of filter paper, which is sent to a laboratory for analysis. Leaking sources are extremely rare, unless they have been physically damaged. Records are required showing the use of sources, monitoring of vehicles and sites, and wipe tests.

Exposure of personnel to radioactivity during logging operations can be controlled by three important factors--time, distance, and shielding. All personnel involved with logging operations utilizing radioactive sources must wear film badges to record the dosage of radiation of different types that they have been exposed to during a specified time, usually one month. Film badges are read at the end of the specified time; a record of the exposure to personnel is maintained by private companies under contract. The exposure to ionizing radiation recorded on the film badge is a function of time and the kind and energy of radiation. Limits have been established for personnel exposure; if these are exceeded, no further on-the-job exposure is permitted for a specified period. Self-reading pocket dosimeters also are available so personnel can check on exposure during a logging operation where radiation might be expected to be unusually high.

Time probably is the most useful control of the dosage of radiation received by personnel on a logging operation. All procedures for removing sources from shields and loading them in probes need to be designed to minimize the amount of time the source is out of the shield, before the probe is placed in the well. When the probe is a few feet below the ground surface, no radiation will be received by logging personnel. The length of time personnel are close to sources in shields also adds to their total exposure.

Radioactivity decreases as the square of the distance. Distance can be controlled to some degree when loading a source by the use of long-handled devices, but sometimes remote-handling devices significantly increase the time needed to complete an operation. Although sources are not manipulated with the hands directly, the length of the handling device is selected to permit rapid completion of the operation. If possible, source subs are designed so they can be attached to the probe while the sub and contained source are still in the shield. Using this method, exposure is limited to the time required to pull the probe and sub from the shield and lower it into the hole. Sources also can be handled from behind small shields, such as lead bricks for a gamma source, or under water for a neutron source, but such shields usually are not practical. During these operations, all unnecessary personnel and visitors need to be kept at a safe distance from the source.

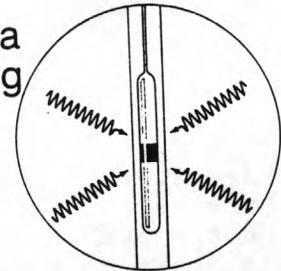
The loss and subsequent rupturing of a radioactive source in a well constitute the greatest single danger in using such sources for logging. Although radioactive sources in shields have been lost out of the back of logging trucks through carelessness, they usually are recovered. Radioactive sources that are lost in wells may not be recovered even after the expensive retrieval attempt that is required by law. If the radioactive source is not recovered, the well must be filled with cement, and a plaque describing the lost source must be mounted permanently at the top of the well. The publicity and expense of such a loss might deter some groups from further use of radioactive sources. The author was involved in a retrieval operation that lasted 16 days and nights after a large neutron source was lost at a depth of 1,000 ft. The neutron source finally was recovered and put back into use; however, using care during logging to prevent such losses is much better than depending on good luck or skill in attempting to retrieve lost sources.

If a source is lost, nondestructive retrieval techniques (called fishing) are required by law; that is, the probe and contained source cannot be drilled out. Time is a factor, because of the possibility of a rock falling on top of the probe. Drawings and dimensions of the top of the probe and cable head need to be kept in the logging truck to facilitate the onsite construction of an overshot device that might permit fast recovery by using the logging winch and cable. Such fishing tools have been constructed at a local welding shop and lost probes have been recovered within 1 day; however, the loss of a radioactive source must be reported to the proper agency immediately. If fishing with locally constructed devices is not successful, and help is needed, a call to the nearest logging-company office will provide the telephone number of a company that specializes in such services. These companies either will provide or rent fishing tools and provide an expert to run them. Usually a rotary-drill rig is required to use commercial fishing devices. Complete instructions on fishing techniques are beyond the scope of this manual; if a logging operator has no experience, help needs to be obtained as soon as possible.

The loss of most probes can be prevented if the proper logging procedures are followed. Probes containing radioactive sources need to be the last to be used in an uncased well; they never are used if the use of other probes indicated problems. The driller needs to be consulted prior to logging to determine if caving or other problems will prevent free access to the entire depth of the well. If any drilling or logging equipment (junk) has been lost in the well, all logging proceeds with caution, and the probe is not lowered all of the way to the bottom of the well. Damaged casing or key-slotted casing in deviated wells can cause the cable to be caught. Swelling clay can cause probes to become stuck in a well. The weight indicator needs to be watched closely, and the probe needs to be pulled rapidly from the hole if it appears to be sticking. A high-resolution caliper log may indicate hole conditions that would make logging with a source unsafe. The person in charge of the logging equipment never is overruled if he or she thinks logging is not safe.

Many precautions and procedures are needed to make nuclear logs using a radioactive source. The logs are useful, but for some organizations to run their own logs may not be economically justified; the use of a commercial-service company might be considered.

## Gamma Logging



### GAMMA LOGGING

Gamma logs, also called gamma-ray logs or natural-gamma logs, are the most widely used nuclear logs in ground-water applications. The most common uses are for identification of lithology and for stratigraphic correlation. Gamma logs can be made with relatively inexpensive and simple equipment, and they will provide useful data under a variety of borehole conditions.

### PRINCIPLES

The gamma log provides a record of the total gamma radiation detected in a borehole that is within a selected energy range. In water-bearing rocks that are not contaminated by artificial radioisotopes, the most significant naturally occurring, gamma-emitting radioisotopes are potassium-40 and daughter products of the uranium- and thorium-decay series--hence the name natural-gamma log. If gamma-emitting artificial radioisotopes have been introduced by humans into the ground-water system, they will produce part of the radiation measured, but they cannot be identified unless spectral-logging equipment is used. Some characteristics of the three most important naturally occurring radioactive materials that affect logging are listed herein (Belknap and others, 1959). Average concentrations in 200 shale samples were used to establish the concentration of radioisotopes in the American Petroleum Institute calibration pits for gamma logs:

	Energy of major gamma peaks (million electron volts)	Number of photons per second per gram	Average content in 200 shale samples	Percentage of total gamma intensity of shale samples
Potassium-40---	1.46	3.4	2 percent (of total potassium)	19
Uranium-238 series in equilibrium--	1.76	2.810	6 parts per million	47
Thorium-232 series in equilibrium--	2.62	1.010	12 parts per million	34

Note that in the 200 shale samples collected from various localities in the United States, the uranium series contributed almost one-half the gamma radiation even though the average content was 6 ppm. This results from the substantial specific activity of the uranium series. The average potassium content was 2 percent of which potassium-40 constitutes only about 0.012 percent. Potassium is abundant in some feldspar and mica that decompose to clay. Uranium and thorium are concentrated in clay by the processes of adsorption and ion exchange. For these reasons, fine-grained detrital sediments that contain abundant clay tend to be more radioactive than quartz sand and carbonate rocks, although numerous exceptions occur. Rocks can be characterized according to their usual gamma intensity, but knowledge of the local geology is needed to identify the numerous exceptions to the classification shown in figure 46.

Figure 46.--Relative radioactivity of some common rocks.

Coal, limestone, and dolomite usually are less radioactive than shale; however, all these rocks can contain deposits of uranium and be quite radio-active. Basic igneous rocks usually are less radioactive than silicic igneous rocks, but exceptions are known. Several reasons exist for the considerable variability in the radioactivity of rocks. Uranium and thorium are trace elements and are not important in the genesis of rocks. Uranium also is soluble in ground water under some conditions; thus solution, migration, and precipitation may cause redistribution with time. Separation of uranium from its gamma-emitting daughters during migration may cause disequilibrium, which will result in gamma-log response that does not indicate correctly the quantity of uranium present.

#### CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

The petroleum industry has adopted the American Petroleum Institute (API) gamma ray unit as the standard for scales on gamma logs, but the unit is not widely used in water-well logging to date. A number of different units have been used in the past such as milli-roentgen per hour, "inches of deflection," and "standard units." Conversion between some of the older units used by commercial-service companies is included in Desbrandes (1968); but, in general, if logging probes have not been calibrated in the same pit, the accuracy of scale conversion is questionable.

Most laboratory radiation-counting equipment provides a direct reading in pulses or counts per second or minute; because this is a direct reading, these units have been adopted for many of the small loggers used for water wells. Pulses are convenient units to work with because readily available pulse generators can be used to establish and display scales on logs, and pulses are recorded using digital ratemeters for onsite digitizing of logs. Unfortunately, although convenient to work with, pulses per unit time cannot be used for comparing logs quantitatively and they have no meaning with respect to the actual flux in a radiation field. For example, gamma probes with different-size crystals or with different electronics probably will produce markedly different count rates in the same well at the same depth. The entire logging system needs to be calibrated in a pit or well with a known intensity of radiation or known concentration of radioisotopes.

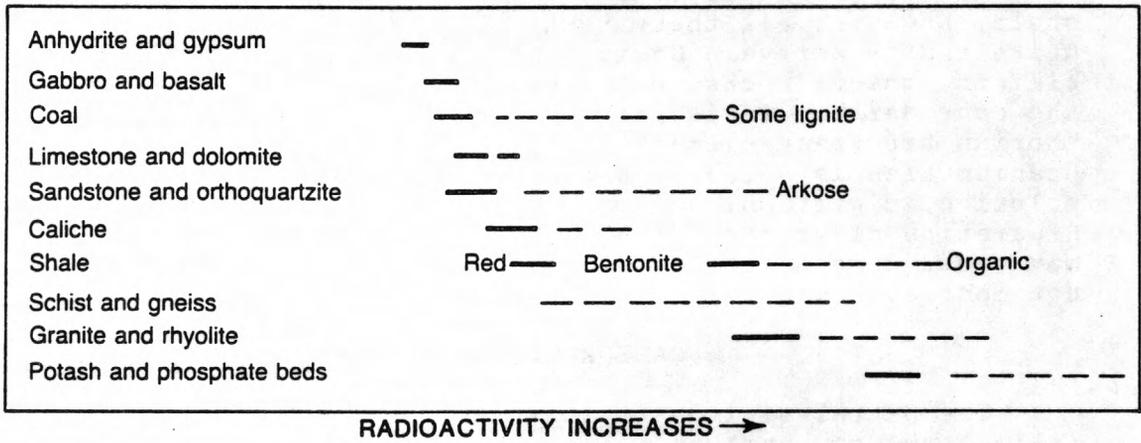


Figure 46.--Relative radioactivity of some common rocks.

The U. S. Department of Energy maintains a number of calibration pits for gamma probes; separate pits exist for each of the naturally occurring gamma emitters--uranium, thorium, and potassium. These pits are not suitable for calibrating most gamma probes used in water-well logging, because the contents of the radioelements tend to be much greater than the average content of these radioelements in most aquifers and related rocks. In contrast, the American Petroleum Institute's calibration pit for gamma probes contains these radioisotopes in concentrations typical of shale; this pit has become the worldwide standard for all logging related to petroleum. For this reason, the adoption of the API gamma-ray unit for use in ground water would seem logical. The API gamma-ray unit is defined as 1/200 of the difference in deflection of a gamma log between an interval of negligible radioactivity in the pit and the interval that contains the same relative proportions of radioisotopes as an average shale, but about twice the total radioactivity.

One or more field standards are needed when calibrating in a pit or well and when calibrating frequently during logging operations to assure that a gamma-logging system is stable with respect to time and temperature. Field standards may consist of radioactive sources that can be held in one or more fixed positions in relation to the detector while readings are made. If this approach is used, the probe is best located at least several feet above the ground and distant from a logging truck that contains other radioactive sources that could contribute to the background radiation. Radiation measurements around the logging truck will determine the proper distance. Another approach is to fabricate sleeves consisting of two concentric pipes with welded end pieces. After one end is welded to the pipes the annular space between the pipes is filled with a radioactive cement slurry that is allowed to set up before the other end piece is welded to the pipes. The standard is not used for a month to allow radon to reach equilibrium. The advantages of this method are that a more uniform radiation field is produced, the sleeves tend to shield the background contribution, and proportions of radioisotopes can be selected to approximate those in the American Petroleum Institute's calibration pit or other calibration facility. If natural uranium, thorium, and potassium are used, the half-lives are so long that no correction need be made for radioactive decay, which would be necessary for many artificial sources.

## VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION

The volume of material investigated by a gamma probe is related to the energy of the radiation measured, the density of the material through which that radiation must pass, and the design of the probe. Dense rock, steel casing, and cement will decrease the radiation that reaches the detector, particularly from a greater distance from the borehole. Wahl (1983) demonstrates that, based on a computer model, the effect of rock density is negligible. Higher energy gamma radiation, such as that from uranium and thorium, will travel further than the lower energy radiation from potassium-40; however, Wahl (1983) has determined that, from a practical standpoint, little difference occurs in the volume of investigation for uranium and thorium. This lack of difference probably results from the fact that although thorium has a higher energy peak, more of its activity comes from low energy peaks than for uranium. Energy discrimination used in the probe and a dense or thick housing around the detector may decrease the low energy radiation detected. Under most conditions, 90 percent of the gamma radiation detected probably originates from material within 6 to 12 in. of the borehole wall. The volume of material contributing to the measured signal may be considered approximately spherical, with no distinct boundary at the outer surface. The vertical dimension of this volume also will depend on the length of the crystal, which will affect the resolution of thin beds. Because the detector is at the center of the volume investigated, radioactivity measured when the detector is located at a bed contact will be an average of the two beds. The actual radioactivity of beds with a thickness less than twice the radius of investigation will not be recorded.

## EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

The amplitude of gamma-log deflections is changed by any borehole conditions that alter the density of the material through which the gamma photons must pass or the length of the travel path. Thus, casing and cement will decrease the recorded radiation, as will large-diameter wells. The type of borehole fluid has a minor effect unless the borehole is large in diameter or the mud contains radioactive clay or sylvite. Heavy drilling mud also can attenuate gamma radiation. All these extraneous effects are less on gamma logs than they are on other types of nuclear logs. Thick gravel pack in the annular space behind the casing may limit the usefulness of gamma logs. If the gravel pack is composed of a rock such as dolomite with minimal radioactivity, it will decrease the gamma response from the aquifer. If a granitic or arkosic material is used, gamma-log response will be anomalously large. Changes in gamma-log response with time are common. Increases in gamma radiation have been detected in oil wells that produce large quantities of saltwater. Changes in gamma response during 1 year, which apparently were caused by migration of uranium daughter products along fractures, have been reported (Keys, 1984). Radon distribution, determined from gamma logs, has been used to identify intervals of water entry or loss and to calculate the rate of water inflow in boreholes in igneous rock (Nelson and others, 1980).

The position of a gamma probe in a well may introduce an error in the count rate measured. Unless they are centered intentionally, probes slide along the wall of most boreholes because they usually are deviated enough to prevent the probe from remaining in the center. The ratio of the count rates from a centralized gamma probe to those from a decentralized gamma probe is plotted in figure 47 (Ulrich Schimschal, U.S. Geological Survey, written commun., 1981). Note that the difference is small for a 4+-in. diameter hole, but quite large for a 12-in. diameter borehole; the difference also was greater for thorium than for uranium.

#### INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

Because of numerous deviations from the typical response of gamma logs to lithology, some background information on each new study area is needed to decrease the possibility of errors in interpretation. Typical gamma-log response in a hypothetical well, that penetrates a sedimentary sequence and bottoms in granite, is shown in figure 48. See figures 7 and 8 for the response of other logs in this rock sequence and for the response of gamma and other logs in igneous rocks. Note that coal, gypsum, and anhydrite all are recorded as a decreased gamma intensity on the log in figure 48, so that other logs are needed to distinguish between these rock types. Shale tends to be more radioactive than sandstone, which usually is more radioactive than limestone. Quartz sandstone usually is less radioactive than sandstone containing other minerals; arkose tends to give a greater gamma deflection than either. Granitic basement rocks are likely more radioactive than any of the other rocks shown. Note that no effect occurs on the gamma log from the change in water quality and that borehole-diameter effects are minor. The 10-in. casing in alluvium does decrease the gamma-log response; however, the magnitude is not known because the lithology changes at the bottom of the casing.

Figure 47.--Effect of the position of a gamma probe in a borehole as a function of borehole diameter for uranium and thorium radiation (Ulrich Schimschal, U.S. Geological Survey, written commun., 1981).

Figure 48.--Typical response of gamma and caliper logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks.

Gamma logs are used for correlation of rock units; however, this approach can result in erroneous correlation without an understanding of the gamma-log response within the area being studied. For example, gradual lateral change in grain size or increase in arkosic materials in a sandstone may change the response of gamma logs. Where both gamma logs and spontaneous-potential logs are available in an area, they may be interpreted similarly if the spontaneous-potential log was made under the right conditions. The similar response of these two logs in a sequence of detrital sediments is shown in figure 29.

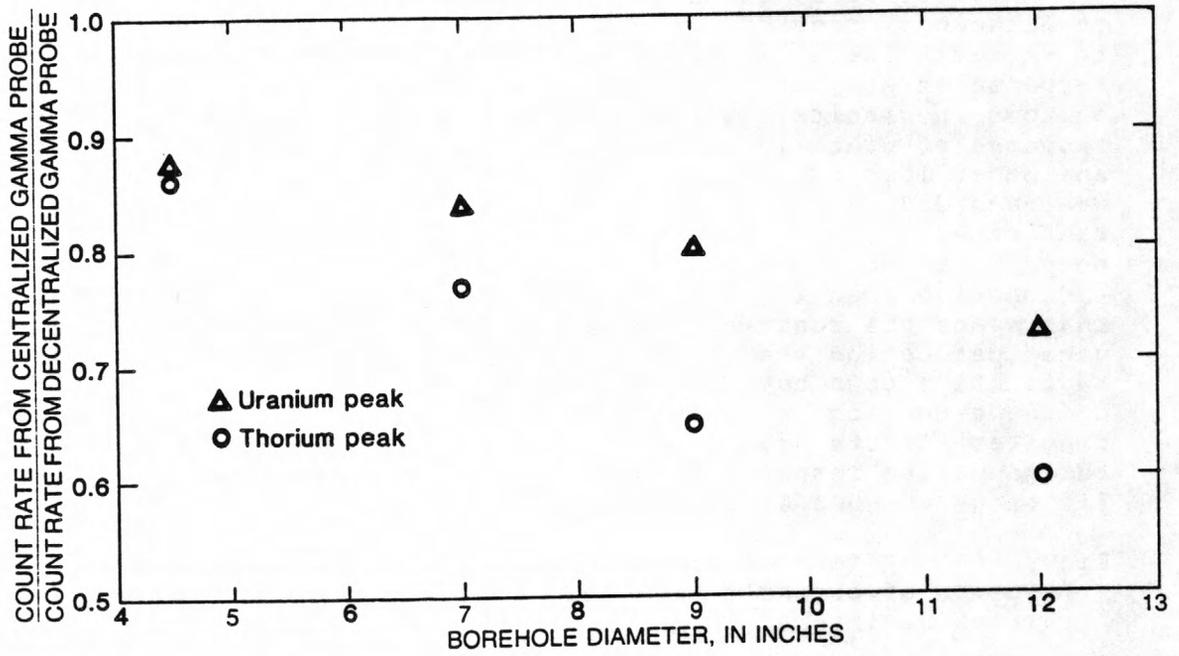


Figure 47.--Effect of the position of a gamma probe in a borehole as a function of borehole diameter for uranium and thorium radiation (Ulrich Schimschal, U.S. Geological Survey, written commun., 1981).

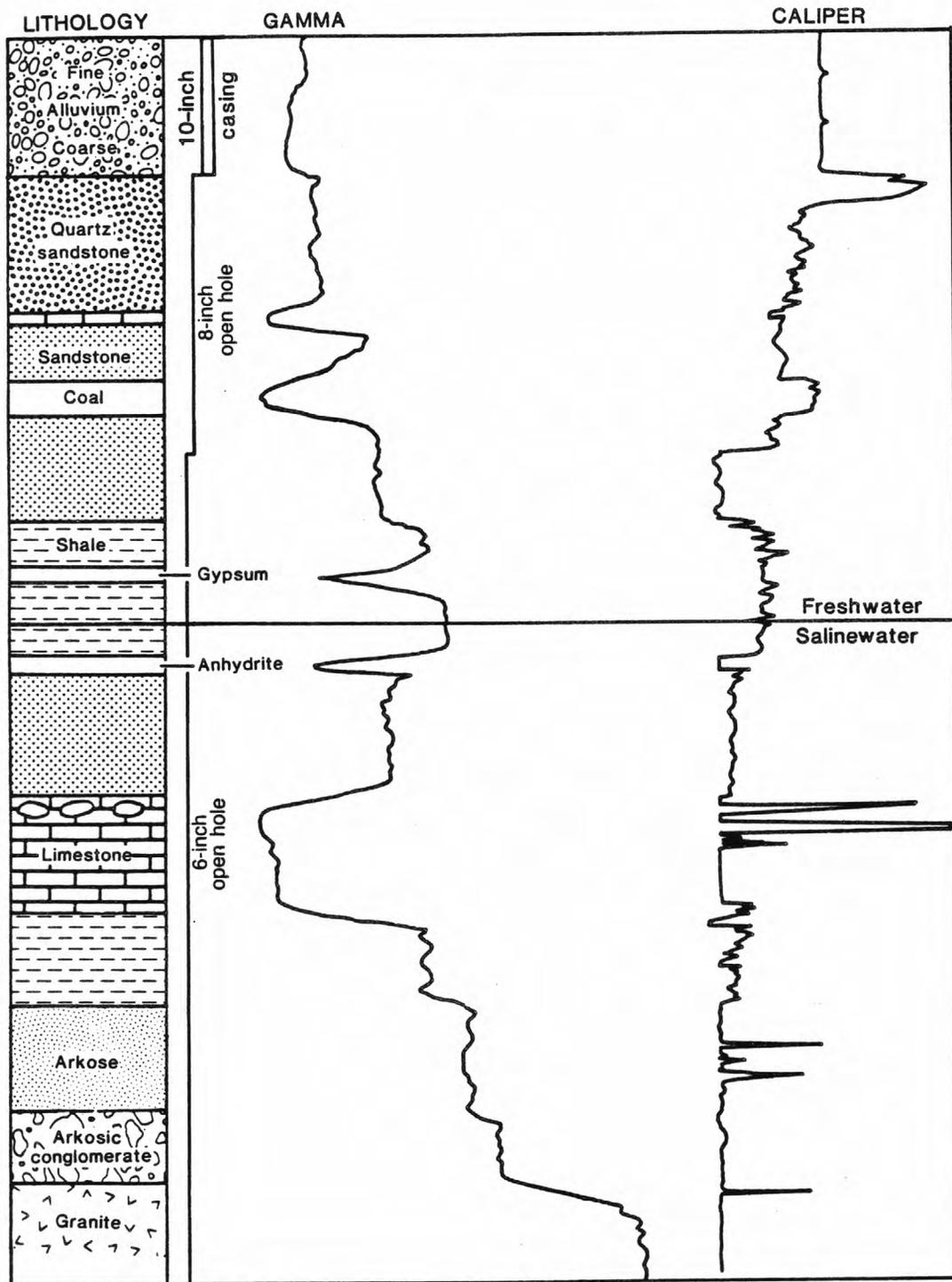


Figure 48.--Typical response of gamma and caliper logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks.

In igneous rocks, gamma intensity is greater in silicic rocks, such as granite, than in basic rocks, such as andesite. Orthoclase and biotite are two minerals that contain radioisotopes in igneous rocks; they can contribute to the radioactivity of sedimentary rocks if chemical decomposition has not been too great. A relation between gamma-log response and the content of orthoclase and biotite in a borehole drilled in igneous rocks is demonstrated in figure 49.

Figure 49.--Percentage of orthoclase and biotite versus gamma-log response in borehole CR-6, Ontario, Canada.

Gamma logs are used widely in the petroleum industry to establish the clay or shale content of reservoir rocks; this application also is valid in ground-water studies where laboratory data support a relation. The relation between the percentage of silt and clay from core analyses and the gamma-log response in a series of valley-fill sediments is demonstrated in figure 50. The increase in radioactivity from an increase in fine-grained materials has been the basis for a number of studies relating gamma-log response to permeability in various parts of the world, such as the Denver-Julesburg basin in Colorado, Texas, India, and Russia (Rabe, 1957; Keys and MacCary, 1973; Gaur and Singh, 1965; Raplova, 1961). If gamma logs are to be interpreted quantitatively, then using the amplitude of the gamma response is not correct. Scott and others (1961) demonstrated that the area under the gamma curve is proportional to the bed thickness times the quantity of radioisotope present. If gamma logs are to be interpreted quantitatively, a number of considerations that are beyond the scope of this manual are well described by Killeen (1982). The usefulness of gamma measurements for this and other ground-water applications probably will be increased by using borehole-gamma spectrometry.

Figure 50.--Relation between gamma radiation and percentage silt and clay from analysis of core samples from near Bear Creek, Colo.

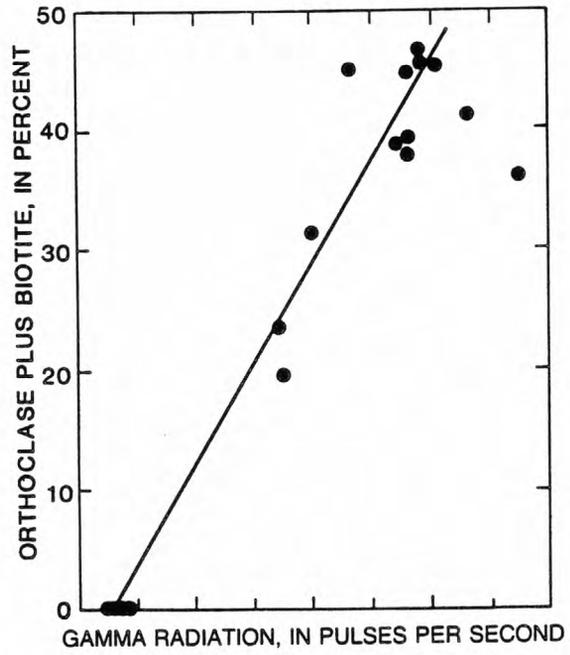


Figure 49.--Percentage of orthoclase and biotite versus gamma-log response in borehole CR-6, Ontario, Canada.

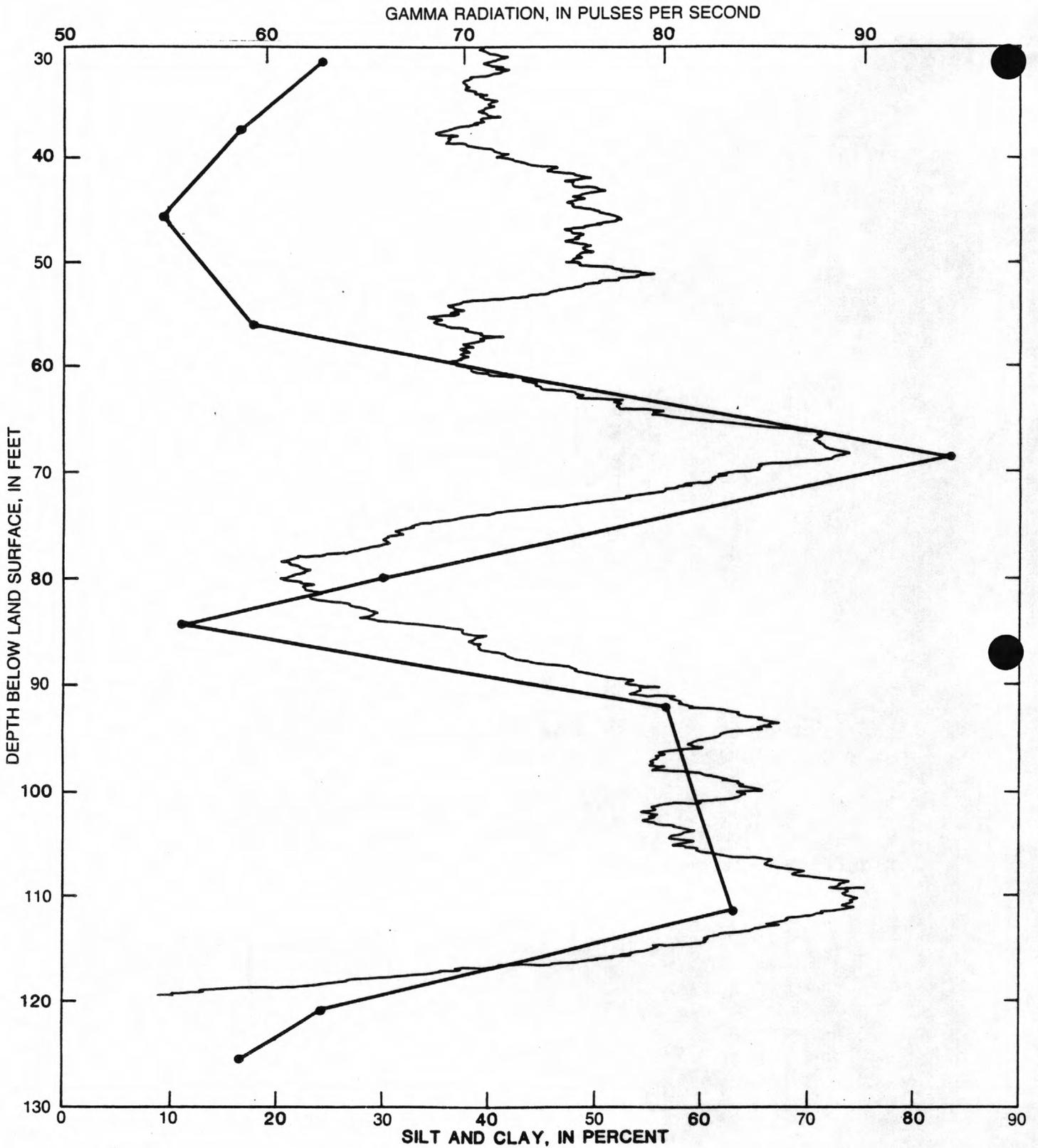


Figure 50.--Relation between gamma radiation and percentage of silt and clay from analysis of core samples from near Bear Creek, Colo.

## GAMMA-SPECTROMETRY LOGGING

Gamma-spectrometry logging permits the identification and quantitative analysis of the radioisotopes that contribute to the gross count rate that is recorded on a gamma log. Gamma spectrometry in boreholes can provide much more diagnostic information on lithology than a gamma log and can be used to identify natural and artificial radioisotopes migrating in ground water. The equipment required to make gamma spectrometry logs consists of a probe designed to transmit variable height pulses up the cable and a multichannel analyzer. Determining the concentration of radioactive elements requires computer analysis. Gamma-spectrometry logging is now used widely in the petroleum industry, but it has not received the use that is justified in water-resources investigations even though this author applied it to ground-water contamination problems more than two decades ago.

### PRINCIPLES

As described in the section on the Fundamentals of Nuclear Geophysics, radioisotopes emit particles and gamma photons that have an energy that is characteristic of the isotope. In the previous section on gamma logging, the radiation measured was described as coming from the decay series of uranium, thorium and potassium. Following are simplified decay series for these naturally occurring radioisotopes; the energy of the most important gamma peaks is shown in parentheses, following the isotope from which it is emitted:

Potassium-40 (1.46 Mev) -> argon-40 (stable).

Uranium-238 -> thorium-234 -> protactinium-234 -> uranium-234 -> thorium-230 -> radium-226 -> radon-222 -> polonium-218 -> lead-214 -> bismuth-214 (0.6, 1.12, 1.76 and 2.20 Mev) -> polonium-214 (or thallium-210) -> lead-210 -> bismuth-210 -> polonium-210 -> lead-206 (stable).

Thorium-232 -> radium-228 -> actinium-228 (0.9 and 1.6 Mev) -> thorium-228 -> radium-224 -> radon-220 -> polonium-216 -> lead-212 -> bismuth-212 -> polonium-212 (or thallium-208 2.62 Mev) -> lead-208 (stable)

Each of the radioisotopes in these decay series will be present in a quantity related to its half life if the system is in equilibrium. Secular disequilibrium is caused by selective removal of any of the isotopes in the series; measurement of the quantity of gamma emitters by standard-spectrometry techniques will not permit calculation of the correct quantity of other isotopes that are present in the series. For this reason, gamma-spectral analyses of samples for uranium content usually are reported as radium-equivalent uranium.

Gamma-spectral data may be recorded in boreholes on a continuous basis or at selected depths with the probe stationary. To record a full spectrum of the naturally occurring gamma emitters, the multichannel analyzer usually is set to record the energy range from 0 to 3 Mev. The way that individual spectra for the three series would appear, measured by a sodium-iodide crystal, if they were distinguishable on the analog display of a multichannel analyzer is shown in figure 51. A catalog of gamma spectra recorded for 277 radioisotopes using a sodium-iodide crystal permits identification from such an analog display, if there are not too many interfering isotopes (Heath, 1964). Gamma spectra usually are recorded in both analog and digital format. In actual practice, the pulses recorded in each channel are superimposed; a composite spectrum is produced that is the sum of the spectra shown. If the concentrations of uranium, thorium and potassium are sufficient, the energy peaks at 1.76, 2.62 and 1.46 Mev will be distinguishable in a composite spectrum, along with other lesser peaks. These are the peaks that are used most often to identify the three naturally occurring series.

Figure 51.--Gamma spectra for the uranium-238 series, thorium-232 series, and potassium-40.

To estimate the quantity of radioisotopes present, the area under a peak needs to be calculated; however, it should be apparent (see fig. 51) that a significant contribution to the pulses occurs in the 1.46-Mev potassium peak from both uranium and thorium. Similarly, a major contribution to the 1.76-Mev uranium peak is from thorium, if much is present. To remove this unwanted contribution, a technique called spectral stripping is used. Spectral stripping and counting the number of pulses within a peak may be done in most multichannel analyzers that are computer based. Careful equipment calibration permits the thorium spectrum to be removed selectively, based on the 2.62-Mev peak; then the uranium spectrum may be stripped out, based on the 1.76-Mev peak. This stripping process may be done at individual depths or on a continuous basis. For a more complete description of the quantitative analysis of gamma-spectral data, see Killeen (1982).

To do continuous spectral logging, which records separate curves representative of the content of selected radioisotopes, energy windows are employed. Single-channel analyzers are set to record all pulses within the energy ranges representative of the three peaks shown in figure 51. They may be stripped in real time with a computer. The result is plotted as a spectral log, or KUT log, which usually has at least four traces, a gamma log, and curves that should represent the quantities of potassium (K), uranium (U), and thorium (T) that are present. The count rates in the channels selected may be quite small, so a large crystal is needed and logging needs to be done at a slow speed. Because of the complexity of the real-time calculations to produce a spectral log, substantial errors in the quantitative results are common. The logs need to be checked with laboratory analyses of core and stationary spectral measurements. Spectral-logging equipment now is available from the large commercial-service companies; the equipment may be purchased, although it is expensive.

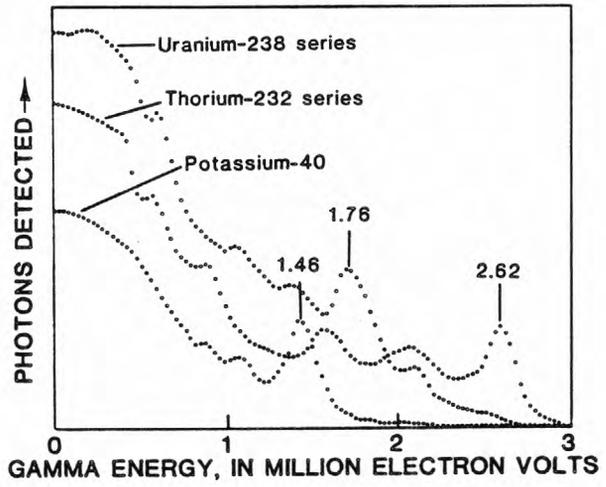


Figure 51.--Gamma spectra for the uranium-238 series, thorium-232 series, and potassium-40.

Although most spectral equipment in use for logging today uses sodium- or cesium-iodide crystals, solid-state detectors are available to increase the resolution and make it possible to identify disequilibrium. A comparison of a spectrum run in a test hole at Oak Ridge, Tenn., with a sodium-iodide crystal and with a solid-state germanium detector (Keys, Senftle and Tanner, 1979) is shown in figure 52. Note that the solid-state germanium detector has much greater resolution and permits the identification of peaks not resolved by the sodium-iodide crystal. Several disadvantages occur with solid-state detectors: they are expensive to buy and operate; the detector in this example had to be operated at cryogenic temperatures; and most of these detectors have minimal efficiency, particularly at greater energies. For this reason, count rates may be small in the upper one-half of a natural-gamma spectrum.

Figure 52.--Gamma spectra recorded in test hole 5-T83-5, Oak Ridge, Tenn. Upper spectrum recorded with a germanium detector; lower spectrum recorded with a sodium-iodide crystal (modified from Keys, Senftle, and Tanner, 1979).

#### CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

The U.S. Department of Energy's pits described in the general section on calibration and standardization, may be used to calibrate spectral-logging equipment, and a new pit for spectral probes has been constructed at the American Petroleum Institute's facilities at the University of Houston, although analytical data are not available at this time. The U.S. Department of Energy's pits offer different hole sizes and concentrations of radioisotopes, with the emphasis on uranium. Commercial well-logging service companies also have calibration pits for spectral equipment; these may be available by special arrangement. The only other procedure for calibration is comparison with laboratory analyses of core. Field standards need to be used frequently during both calibration and spectral logging. The U.S. Geological Survey developed bucket standards for checking spectral equipment onsite. A tube, that fits the probe tightly, is placed in the center of two 5-gal buckets. One 5-gal bucket is filled with quartz sand and another with potassium hydroxide for a potassium standard. Four or five small uranium or thorium sources are taped to the outside of the sand-filled bucket to simulate the scattering that takes place near a borehole. Natural radioisotopes could be mixed in the sand, with cement, and a lid welded on after the cement has set. The material in the standard can be analyzed in a laboratory, or the concentration can be determined by comparison with calibration pits; however, buckets of this size may not simulate an infinite source, with respect to probe response. A model or standard may be considered to be infinite when an increase in size produces no change in the measurement. Field standards are designed so that the crystal is in the center of the standard when measurements are made and the counting periods are long enough to produce a small statistical error.

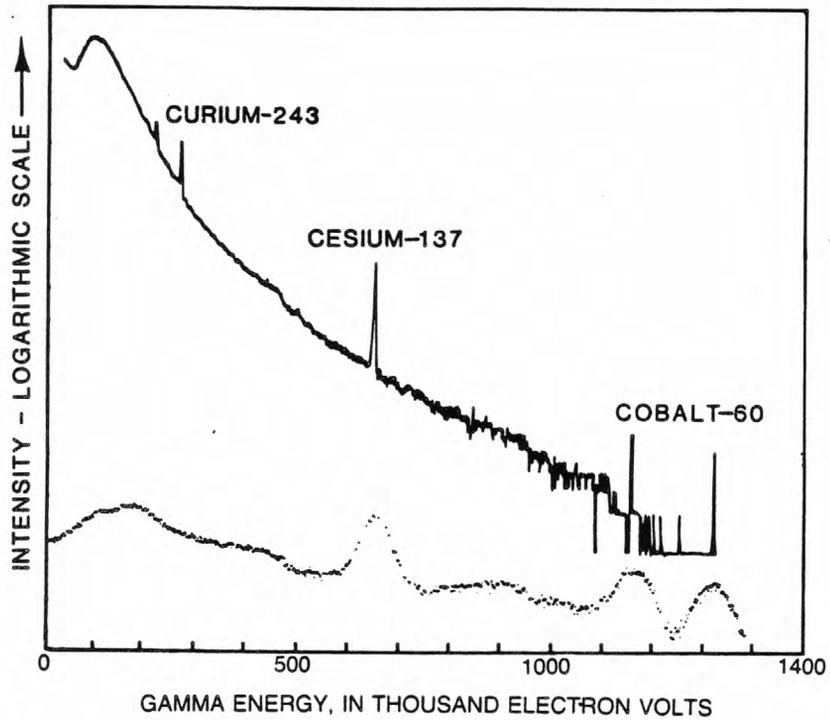


Figure 52.--Gamma spectra recorded in test hole 5-T83-5, Oak Ridge, Tenn.  
 Upper spectrum recorded with a germanium detector; lower spectrum recorded  
 with a sodium-iodide crystal (modified from Keys, Senftle, and Tanner, 1979).

## VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION AND EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

The volume of investigation and extraneous effects are similar to those for a gamma log, except that they need to be considered more rigorously because the results usually are analyzed quantitatively. Ninety percent of the pulses recorded probably originate within 6 to 12 in. of the borehole wall. Borehole diameter, fluid in the borehole, casing, and material in the annular space introduce errors that may be correctable within a limited range. Instrumental drift as a function of time or temperature is common. Many spectral systems incorporate a small, low-energy source and a spectrum stabilizer that locks on the peak from that source and automatically makes drift corrections. Other spectral systems lock the stabilizer on a peak from a naturally occurring radioisotope. Temperature drift of peak locations is common; drift caused by rapid count rates also can take place.

## INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

Not only the methods, but the interpretation and applications of gamma-spectrometry logs are quite different from gamma logs, because the sources of the radioactivity can be identified. Gamma-spectral data from boreholes provide much more diagnostic information on lithology, because the concentration of each of the three naturally occurring radioisotopes can be determined under the proper conditions. Gamma spectrometry logging also permits the identification of artificial radioisotopes that might be contaminating ground-water supplies or that are produced by neutron activation. The later application is described under neutron logging.

The practical application of gamma spectrometry to a problem in artificial recharge near Lubbock, Tex. (Keys and Brown, 1971), is illustrated in figures 53 and 54. Laboratory analyses of core samples from below a site being considered for a recharge pond indicated that sediments of the Tertiary Ogallala Formation with the smallest content of clay and calcium carbonate had the largest permeability. Caliche intervals with calcium carbonate contents greater than 35 percent had a lesser permeability that would prevent the downward movement of recharge water. Neither the gamma nor the neutron logs had a diagnostic response that aided in the identification of these caliche intervals. Gamma-spectral analyses permitted the plotting of ratios of radium to thorium and radium to potassium. Radium equivalent is reported here, because disequilibrium may occur in these sediments. The large ratios correlate well with the intervals of large calcium carbonate content (fig. 53). The radium-potassium ratio can be used to identify clay, sand, and caliche at this site (fig. 54). At other sites underlain by the Ogallala Formation, caliche was determined to have an anomalously large concentration of uranium or its daughter products, although the permeability of these intervals was not always small. Isotopes in the uranium series may have been transported relatively recently by ground water and precipitated in the caliche. Disequilibrium is relatively common, caused by selective transportation of uranium daughters products.

Figure 53.--Relation of radium-thorium and radium-potassium ratios to calcium carbonate from analyses of gamma spectra, Lubbock, Tex. (modified from Keys and Brown, 1971).

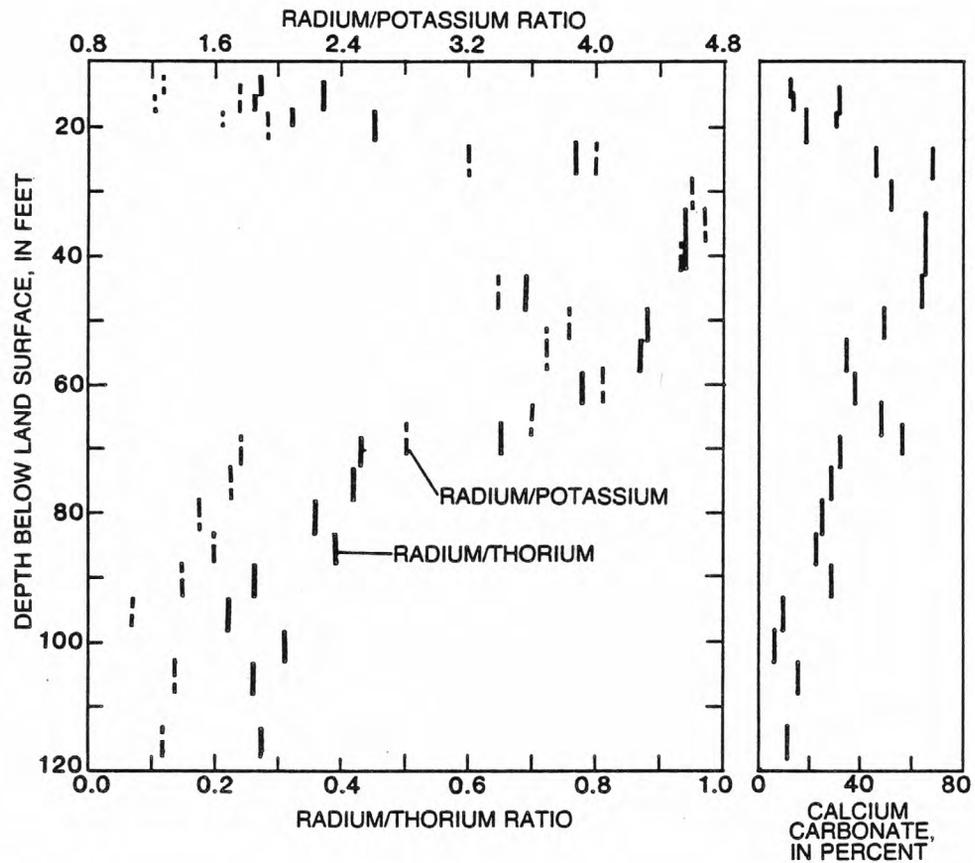


Figure 53.--Relation of radium-thorium and radium-potassium ratios to calcium carbonate from analyses of gamma spectra, Lubbock, Tex. (modified from Keys and Brown, 1971).

Figure 54.--Calcium carbonate versus radium-potassium ratio for a drill hole in the Ogallala Formation (modified from Keys and Brown, 1971)

Radiometric ratios have been used to distinguish clay or shale from other rocks more accurately than the total gamma intensity because of the possibility that the uranium contribution may be the result of post-deposition migration. Secondary concentrations of uranium and daughter products may indicate the presence of fractures, but such concentrations may not be related to lithology. Fractured calcareous and cherty shales, which yield large quantities of oil because of secondary porosity and permeability, have been identified using gamma-spectral logs (Fertl and Rieke, 1979). Some of these fractured shales have an anomalously large uranium content, and much less thorium and potassium. Non-productive shales in the same section have approximately the same total gamma activity, but all three radioelements occur in their usual relative abundance.

The ratio of thorium to potassium has been reported to be related to the mineralogical composition of shale (Quirein and others, 1982). This ratio can be correlated with the percentage of illite clay in shale. These authors present a classification of clay, feldspar, and mica minerals as a function of expected thorium and potassium concentrations. Gamma-spectrometry logging has been used to identify fractured and altered intervals in a geothermal well penetrating sedimentary rocks and in a nongeothermal well penetrating igneous rocks (Keys, 1982). Water moving through fractures apparently leached out much of the potassium deposited near the margins of the permeable intervals.

A probe housing with a small atomic number has been developed so that low energy gamma radiation in the photoelectric region can be measured with a spectral probe (Gadeken and others, 1984). Reportedly, the photoelectric portion of the spectrum provides additional information on lithology; measurements of casing thickness can be made with this probe. The photoelectric factor (Pe) is derived from the ratio of counts in the higher energy Compton window to counts in the photoelectric window. The reported values of Pe for quartz is 1.81; for dolomite it is 3.14; and for calcite it is 5.08.

Borehole-gamma spectrometry has considerable application to the selection of sites for the disposal of radioactive waste and the monitoring of waste migration. A table of gamma-emitting radioisotopes that might be present in such waste and examples of their identification are included in Keys, Senftle and Tanner (1979). An example of the use of gamma spectrometry to identify artificial radioisotopes through casing in a monitoring well is given in figure 55. The well is located near the boundary of the commercial radioactive waste disposal site at Maxey Flats, Ky. Periodic water samples collected from the bottom of this well indicated slight contamination by several radioisotopes. The gamma log on the left side of the figure indicates a significant radioactivity anomaly at a depth of 43 ft, which was identified through casing and cement as being caused by cesium-134 and 137 and cobalt-60. This contamination was not present when the well was drilled, and a spectrum at a depth of 56 ft did not indicate the presence of significant quantities of artificial radioisotopes.

Figure 55.--Gamma log and gamma spectra at three depths, Maxey Flats, Ky. (Keys, Senftle and Tanner 1979).

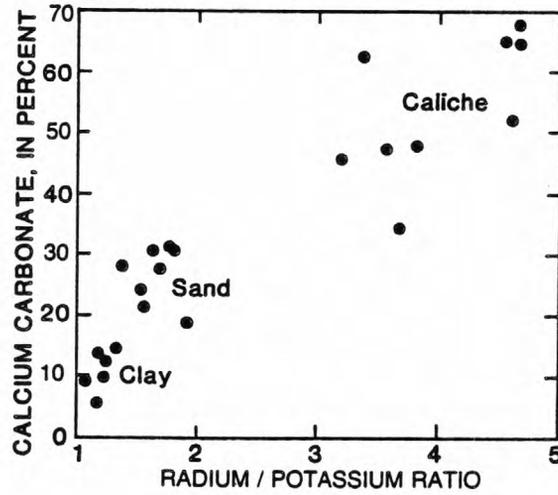


Figure 54.--Calcium carbonate versus radium-potassium ratio for a borehole in the Ogallala Formation (modified from Keys and Brown, 1971).

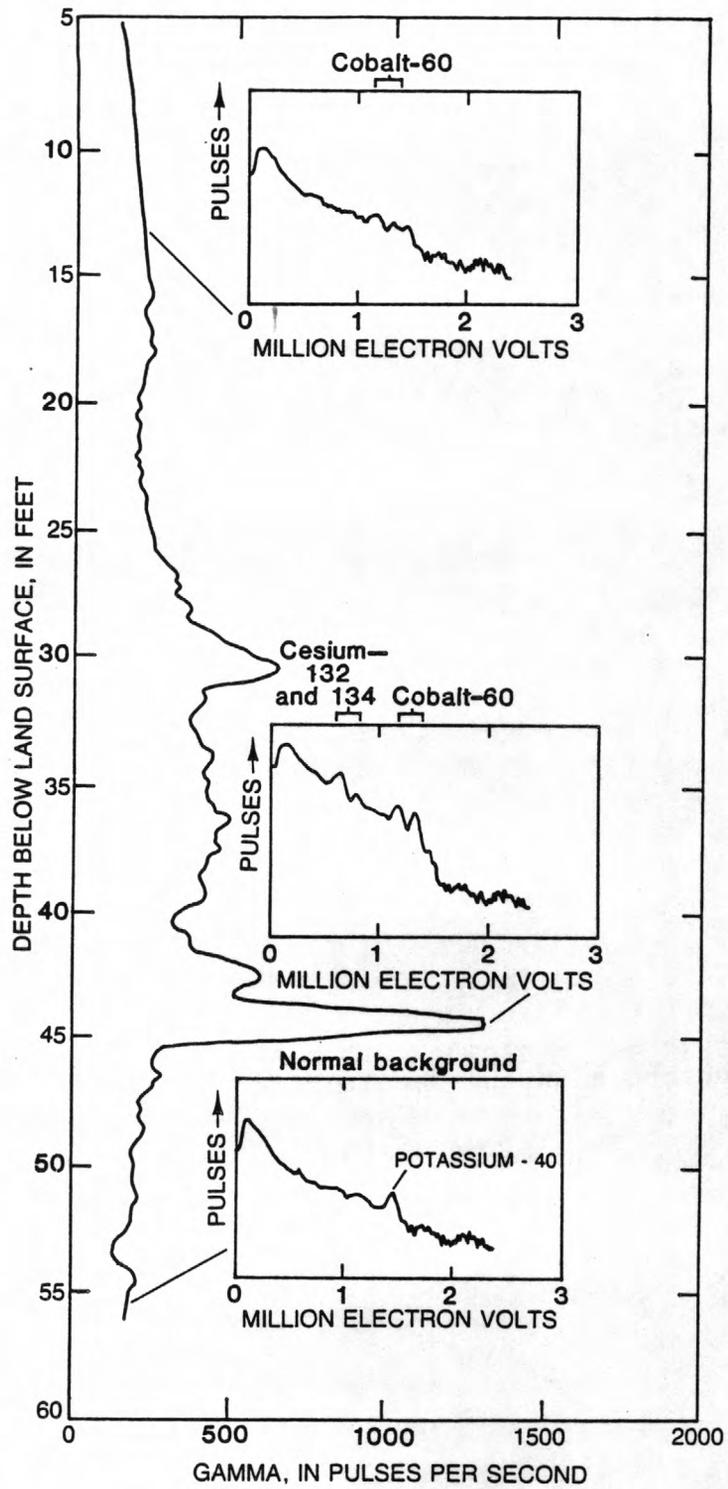
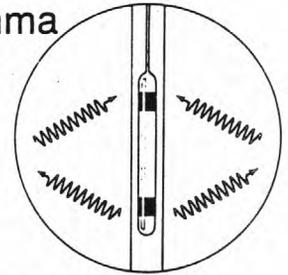


Figure 55.--Gamma log and gamma spectra at three depths, Moxey Flats, Ky. (Keys, Senftle and Tanner, 1979).

## Gamma-Gamma Logging



### GAMMA-GAMMA LOGGING

Gamma-gamma logs, also called density logs, are records of the radiation received at a detector from a gamma source in the probe, after it is attenuated and scattered in the borehole and surrounding rocks. The logs can be calibrated in terms of bulk density under the proper conditions and converted to porosity if grain and fluid density are known. Gamma-gamma logs are extensively used and readily available in the petroleum industry, but they are used much less for ground-water applications.

### PRINCIPLES

Gamma-gamma probes contain a source of gamma radiation, usually cesium-137 in newer probes, and one or more gamma detectors. Cesium-137 has a principal energy peak at 0.66 MeV. Cobalt-60 has been used in the past, but it has greater energy, which increases the effect of elemental composition, and a much shorter half-life, which requires frequent correction and source replacement. A recent study of gamma-gamma logging in ore deposits indicates that a cobalt-60 source will provide density measurement in common rocks that is virtually independent of their chemical composition (Borsaru and others, 1984). The detectors in a gamma-gamma probe are shielded from direct radiation from the source by heavy metal, commonly lead or a tungsten alloy. Modern gamma-gamma probes are decentralized and side-collimated. The two parts of the probe shown in figure 56 screw together with the source and detectors on the bottom. Side collimation with heavy metal tends to focus the radiation from the source and to limit the detected radiation to that part of the wall of the borehole in contact with the source and detectors. The decentralizing caliper arm also provides a log of hole diameter. In some probes, the source and detectors are mounted in a decentralized skid on an arm. The modern probes are called borehole-compensated or borehole-corrected, but logs made with these probes still display some borehole effects. Older probes used a single detector and some were not side collimated so that borehole effects were greater under most conditions.

Figure 56.--Probe for making compensated gamma-gamma logs.

Gamma-gamma logging is based on the principle that the attenuation of gamma radiation as it passes through the borehole and surrounding rocks is proportional to the bulk density of those rocks. Gamma rays or photons react with matter by three processes: Compton scattering, photoelectric absorption, and pair production. Only Compton scattering is not principally dependent on the elemental composition of the matter through which the radiation passes. Compton scattering is the main process in gamma-gamma logging, because pair production cannot take place at energies less than 1.02 MeV, and because the probe shell attenuates the low-energy radiation from photoelectric processes.

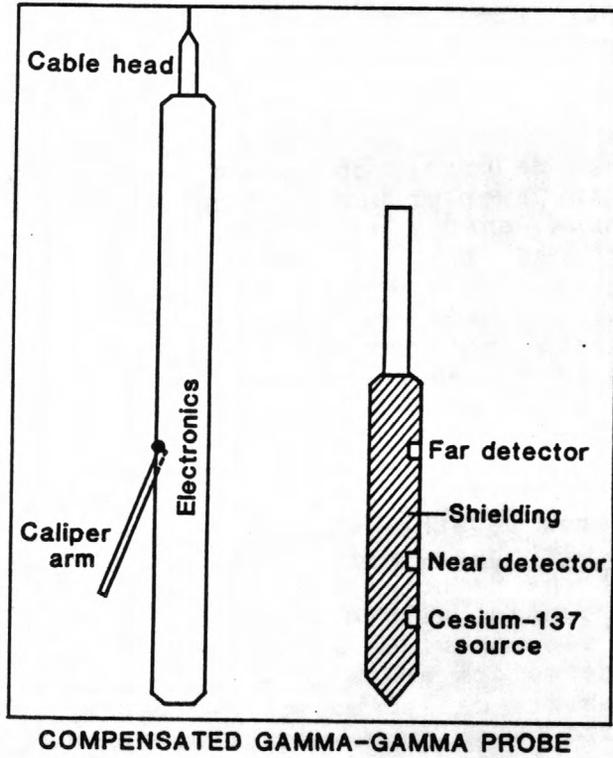


Figure 56.--Probe for making compensated gamma-gamma logs.

If a probe detects only radiation resulting from Compton scattering, the count rate will be inversely proportional to the electron density of the material through which the radiation passes. Electron density is approximately proportional to bulk density for most materials that are logged. A Z/A correction needs to be applied for any minerals that do not have the same ratio of atomic number to atomic mass as the calibration environment (Tittman and Wahl, 1965). Salt and gypsum are two common minerals that require such a correction. A plot of specific gravity or density and Z/A ratios is given in figure 57 for some common minerals.

Figure 57.--Specific gravity and Z/A ratio for some common minerals.  
(no value indicates Z/A ratio not available)

#### CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

Like other logging systems, calibration of gamma-gamma response is best done in pits designed for the purpose. Calibration can be done in porosity pits like the American Petroleum Institute's neutron pit in Houston, Tex. or in pits maintained by commercial-service companies. A set of bulk-density pits is available for free use by anyone at the Denver Federal Center (see table 3). Core also can be used, but precautions need to be taken to avoid using data from any intervals of a borehole that deviate from the uniform borehole size because of the substantial effect of rugosity on the log.

Onsite standardization of probe response usually is done with large blocks of aluminum and magnesium that are machined with a groove that tightly fits the source and detector section of the probe. Aluminum has a density of 2.7 g/cm<sup>3</sup>, and magnesium has a density of 1.71 g/cm<sup>3</sup>. These densities are corrected for the Z/A ratio used to calibrate the probe. These blocks can be used to develop a calibration plot, as explained by Head and Barnett (1980); however, calibration in a pit is likely to be more accurate. The blocks need to be large enough that effects of the environment are minimized, the blocks also need to be located off the ground and away from a logging truck that may contain radioactive sources. Probe standardization needs to be done frequently during calibration and logging operations. Onsite standardization of probe response also can be done with a radioactive source; however, this technique is not as useful because it only tests the detectors and not the complete system as configured for logging.

A "spine and ribs" calibration plot for a dual-detector gamma-gamma probe is given in figure 58. The procedures for developing such a plot are explained in detail by Scott (1977). In figure 58, the X and Y scales are shown in pulses per second; however, they also could be scaled in grams per cubic centimeter if the density response of each of the detectors had been calibrated. Stand-off error is caused when a side-collimated, decentralized probe or skid is separated from the borehole wall by mudcake or wall roughness. Points along the ribs to the right of the spine represent stand-off error, which may be caused by borehole rugosity or low density mudcake; points along ribs to the left of the spine may be caused by high density mud. After the shape of the ribs has been determined by calibrating a probe the spine and ribs plot can be used to obtain density corrected for stand-off even though it may be unknown. This is done by moving from a measured value of long-spaced versus short-spaced count rate along a rib to the correct density on the spine. According to Scott (1977), stand-off errors of 0.4 in. or more may be corrected accurately.

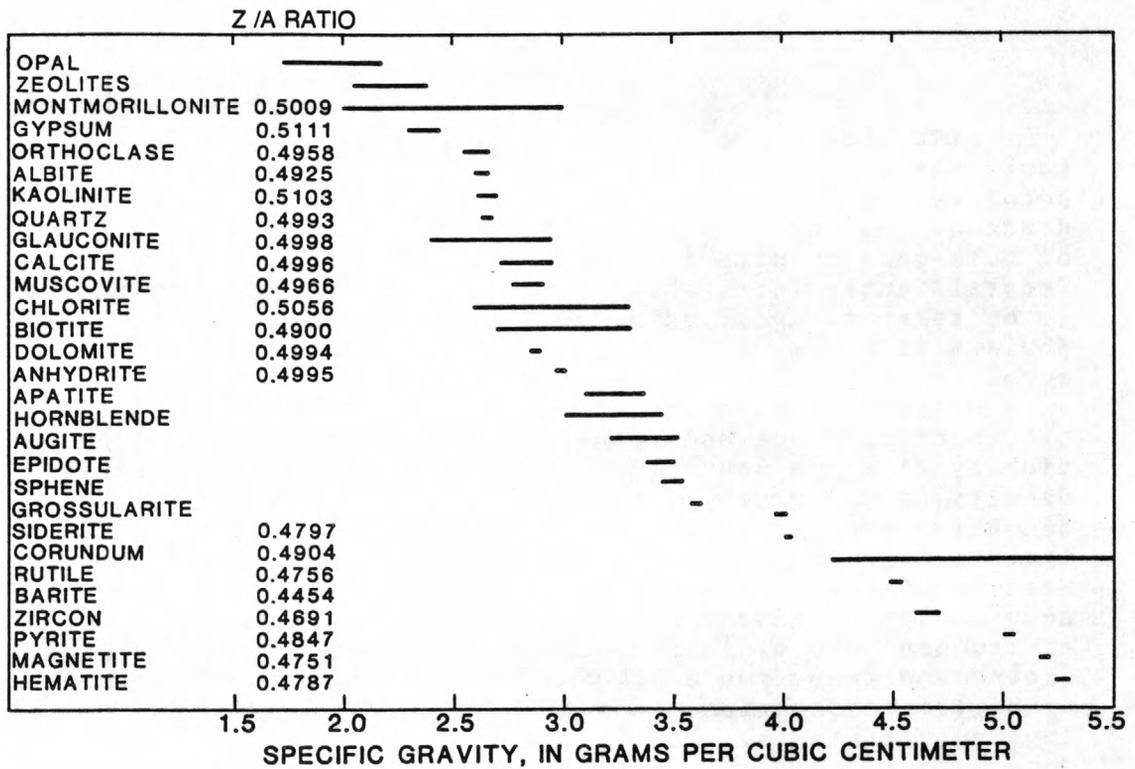


Figure 57.--Specific gravity and Z/A ratio for some common minerals (no value indicates Z/A ratio not available).

Figure 58.--Calibration plot for a gamma-gamma probe with dual detectors.  
" Spine and ribs plot" permits correction for stand-off error.

#### VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION

The volume of investigation of a gamma-gamma probe probably has an average radius of 5 to 6 in.; 90 percent of the pulses recorded originate from within this distance. However, the volume of investigation is a function of many factors. The density of the material being logged and any casing, cement, or mud through which the radiation must pass have a substantial effect on the distance gamma photons will travel before being stopped. Within limits, the greater the spacing between source and detector, the larger the volume of investigation. This is the basis for using detectors at two different spacings. The closer detector is more affected by borehole parameters than the farther detector. In porous rocks, like tuff, a greater than normal spacing needs to be used, which increases the volume of investigation.

Experiments have been made with gamma-gamma transmittance logging for increasing the volume of investigation and decreasing borehole effects (Brown and Keys, 1985). The technique is based on moving synchronously, at the same depth, a source in one borehole and a detector in another borehole located a few feet away. Using a cobalt-60 source, changes in moisture content and porosity were detected between two boreholes located 4 ft apart. For most materials, a borehole spacing of 2 ft probably is better. Gamma-gamma transmittance logs are little affected by the borehole because it is a small part of the material traversed by the radiation. The technique is severely limited by the difficulty in maintaining a constant distance between boreholes. Unless the distance is known accurately, the bulk density cannot be calculated from gamma-gamma transmittance logs; however, changes in bulk density and moisture content can be detected.

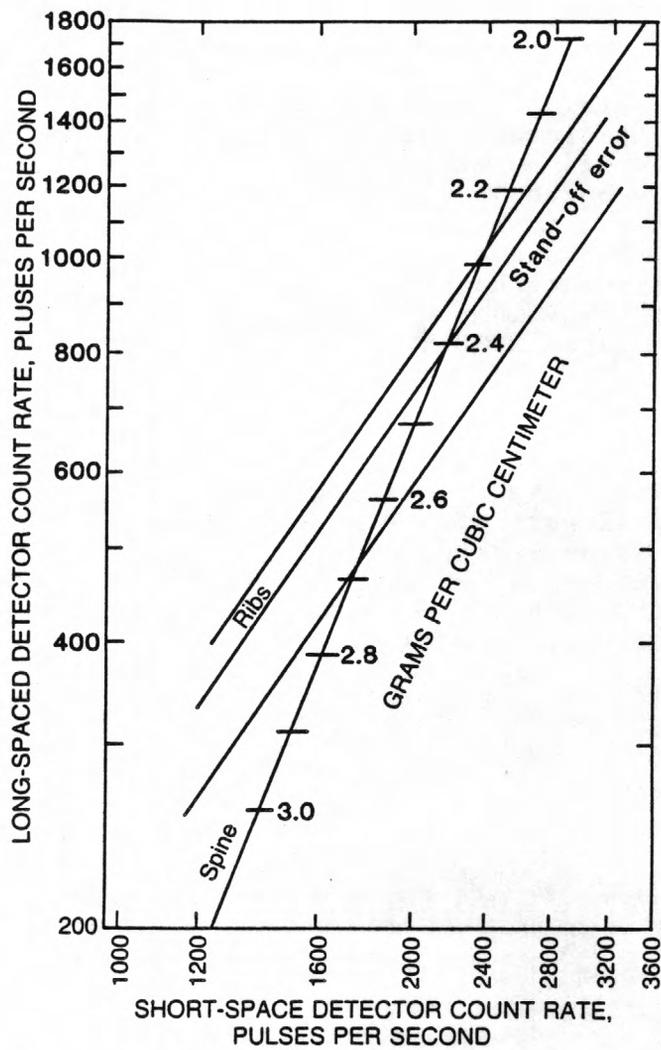


Figure 58.--Calibration plot for a gamma-gamma probe with dual detectors. "Spine and ribs plot" permits correction for stand-off error.

## EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

Gamma-gamma logs demonstrate significant effects from borehole-diameter changes, and casing, cement, mud cake, and probe stand-off. These effects are present on borehole-compensated logs, although smaller in magnitude than on single-detector logs. The effect of borehole-diameter differences on the single-detector gamma-gamma logs that have been most commonly applied to ground-water investigations in the past is illustrated in figure 59. The two boreholes shown in the figure were drilled close together in an area of persistent lithology for long lateral distances. The log on the left was made in a core hole, where drilling was slow, and a large volume of drilling fluid was circulated to maximize core recovery. The log on the right was made in a borehole that was not cored, where drilling was done rapidly by rotary methods to minimize borehole-diameter changes. The caliper logs of these same two boreholes in figure 20 demonstrate that the differences between the two gamma-gamma logs shown by shading are from differences in borehole diameter. The larger diameter washed-out intervals in the slowly drilled core hole are indicated as having a smaller bulk density or larger porosity than the same rocks in the adjacent borehole. Borehole-rugosity effects usually can be recognized by a detailed comparison of a gamma-gamma log with a high-resolution caliper log. When sharp peaks on a caliper log, which indicate borehole rugosity, match sharp negative deflections on a gamma-gamma log, the deflections are most likely the result of borehole-diameter changes. Borsaru and others (1984) suggest that the use of a cobalt-60 source and a correction factor derived from the count rate in high-energy spectral windows can provide a measurement of density that is not sensitive to borehole diameter.

Figure 59.--Effect of drilling technique on gamma-gamma logs. (Note that the boreholes are close together in an area of persistent lithology.)

Casing, cement, and gravel pack all will introduce errors large enough that quantitative interpretation of gamma-gamma logs made through these materials is questionable, unless the thickness is constant and core is available for calibration. The effect of borehole construction on gamma-gamma logs can be used to locate the tops of cemented zones, gravel-pack outside the casing, or one string of casing outside of another. If a gamma-gamma log is run in drillstem or screw-coupled casing, the collars or threaded joints generally will be indicated as sharp deflections on the log.

Errors also will be produced on gamma-gamma logs by background radiation in rocks penetrated by the borehole if the radiation is greater than the standard error of the measured count rate. The background radiation can be determined by running the probe with no radioactive source installed. Substantial background radiation is not a common problem in ground-water investigations; when present however, it can be corrected by using the sensitivity-corrected difference between the count rates from the two detectors (Scott, 1977).

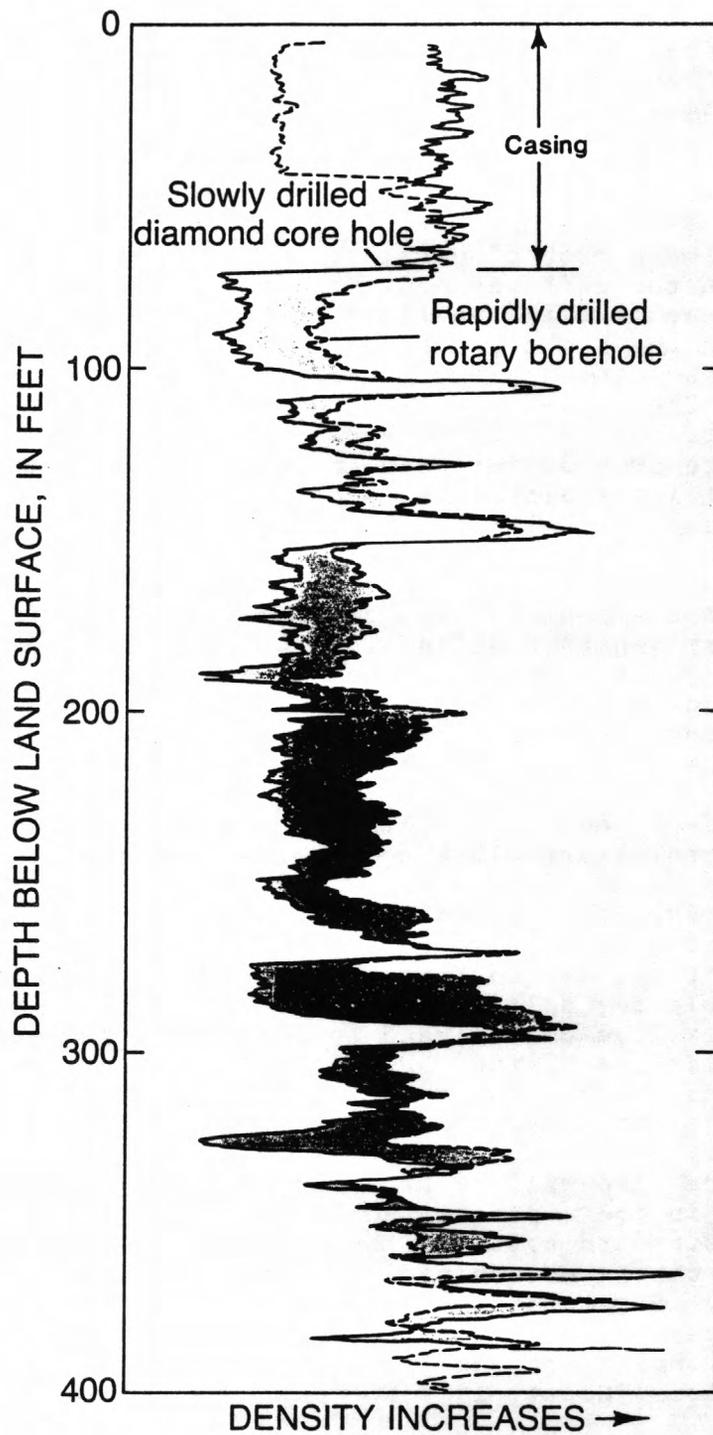


Figure 59.--Effect of drilling technique on gamma-gamma logs. (Note that the boreholes are close together in an area of persistent lithology.)

## INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

Properly calibrated gamma-gamma logs may be used to distinguish lithologic units and to determine well construction, in addition to determining bulk density, porosity, and moisture content. Close source-detector spacing or measurement of the high-energy part of the spectrum will provide borehole-diameter information.

The chief use of gamma-gamma logs has been for determining bulk density that can be converted to porosity. Although commercial gamma-gamma logs generally have a scale indicating porosity, the log response is related directly to electron density, which may be related to bulk density by calibration and correction for Z/A errors. The accuracy of bulk-density determinations with these logs is reported by various authors to be from 0.03 to 0.05 g/cm<sup>3</sup>. The best results are obtained with gamma-gamma logs in rocks of minimal bulk density or substantial porosity. This contrasts with neutron logs, which give the best results in rocks with substantial bulk density or minimal porosity.

Gamma-gamma logs conventionally are recorded with bulk density increasing to the right, which means that porosity increases to the left. Recording was done in this manner because porosity increases to the left on neutron and acoustic-velocity logs. Most equipment used for water-well logging records count rate, which by convention increases from left to right on the analog record. If a gamma-gamma log is run with this equipment, porosity will increase to the right, rather than to the left. This reversal from convention in the petroleum industry has caused much confusion in interpreting the logs; recording all gamma-gamma logs with count rate increasing to the left will avoid the confusion.

The following equation is used to calculate porosity from bulk-density logs:

$$\text{porosity} = (\text{grain density} - \text{bulk density}) / (\text{grain density} - \text{fluid density})$$

Bulk density may be derived from a calibrated and corrected gamma-gamma log. Fluid density is 1 g/cm<sup>3</sup> for most ground-water applications where the rock is saturated with freshwater but fluid density may be as much as 1.1 g/cm<sup>3</sup> in rocks saturated with brine. Grain or mineral density may be obtained from most mineralogy texts; this density is 2.65 g/cm<sup>3</sup> for quartz; 2.71 g/cm<sup>3</sup> commonly is used for limestone, and 2.87 g/cm<sup>3</sup> commonly is used for dolomite. In most large service-company trucks, the gamma-gamma system is programmed to solve this equation in real time and produce a log of porosity. A plot of porosity from laboratory analyses of core samples versus porosity from a compensated gamma-gamma log is shown in figure 60. The scatter of points for this data set is the result of several factors. A density value for limestone matrix was used in the porosity equation although many of the rocks penetrated by this test well are dolomite. Secondary porosity is substantial in some intervals of the test well; usually it is not represented correctly by core samples. Some of the zones of secondary porosity are shown, by a high-resolution caliper log, to be rough and larger than bit size; these zones may introduce a stand-off error.

Another important factor in attempting to relate core analyses to logs is the likelihood of depth discrepancies between the two sets of data. A basic consideration in relating any set of core analyses to equivalent logs is the large difference in the volume of material investigated. Unless the rock is homogeneous, a large number of small core samples will be needed to represent correctly the much larger volume of rock sampled by a log.

Figure 60.--Porosity from core analysis versus porosity from a compensated gamma-gamma log, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

Because moisture content affects the bulk density of rocks, gamma-gamma logs can be used to record changes in moisture above the water table. In most cases, a neutron-logging system is preferred for this purpose, because errors from extraneous effects usually are smaller. If gamma-gamma logs are run before and after drawdown during a pumping test, they can be used to calculate specific yield (Davis, 1967).

Gamma-gamma logs can be used to locate cavities or unfilled annular space behind casing and to locate the top of cement through casing. A comparison of logs made before and after cementing will provide the most accurate location of the top of the cement.

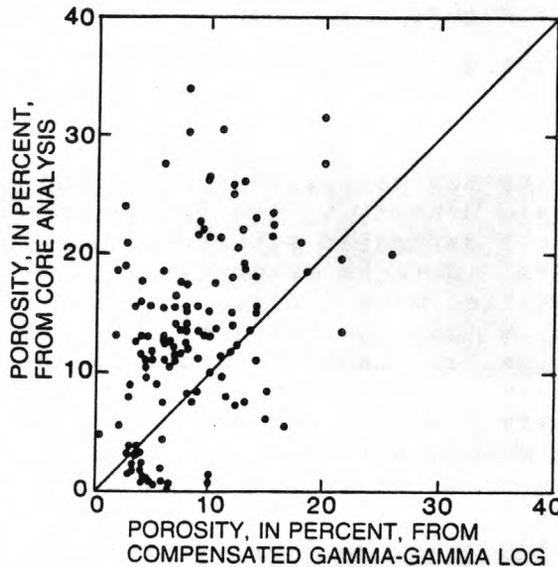
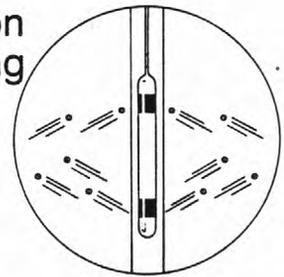


Figure 60.--Porosity from core analysis versus porosity from a compensated gamma-gamma log, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

## Neutron Logging



### NEUTRON LOGGING

Neutron logs are made with a source of neutrons in the probe and detectors that provide a record of the neutron interactions that occur in the vicinity of the borehole. Most of these neutron interactions are related to the quantity of hydrogen present, which, in ground-water environments, is largely a function of the water content of the rocks penetrated by the borehole. Neutron logs are used extensively in the petroleum industry for the measurement of porosity; they also are used to an increasing degree in water-resources investigations because they can be used to determine porosity for a considerable range of borehole conditions and rock types. Two different neutron-logging techniques are used in ground-water studies: (1) Neutron probes with a large source and long spacing are used for measuring saturated porosity; and (2) probes with a small source and short spacing are used for measuring moisture content in the unsaturated zone. Neutron activation, neutron lifetime, and nuclear-magnetic resonance are discussed in a separate section of this manual because they are relatively new and not yet readily available or commonly applied.

### PRINCIPLES

Neutron probes contain a source that emits high-energy neutrons; some neutron sources also emit gamma radiation. Most isotopic-neutron sources are made from a mixture of beryllium and an alpha-emitting radioisotope encapsulated in a double-wall, welded, steel container so that the alpha particles do not escape. The beryllium emits large numbers of neutrons with an energy of a few million electron volts when bombarded with alpha particles. The most common neutron source is a mixture of beryllium and americium, which is used in sizes that range from about 3 to 25 Ci in porosity tools. Moisture probes may use a source as small as 100 mCi. Americium-241 has a half life of 458 years and an average neutron energy of 4.5 MeV. Mixtures of beryllium and radium and beryllium and plutonium still may be used in some older probes. A disadvantage of radium is that it emits substantial gamma radiation; plutonium sources must be large because the isotope has a relatively low specific radioactivity. Californium-252 emits large numbers of neutrons spontaneously, so a source emitting a large neutron flux may be physically small. Californium-252 has been used experimentally for neutron and neutron-activation logging (Keys and Boulogne, 1969). The 50-mCi source used in those tests emitted  $2.1 \times 10^8$  neutrons per second; whereas, a 3 Ci americium-beryllium source typically used for logging water wells emits  $8.62 \times 10^6$  neutrons per second. Californium-252 has the disadvantage of a half life of only 2 1/2 years. If neutron sources are stored near sodium-iodide crystals, which are commonly used in gamma and gamma-gamma probes, the neutron sources will activate the sodium, and the crystals will become temporarily radioactive.

Three general types of neutron-porosity logs exist: neutron-epithermal neutron, neutron-thermal neutron, and neutron-gamma. Three types of detectors typically are used in neutron probes: Lithium iodide crystals, helium-3 tubes, and sodium iodide crystals. Sodium-iodide crystals detect gamma radiation as well as neutrons. The other two detectors can be designed to detect mostly epithermal neutrons; these neutrons provide logs relatively free of errors caused by the chemical composition of the rocks and contained fluids. Cadmium foil may be used to shield detectors from thermal neutrons. Neutron logs, based on the detection of thermal neutrons or gamma rays may be affected markedly by the chemical composition of the material traversed by the neutrons. Thermal-neutron probes are sold for some small loggers because they have the advantage of producing a larger count rate, so that a smaller source can be used. A probe has been described that uses two pairs of detectors--thermal and epithermal (Davis and others, 1981). Because the thermal neutrons are affected by chemical composition, the difference between the two pairs of detectors can provide an indication of clay content. Two or more detectors are used in modern neutron probes, which may be collimated and decentralized. The ratio of the near to the far detector provides logs that are less affected by borehole parameters than are single-detector logs. A schematic drawing of a compensated-epithermal-neutron probe that was developed and tested by the U.S. Geological Survey is given in figure 61. For this probe, porosity is related to the ratio of the count rate from the near to the far detector; a caliper arm and additional detectors, located in the section labeled "borehole geometry gauge," provide data to make corrections for borehole diameter and probe position.

Figure 61.--Probe for making compensated neutron-porosity logs.

The flux of neutrons around a source can be visualized as a cloud of varying neutron density; detectors are located at various distances from the source within the cloud. Fast neutrons emitted by a source undergo three basic types of reactions with matter in and adjacent to the borehole as they lose energy and ultimately are captured: inelastic scatter, elastic scatter, and absorption or capture. The loss of neutron energy is called moderation; and the elements that cause that loss are called moderators. A diagrammatic representation of this process is shown in figure 62. Inelastic scattering only can take place with fast or energetic neutrons immediately after they have been emitted by a source; it is not an important factor in well logging. When a neutron undergoes inelastic scattering off the nucleus of an atom near the source, that nucleus is left in an excited state and emits gamma radiation as it decays back to a stable state. When the neutron energy decreases to less than the threshold for inelastic scatter, that process no longer can take place and elastic scatter becomes the important process.

Figure 62.--Neutron processes, from source to detectors, through rocks surrounding a borehole.

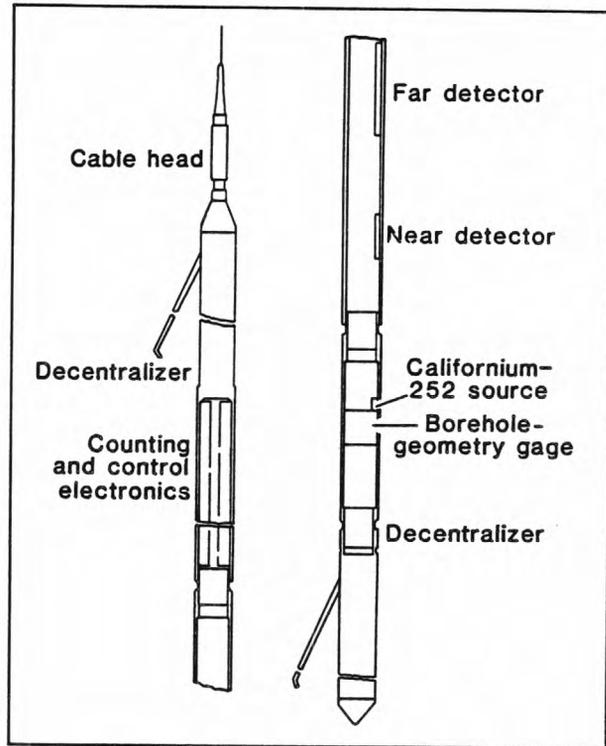


Figure 61.--Probe for making compensated neutron-porosity logs.

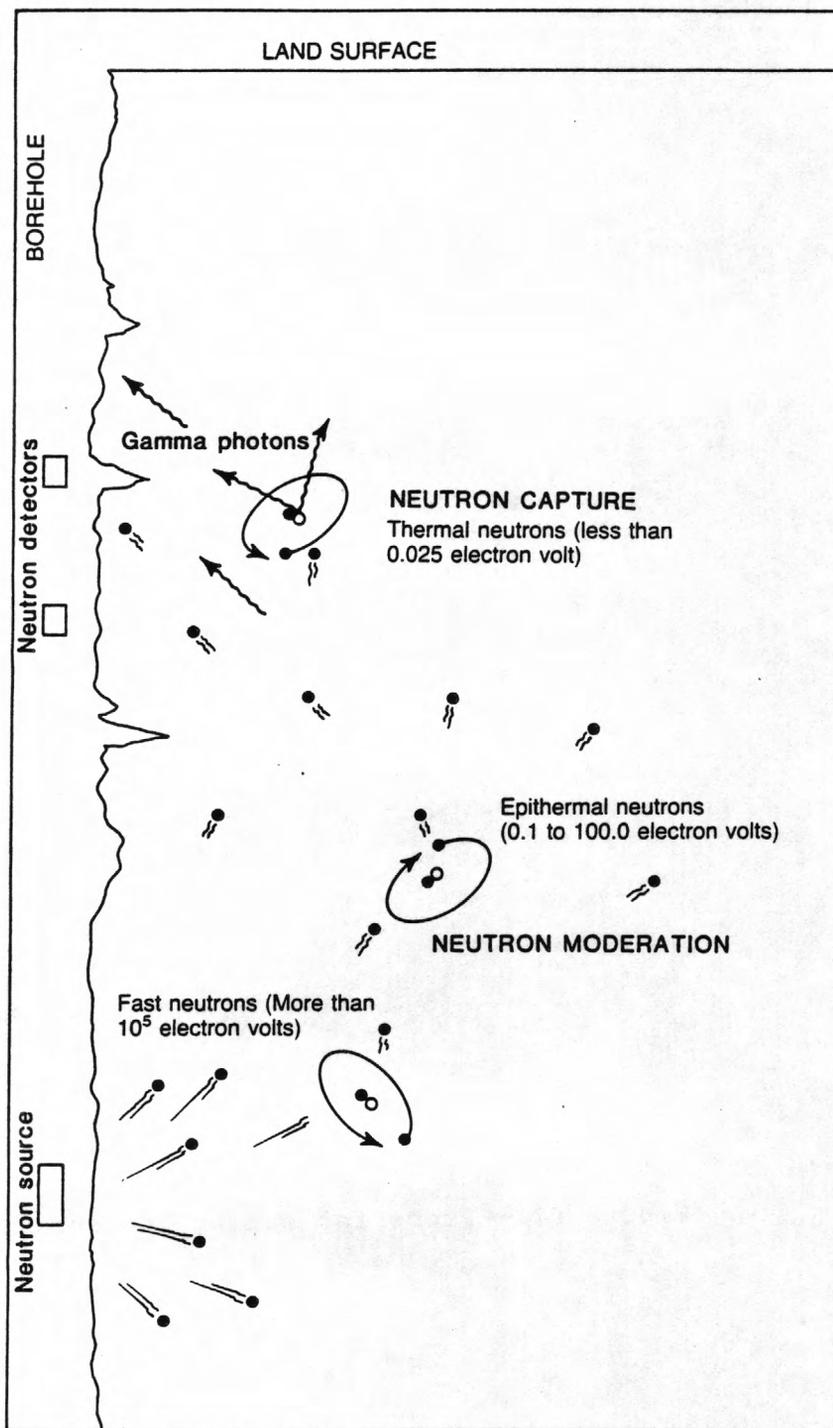


Figure 62.--Neutron processes, from source to detectors, through rocks surrounding a borehole.

In elastic scatter, the mass of the scattering element controls the loss of energy by the neutron. Light elements are most effective in moderating neutrons, whereas heavy elements have little effect on neutron velocity or energy. A comparison of the neutron response of several common elements is presented in table 4. Hydrogen is the element most effective in moderating neutrons because it has the same mass as a neutron. An analogy can be made using a Ping-Pong ball and a billiard ball. The Ping-Pong ball may lose little energy in a direct collision with a billiard ball, but it may lose all of its energy and stop, after a direct collision with another Ping-Pong ball. The probability or cross section for elastic scatter with hydrogen is considerable and, on the average, neutrons lose one-half their energy in each scatter. By this process they are slowed--first, to epithermal energies of 0.1 to 100 eV, then to thermal energies of less than 0.025 eV. Because hydrogen is the most effective moderating element, the cloud of epithermal and thermal neutrons occurs closer to the source in rocks with a large hydrogen (or water) content than in rocks with a small hydrogen (or water) content. Neutron capture takes place along the outer margin of this cloud. The location of the capture margin is more a function of the distance the neutrons take to slow down to thermal energy than the distance they diffuse after they are thermalized.

Table 4.-- Comparison of the neutron response of some common elements for a neutron with an initial energy of 2 million electron volts [Modified after Wood and others, 1974]

Element	Average number of collisions per neutron	Maximum energy loss per collision (percent)	Atomic weight	Atomic number
Calcium-----	371	8	40.1	20
Chlorine-----	318	10	35.5	17
Silicon-----	261	12	28.1	14
Oxygen-----	150	21	16.0	8
Carbon-----	115	28	12.0	6
Hydrogen-----	18	100	1.0	1

Although a few neutron-absorption or neutron-capture reactions may take place at higher energies, most take place at thermal energies. When a thermal neutron is captured by a nucleus, the nucleus becomes excited and instantly emits capture gamma radiation, which has an energy characteristic of the capturing element. Cross sections for thermal-neutron capture are dependent on the elements involved; for example, chlorine is much more likely to capture a neutron than is oxygen.

The processes described result in an inverse relation between the number of epithermal neutrons, thermal neutrons and capture gamma photons, and the hydrogen content of the rocks at source-to-detector spacing greater than about 12 inches. In many rocks, the hydrogen content or index is a function of the volume of water in the pore spaces; this relation is affected by the chemical composition of the water and by the presence of water of crystallization in some minerals and bound water in shale. If detectors are located closer than 11.8 in. from the source, as in moisture probes, the number of moderated and captured neutrons increases with increasing hydrogen content because the neutrons are not able to travel as far. In actual practice, spacing for moisture probes usually is much less than the crossover distance of 11.8 in. Typical neutron processes for a long-spaced, dual-detector porosity probe are illustrated in figure 62. As the hydrogen index in the materials between the source and detectors increases, fewer slowed neutrons will reach the vicinity of the detectors and be detected.

### CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

Calibration of all neutron-logging systems used in the petroleum industry is based on the American Petroleum Institute's calibration pit in Houston, Tex. The pit contains three sets of six quarried marble and limestone blocks that have an average porosity of 1.884, 19.23, and 26.63 percent. These values have been rounded by the American Petroleum Institute to 1.9, 19, and 26 percent, and the 19-percent set of blocks has been assigned the value of 1,000 API neutron units (Belknap and others, 1959). Individual blocks measure 5 ft across the octagonal flats, are 1 ft thick, and the drill hole is 7 7/8 in. in diameter. A plot of the calibration values for the U.S. Geological Survey's experimental compensated neutron probe is given in figure 63. Values for near-detector far-detector ratios are plotted from the digitized data. Ratios are used because they provide some correction for borehole effects. Note the errors from the effect of the adjacent blocks at the top and bottom of each porosity interval. Two calibration curves calculated for the compensated neutron probe from the data collected at the API calibration pit are shown in figure 64. The equation for the dashed curve seems to provide a slightly better fit to the data than the equation for the straight line. The greater scatter of data for the larger values of porosity may be caused in part by the smaller count rate, which increases the statistical error.

Figure 63.--Calibration data obtained with a compensated neutron-porosity probe in the American Petroleum Institute's calibration pit.

Figure 64.--Calibration curves for a compensated neutron-porosity probe based on data from the American Petroleum Institute's calibration pit. A straight line and a dashed curve have been calculated to fit the data.

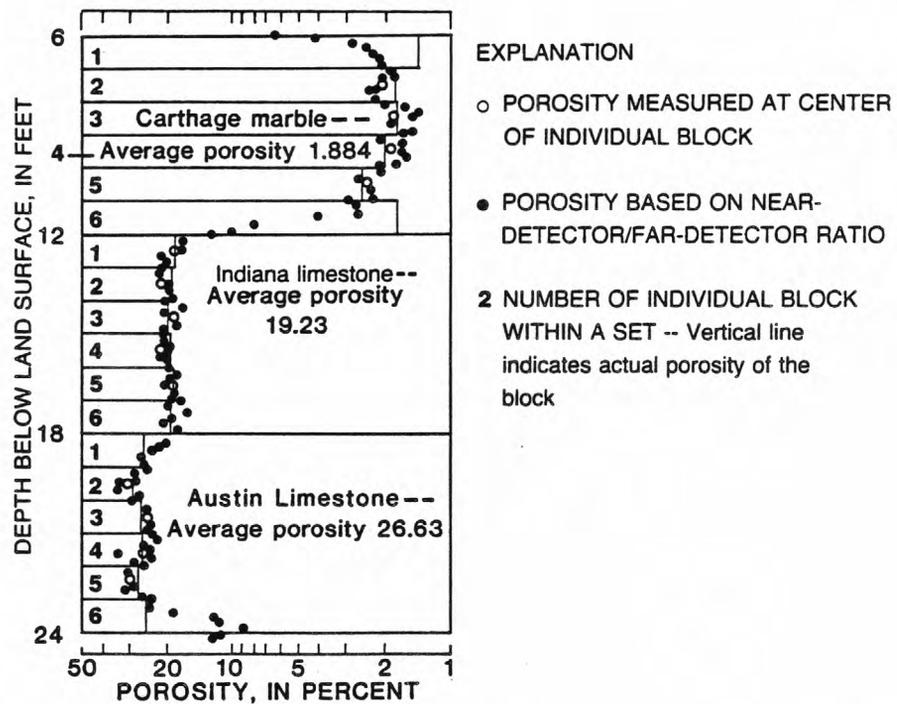


Figure 63.--Calibration data obtained with a compensated neutron-porosity probe in the American Petroleum Institute's calibration pit.

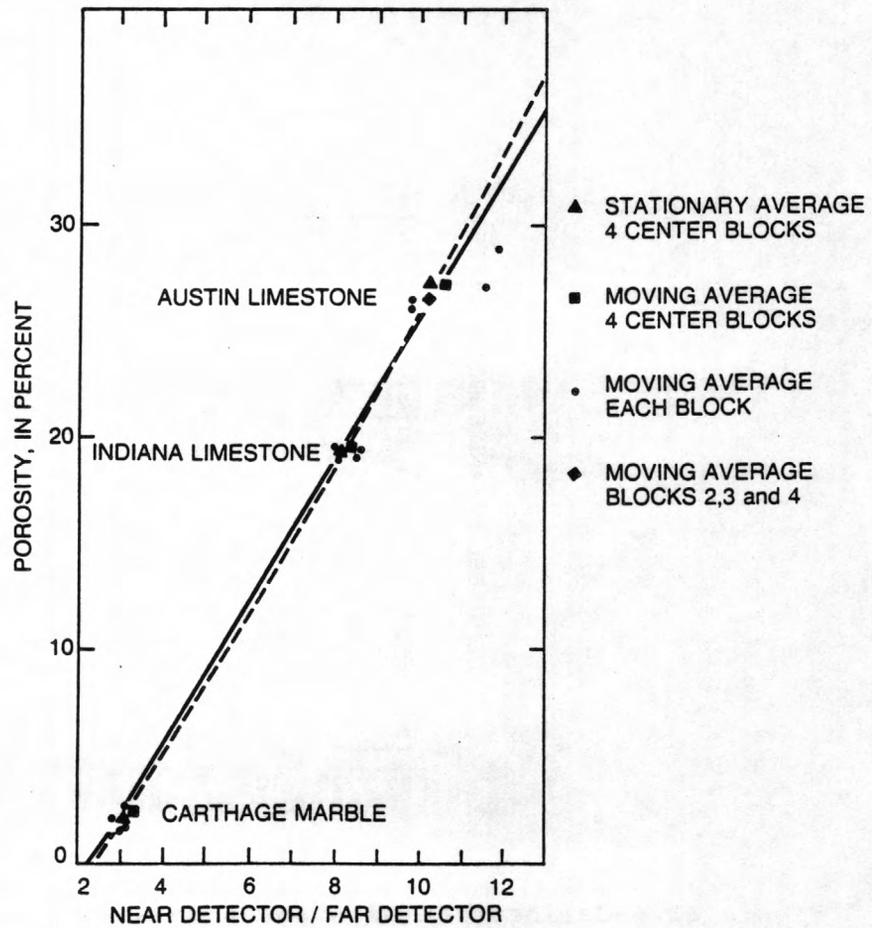


Figure 64.--Calibration curves for a compensated neutron-porosity probe based on data from the American Petroleum Institute's calibration pit. A straight line and a dashed curve have been calculated to fit the data.

Although the API pit is the accepted primary standard, it is only valid for marble and limestone; Therefore, most large logging companies maintain their own calibration facilities for other rock types, like dolomite and sandstone. Careful evaluation of laboratory analyses of core samples may result in a valid calibration, but scatter of data points is to be expected. If information on lithology is available, it may be possible to develop an onsite calibration, as explained by MacCary (1980). An example of this practical method from his paper is given in figure 65, where shale was estimated to have a porosity of 40 percent and anhydrite was estimated to have a porosity of 2 percent, which enabled the placement of a logarithmic scale on the neutron log. A logarithmic scale can be fitted on an angle between two known porosity values; then, the appropriate scale values can be extended parallel to the vertical grid lines to create a new horizontal scale.

Figure 65.--Neutron log of the Red River Formation, Custer County, Mont., showing method for onsite calibration using estimated values of porosity for shale and anhydrite. (modified from MacCary, 1980).

Regardless of how primary calibration is done, onsite standardization needs to be done at the time of calibration and during logging operations. The most practical field standards permit the checking of probe response with the source installed in a reproducible environment that has a substantial hydrogen content. Although a plastic sleeve may be used, it needs to be large enough to cover both source and detectors and thick enough to decrease outside effects. If a plastic sleeve is used, different values may be simulated by positioning the sleeve along the probe axis. A better approach is to use a tank that may be filled with water for standardization. The probe is locked in a fixed vertical position in the tank, and a sleeve, sealed to exclude water, is moved to different positions along the probe axis. The sleeve displaces water away from the probe, which simulates different porosity values as it is moved to different vertical positions.

Factory-calibration data generally are provided with moisture meters; however, these always need to be checked. Plastic sleeves also may be provided that are labeled with their equivalent moisture values. Checking the validity of factory calibration and standardization data may be done in a properly constructed and cored borehole. The core samples need to be sealed as soon as they are collected and weighed immediately so that corrections for possible moisture loss may be made. Borehole construction for moisture logging is discussed under "Extraneous Effects."

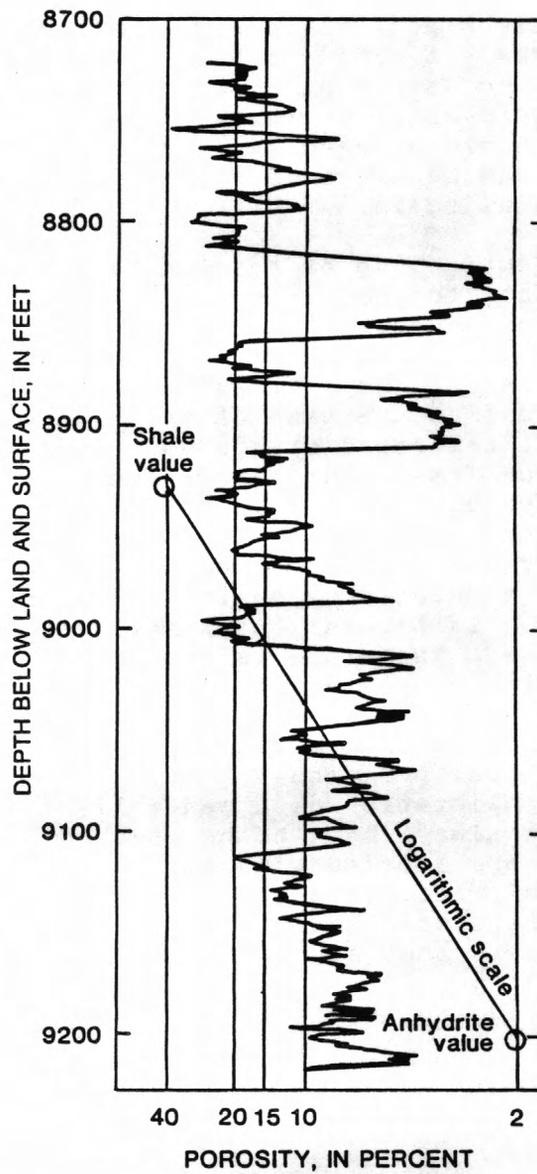


Figure 65.--Neutron log of the Red River Formation, Custer County, Mont., showing method for onsite calibration using estimated values of porosity for shale and anhydrite (modified from MacCary, 1980).

## VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION

The volume of investigation of a neutron probe is related to the content of hydrogen or other strong neutron absorbers in the material surrounding the probe, the spacing between the source and detector, and the energy of the neutrons. Sherman and Locke (1975) reported the results of a study of the radius of investigation of various types of neutron sondes and gamma-gamma sondes in sand with a saturated porosity of 35 percent. Their experimental data and theoretical calculations agreed quite well. Three different types of neutron probes received 90 percent of the recorded signal within 6.7, 9.3, and 10.3 in. of the borehole wall. In contrast, a gamma-gamma probe had a measured radius of investigation of 5.0 in. They also reported that a 4-in. increase in spacing was needed on the neutron tools to increase the radius investigated by 1 inch. Increased hydrogen content will decrease the radius of investigation. Under some conditions, an epithermal neutron probe will provide data on rock farther from the borehole than a thermal-neutron probe. Volume of investigation can be increased substantially, and borehole effects can be decreased by using neutron-transmittance techniques.

Increasing the source-to-detector spacing increases the volume of rock investigated in the vertical direction as well as in the horizontal direction. This increased volume of investigation has a marked effect on thin-bed resolution, as demonstrated in figure 66. The hypothetical volume of investigation is shown by shading in the figure. Note that size and shape of this volume are shown to change as a function of the porosity, when the probe is moved up the borehole. The log only gives an approximately correct value for porosity and thickness when the volume of investigation is entirely within the bed being logged. Thus, in figure 66, the upper thin limestone bed with 3.3 percent porosity is indicated by the log to have a much greater porosity and greater apparent thickness than the lower limestone bed, which also has a porosity of 3.3 percent. The usual technique for determining bed thickness from any type of nuclear log is to make the measurement at one-half the maximum amplitude of the deflection that represents that bed, as shown on the figure. Although this technique may not be the best under all conditions, it is applicable under most conditions for beds that are thicker than the vertical dimension of the volume of investigation. In figure 66, the apparent bed thickness derived from the one-half-amplitude technique is equal to the true bed thickness for the lower limestone bed that has a porosity of 3.3 percent, but not for the thinner upper limestone bed.

Figure 66.--Theoretical response of a neutron probe to changes in porosity and bed thickness. The shaded area represents the volume of investigation at different probe positions.

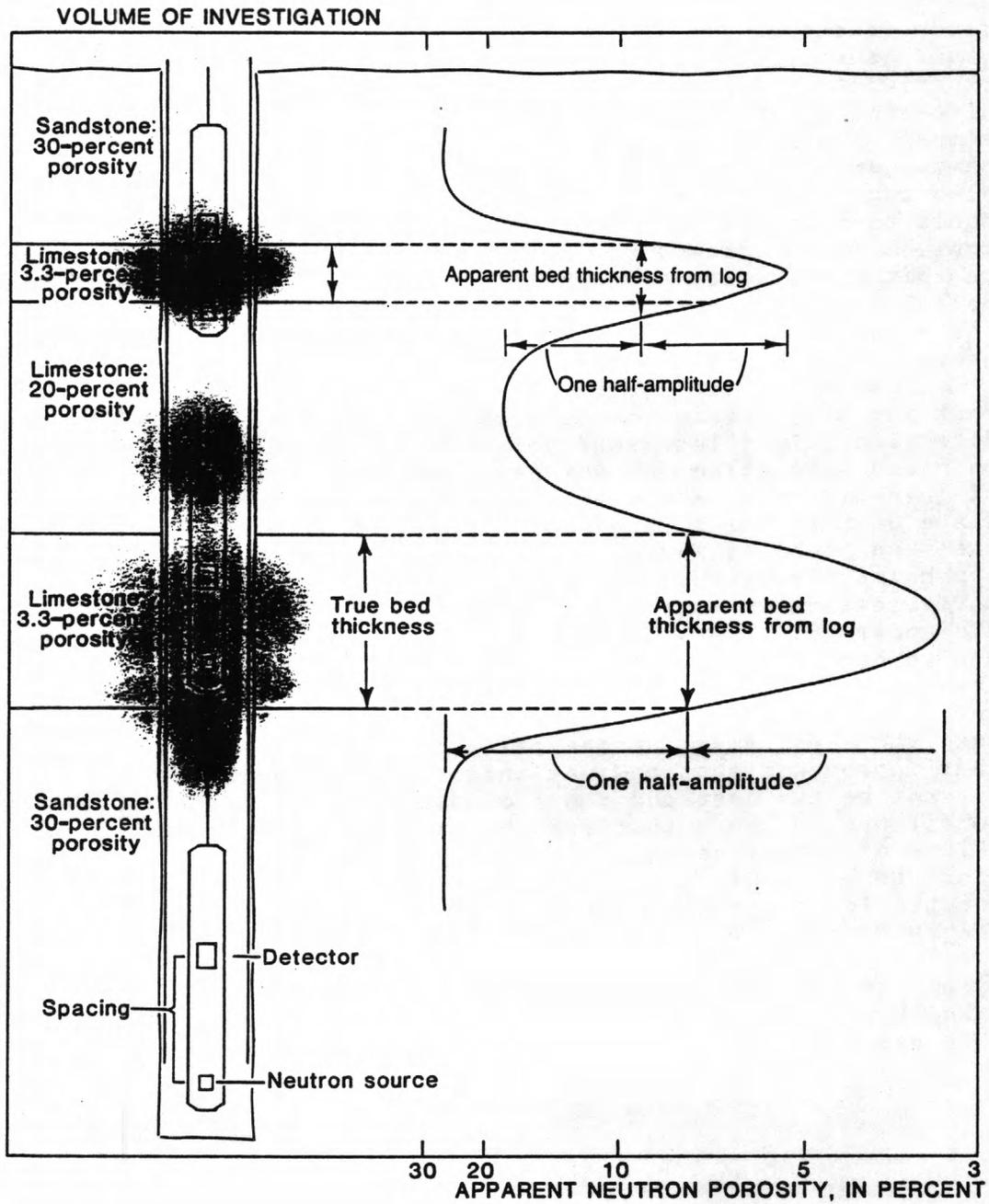


Figure 66.--Theoretical response of a neutron probe to changes in porosity and bed thickness. The shaded area represents the volume of investigation at different probe positions.

## EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

Neutron logs are affected by many of the same borehole parameters that affect gamma-gamma logs, although usually to a lesser degree. These extraneous effects include variations in borehole diameter, thickness of mud cake or stand-off, salinity of the borehole and interstitial fluids, mud weight, thickness of casing and cement, temperature and pressure, and elemental composition of the rock matrix. Matrix effects are evaluated during log interpretation and may be analyzed by cross-plotting techniques as demonstrated in figure 15. Corrections for all of these extraneous effects are different for each type of neutron probe; they may be calculated theoretically, but they need to be substantiated by measurements in models.

Correction factors determined both theoretically and experimentally for compensated-neutron probes, used by two different service companies, are presented by Arnold and Smith (1981) and Ellis and others (1981). Correction factors are available in manuals provided by logging-service companies, but they may not be available from manufacturers of smaller loggers, which commonly are used for water-well logging. When data for correction of extraneous effects are not available, they may be determined experimentally, or depth intervals where conditions are likely to cause errors need to be eliminated from quantitative analysis. For example, a plot of porosity measurements of cores versus neutron-log response for a well completed in the Madison limestone had widely scattered points. After the elimination of all depth intervals where the gamma log exceeded a value likely to indicate the presence of shale, and all intervals where the caliper log indicated a borehole diameter 0.4 in. greater than bit size, the relation between core analyses and neutron-log response was much improved. Shale and clay cause errors in the measurement of porosity because they usually contain bound water, and a neutron-logging system is not capable of distinguishing the difference between hydrogen in bound water and hydrogen in free water in the pore spaces. Some scatter is to be expected in core versus log plots, even if all extraneous effects are removed, because of the large difference in the volume of material sampled by the neutron probe and analyses of core and the likelihood of some discrepancy between depths on a log and core depths.

Casing does not cause a major shift on most neutron logs, as it typically does on a gamma-gamma log. Neutron logs made through drill stem do not show the location of collars as a gamma-gamma log does. The small difference between a neutron log of an uncased augered borehole and a neutron log of a borehole about 2 ft away that was cased with 2 in. steel pipe is shown in figure 67. Laboratory analyses for moisture content are plotted on the logs to demonstrate that either log gives an adequate representation of the distribution of moisture. Although the common belief is that neutron logs cannot be made through plastic casing, that casing is no different than an annular space filled with water. Plastic pipe of constant thickness merely causes a shift in log response similar to, but of lesser magnitude than, that caused by the water level in a small-diameter borehole. Some of the differences between the two logs in figure 67 may be the result of differences in diameter of the two boreholes.

Figure 67.--Moisture content from core analyses compared to neutron logs in cased and uncased boreholes, Lubbock, Tex.

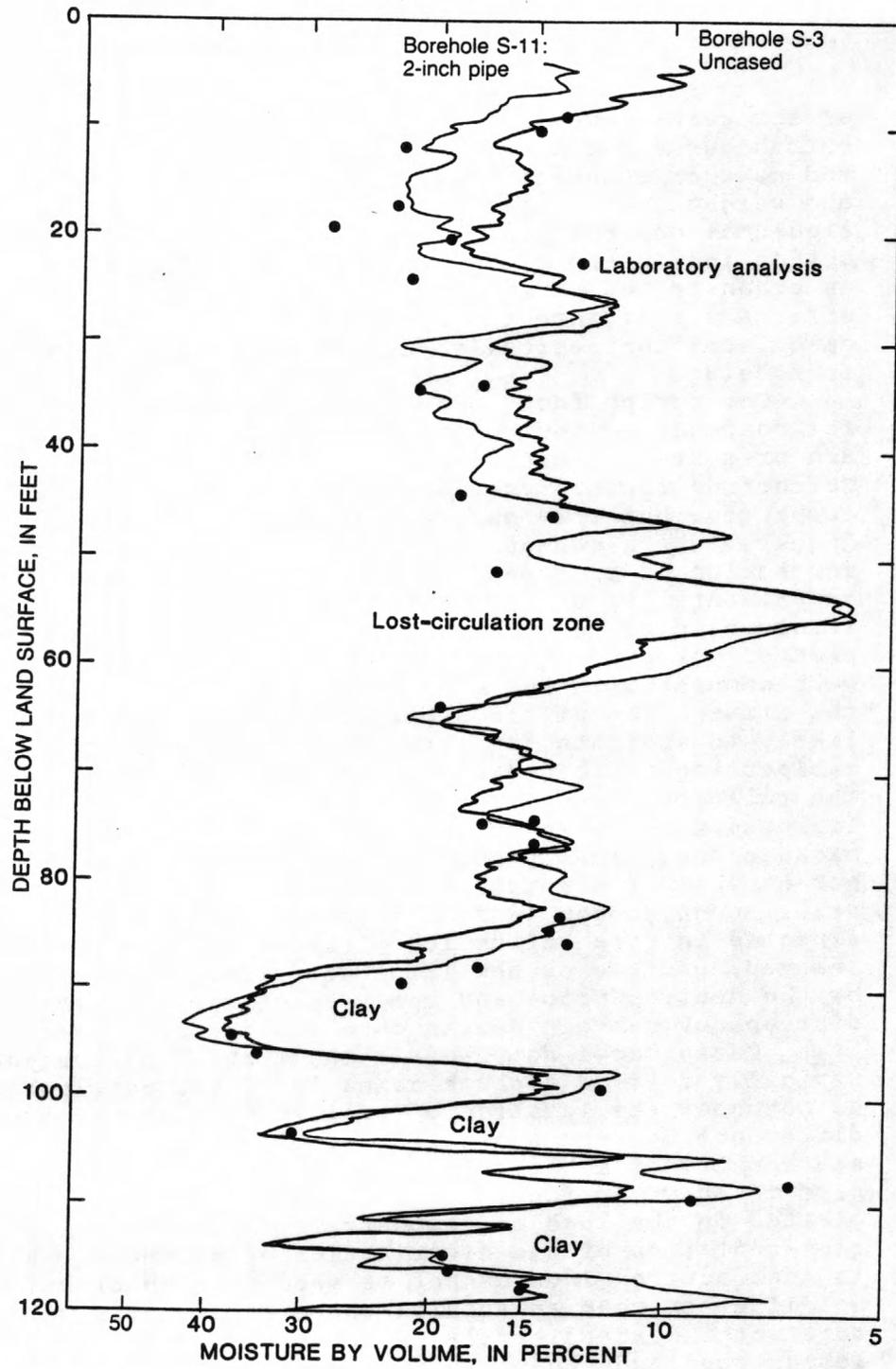


Figure 67.--Moisture content from core analyses compared to neutron logs in cased and uncased boreholes, Lubbock, Tex.

The major effect on neutron logs caused by changes in thickness or lack of backfill in the annular space, which is analogous to the hole-diameter effect, is shown in figure 68. The log on the right was made after 2-in. pipe was installed in borehole S-3, and the annulus was back-filled. The major anomaly between a depth of 37 ft and about 90 ft was caused by nonuniform backfill. The annulus probably was not filled for much of this interval. The neutron-transmittance log between boreholes S-3 and S-11 was little different from the log of borehole S-3 before it was cased, and it did not indicate the presence of the missing backfill. The backfill was removed with a hollow-stem auger and replaced by reversing the auger. After this procedure, a normal log was obtained on borehole S-3. Neutron-transmittance logs have been made through moist sand and gravel between boreholes as much as 4 ft apart, but the technique is limited by the difficulty in maintaining a constant distance between the boreholes.

Figure 68.--Neutron-transmittance log between boreholes S-3 and S-11 compared with single-borehole neutron logs of borehole S-3, cased and uncased, Lubbock, Tex.

The extraneous effects caused by borehole construction are much greater for neutron-moisture logs than for neutron-porosity logs, such as those in figures 67 and 68. The short spacing used in moisture probes decreases the volume of investigation so that borehole effects are increased. For this reason, boreholes to be used for logging with a moisture probe need to be drilled as small as possible; the annular space between casing and borehole wall also needs to be as small as possible, and the probe needs to fit the casing tightly. Methods for installing access tubes for moisture probes are evaluated by Teasdale and Johnson (1970).

The presence of saltwater does not affect the response of epithermal-neutron probes because the chloride is not detected directly; however, in brine, some of the hydrogen has been replaced by salt. For a saturated brine of 250,000 mg/L, the solution will have a hydrogen density about 90 percent that of freshwater, so the effect will be to decrease the apparent porosity on a neutron log. Interfaces in the fluid column from changes in quality, such as one between mud and water, may cause a slight shift in a neutron log; however, the largest shift will be caused by the water level. Fluid levels behind casing can be detected by a shift on a neutron log.

#### INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

Although the interpretation of neutron logs for porosity and moisture content is stressed as primary applications, much use has been made of the logs for determining lithology. Like gamma logs, they can be used for lithology and stratigraphic correlation for a considerable range of borehole conditions. How a neutron log cross-plotted with an acoustic velocity log, or a gamma-gamma log, can be used to determine lithology and corrected porosity is shown in figure 11. Drillers' logs and neutron logs for two water wells drilled several hundred feet apart in glacial sediments at Anchorage, Alaska, are shown in figure 69. These sediments are very difficult to identify or correlate from either drill cuttings or logs. In this example, there appears to be no correlation of lithologic units based on the drillers' logs but the neutron logs indicate that correlation is good, except for the anomaly in well 111A in the depth interval from 155 to 175 ft. These wells are large diameter, drilled with a cable-tool rig, and cased, so the anomaly in well 111A is probably caused by borehole enlargement.

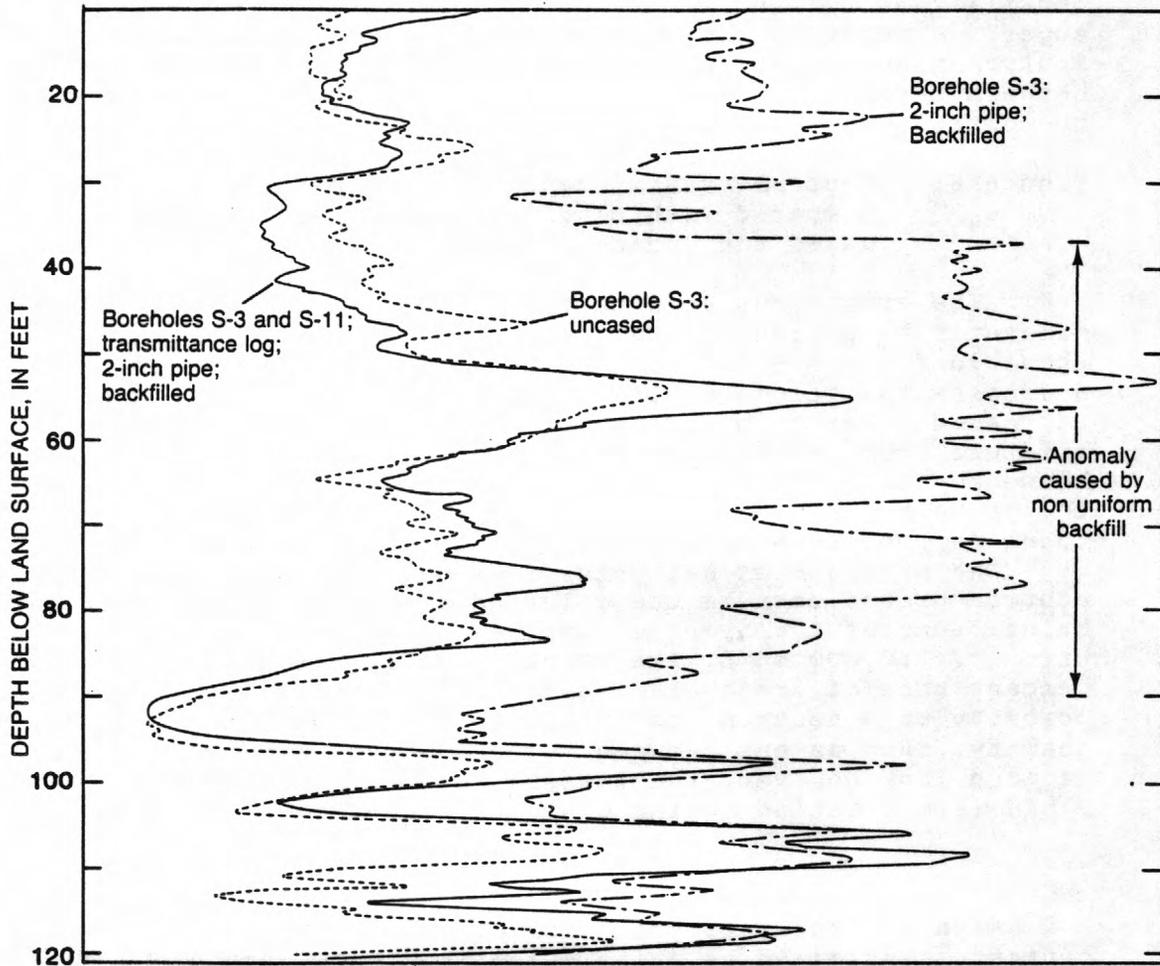


Figure 68.--Neutron-transmittance log between boreholes S-3 and S-11 compared with single-borehole neutron logs of borehole S-3, cased and uncased, Lubbock, Tex.

Figure 69.--Drillers' logs and neutron logs of two closely spaced water wells completed in glacial sediments, Anchorage, Alaska.

Typical responses of a neutron log to a hypothetical sequence of sedimentary rocks, and to borehole-diameter changes, as shown by the caliper log, are illustrated in figure 70. Note that both coal and gypsum cause large deflections to the left indicating substantial porosity, even though they probably have a relatively small porosity. Coal is a hydrocarbon with abundant hydrogen that is not in the form of water and gypsum has water of crystallization. Each of these rocks may be more diagnostically identified by the use of other logs in combination with neutron logs. For most rocks, resistivity and neutron logs will have similar character because of the relation between saturated porosity and resistivity. On a resistivity log, both coal and gypsum will be marked by deflections in the opposite direction from those on the neutron log. In general, shale or clay will be indicated by an apparent porosity that is anomalously large, because of bound water. They generally can be recognized by use of a gamma log. The neutron log in figure 70 shows a gradual decrease in apparent porosity with depth, with the average porosity of limestone and granite being minimal. The sharp deflections on the caliper log in the limestone and arkose are caused by solution openings and fractures that produce negative deflections on the neutron log. Part of this response, indicating large porosity may result from borehole-diameter increase caused by fractures and solution openings; part of this response may result from an increase in porosity in the undisturbed rock. No effect is shown on the hypothetical compensated-neutron log at the change from 8-in. to 6-in. bit size, nor at the change from freshwater to salinewater. However, a shift is shown on the log at the bottom of the surface casing, because both the borehole and casing are larger in diameter above this depth, and the lithology changes at the same depth. The borehole enlargement at the bottom of the surface casing is typical; however, it may not be shown clearly on the neutron log, because it has shifted as a result of the lithologic changes that occur at this depth.

Figure 70.--Typical response of neutron and caliper logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks.

A relation between neutron-log response and clay content, from alteration in crystalline rocks, is shown in figure 71. In general, such rocks have a primary porosity less than 1 percent, and apparent increases in porosity within one rock type generally are the result of fractures or alteration to clay. Typical responses of a neutron log and several other logs to different types of igneous rocks are shown in figure 8.

Figure 71.--Relation between a neutron log and the estimated clay content of core from a borehole penetrating crystalline rocks. Apparent porosity increases to the left.

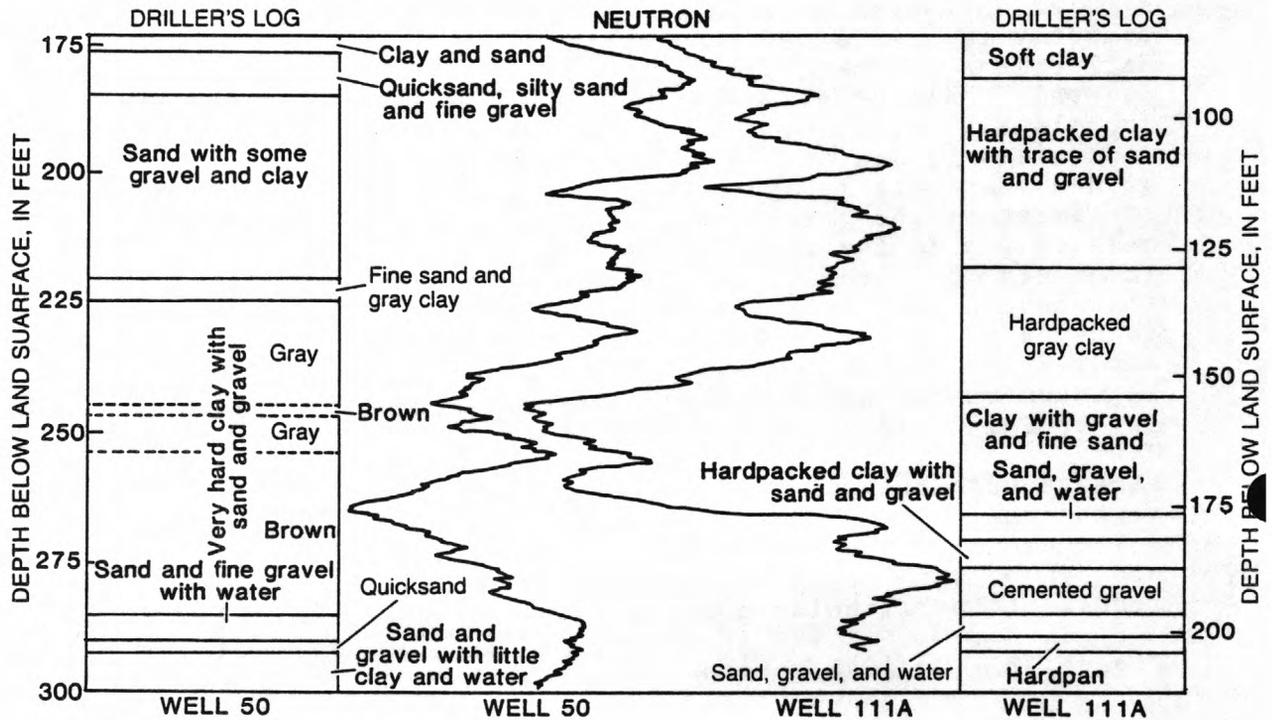


Figure 69.--Drillers' logs and neutron logs of two closely spaced water wells completed in glacial sediments, Anchorage, Alaska.

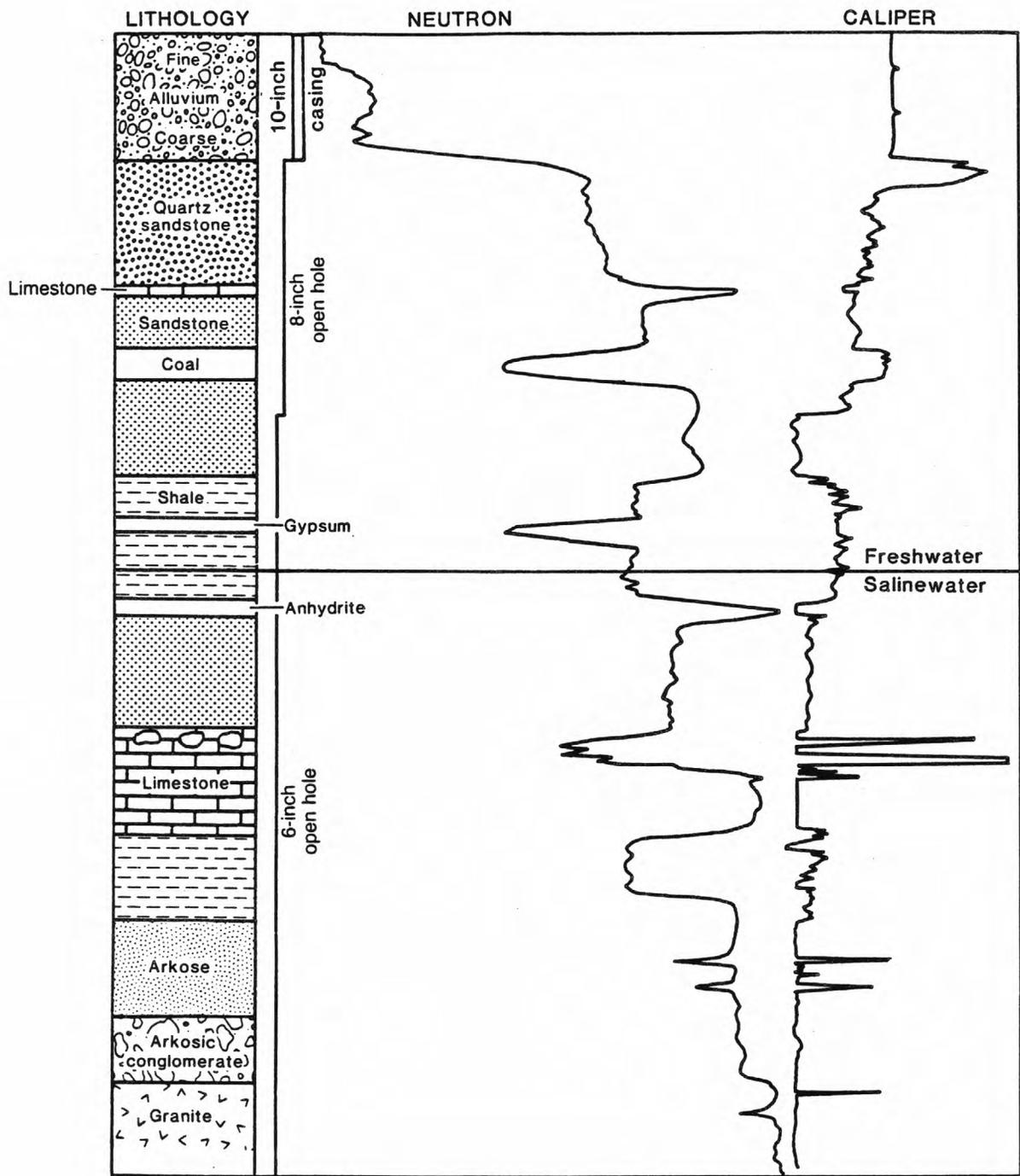


Figure 70.--Typical response of neutron and caliper logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks.

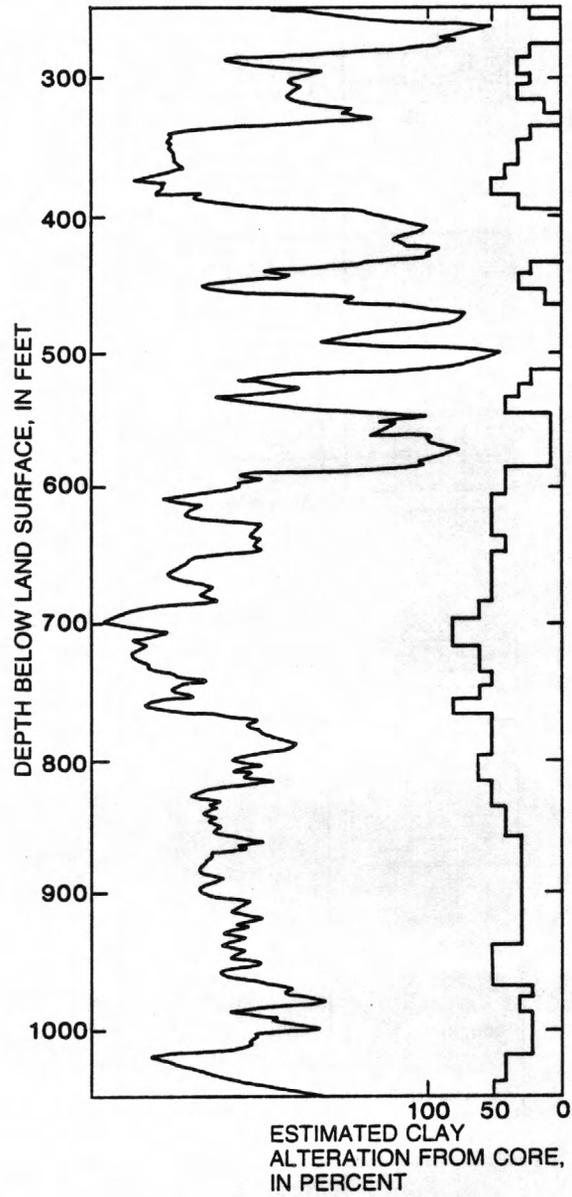


Figure 71.--Relation between a neutron log and the estimated clay content of core from a borehole penetrating crystalline rocks. Apparent porosity increases to the left.

The responses of neutron logs to porosity and moisture content have been described in detail in previous sections of this chapter; however, they will be summarized here. Neutron logs do not measure porosity or moisture directly. They need to be calibrated for these characteristics and corrected for extraneous effects. Logs made with a neutron-porosity probe with long spacing and large source will demonstrate a decrease in count rate with an increase in hydrogen content, whereas logs made with a neutron-moisture probe with short spacing and a small source will indicate an increase in count rate with an increase in hydrogen content.

Neutron logs can be used to determine the specific yield of unconfined aquifers (Meyer, 1963). A neutron probe is used to measure the moisture content of saturated material before and after it is drained by a pumping test. Meyer (1963) reported that specific yields measured with a neutron probe were similar to those calculated by conventional equations based on drawdown data.

Neutron logs also can be used to locate depth intervals where porosity may have increased from development of a well or decreased from plugging during artificial recharge. Substantial changes in packing or porosity caused by development in the annular space behind casing or screen may be detected. Small changes may not be detectable when porosity is substantial because of the compressed log response in this range. Neutron logs are most suitable for detecting small changes in porosity when porosity is minimal; gamma-gamma logs are more sensitive to small changes in porosity when porosity is large.

## OTHER NUCLEAR-LOGGING TECHNIQUES

Several nonstandard nuclear-logging techniques have the potential for wide application in ground-water hydrology. Neutron-activation logging and neutron-lifetime logging use a neutron source; nuclear magnetic-resonance logging measures a characteristic of the nuclei of hydrogen atoms.

### NEUTRON-ACTIVATION LOGGING

Neutron-activation logging has potential for application in studies of ground-water quality, because this technique permits the remote identification of elements present in the borehole fluid and in adjacent rocks under a wide variety of borehole conditions. Neutron-activation logs are available from several commercial service companies; these logs have been used to provide more diagnostic data on lithology and to measure flow behind casing. The basic nuclear reactions are described in the section on the fundamentals of nuclear geophysics, but further explanation is needed here. For a complete description of the principles, consult the publications by Caldwell and others (1966) and Owen (1966).

Gamma photons produced by neutron reactions may be classified as prompt, capture, and activation; these photons have energies that permit the identification of the target nuclei. Prompt gamma photons result from inelastic scattering of fast neutrons and they are present only during neutron irradiation. Capture gamma photons are emitted immediately after a neutron is incorporated in a nucleus. The emission of activation gamma radiation begins with neutron irradiation; radiation then decreases as a function of the half-life of the newly produced radioisotope after the neutron flux is terminated. Neutron activation produces radioisotopes from stable isotopes; the parent or stable isotope may be identified by the energy of the gamma radiation emitted and its half-life.

The gamma activity that may be produced by neutron irradiation is related to the neutron flux and to the nuclear characteristics of the parent and daughter nuclides. Saturation is the maximum gamma activity that can be produced in a sample by a given neutron flux. When the irradiation time is equal to five times the half-life of the daughter isotope, an activity of 96.8 percent of saturation will be produced. The characteristics of some common stable isotopes that are readily activated by thermal-neutron capture are summarized in table 5.

The data in table 5 indicate that the radioactivity produced by activation is quite variable and that a relatively large neutron source is needed to keep activation times within practical limits. Neutron sources commonly used for water-well logging have a neutron flux that is two orders of magnitude smaller than the neutron flux mentioned in table 5. Although a typical 3-Ci americium-beryllium source can be used for neutron activation, long irradiation times are necessary. For example, if such a neutron source is left suspended in a well, or in a large container filled with a concentrated sodium-chloride solution overnight, the radiation from Sodium-24 will be detectable with a gamma probe, but the maximum activity will not be detected for more than 75 hours of activation. The U.S. Geological Survey has conducted experiments with activating iodides and bromides for ground-water tracers, using 3-Ci neutron sources; however detection at small concentrations was not possible with the small source.

Table 5.-- Activation data on some common isotopes.

[Modified after Senftle and Hoyte (1966), with additional data from Goldman and Stehn (1961); Min, minute; hr, hour; Mev, million electron volts]

Parent isotope	Daughter isotope	Counts per second per gram after 2-minute irradiation	Half-life	Energy of major gamma peaks (Mev)
Aluminum-27	Aluminum-28	$2.7 \times 10^4$	2.3 min	1.78
Chlorine-37	Chlorine-38	$8.1 \times 10^2$	37.5 min	2.16, 1.63
Potassium-41	Potassium-42	$1.9 \times 10^2$	12.4 h	1.53
Magnesium-26	Magnesium-27	$3.1 \times 10^2$	9.5 min	0.85, 1.02
Manganese-55	Manganese-56	$1.2 \times 10^4$	2.58 h	0.84, 1.81, 2.13
Sodium-23	Sodium-24	$2.1 \times 10^2$	15.0 h	1.37, 2.75
Silicon-30	Silicon-31	5.9	2.6 h	1.26

Based on a normal nuclide abundance, a flux of  $10^8$  neutrons per square centimeter per second, and a 10-percent counting efficiency.

A 1-Ci source of californium-252 emits 300 times the neutrons of any other 1-Ci radioisotope source by spontaneous fission. This source has additional advantages for well logging--small physical size and minimal gamma and heat emission; however, it also has the disadvantage of a short half-life. The first experimental well logging with californium-252 was done by personnel of the U.S. Geological Survey (Keys and Boulogne, 1969). Some of the gamma spectra produced by neutron activation in a well using a 50-mCi source of californium-252 are shown in figure 72. Note that a substantial difference occurred in the sodium 24 detected by activation at depths of 595 ft and 995 ft. The significant peak from aluminum 28 at a depth of 534 ft indicated that it could be produced by activation on a continuous basis while logging slowly. With 5.5 ft of spacing between the source at the bottom of the probe and the detector above it, no radiation from the source was reaching the detector. Logging down at a speed of about 5 ft/min produced a continuous neutron-activation log, that was mostly related to the concentration of aluminum. Most clays are hydrous-aluminum silicates; therefore, the continuous neutron-activation log has the potential for providing additional information on clay content. Logging upward with the same probe configuration produced a standard gamma log. Neutron-porosity logs made with this large source and longer than normal spacing were superior to commercial neutron logs made in the same well; because of the larger volume of investigation the U.S. Geological Survey logs recorded much less borehole-diameter effect.

Figure 72.--Gamma spectra produced by neutron activation in a well using a 50-millicurie source of californium-252, Savannah River Department of Energy plant, Ga.

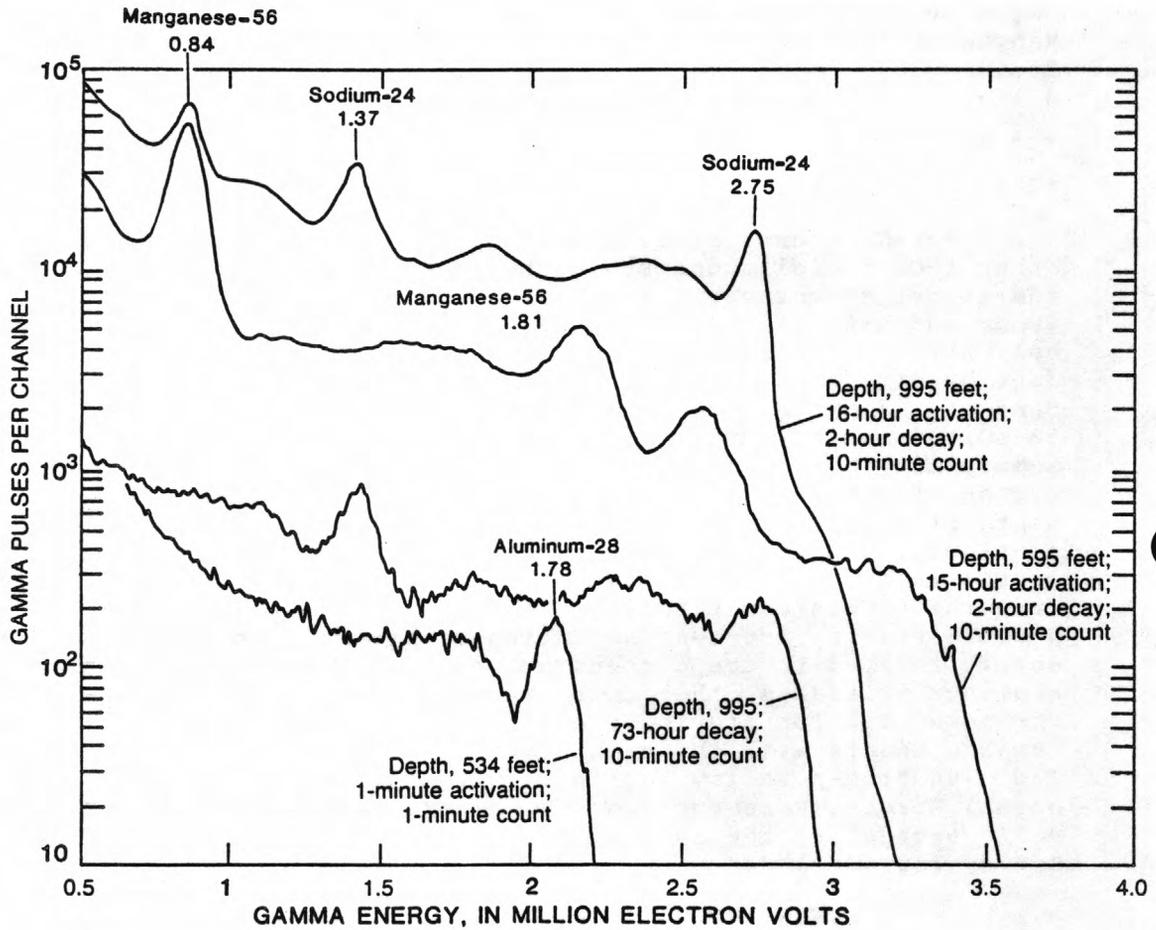


Figure 72.--Gamma spectra produced by neutron activation in a well using a 50 millicurie source of californium-252, Savannah River Department of Energy plant, Ga.

Neutron activation in boreholes also is done using an electronic neutron generator that emits pulses of neutrons with an energy of 14.2 Mev. A neutron generator accelerates deuterium ions into a tritium target to produce high-energy neutrons; the generator has the advantage that no radioactivity is emitted when it is turned off. Using a neutron generator, which is pulsed many thousands of times per second, and a synchronously gated detector, short-lived gamma radiation from prompt and capture reactions can be detected. Either sodium-iodide or solid-state detectors may be used for measuring the gamma radiation from activation; the pulses are input to a multichannel analyzer as in spectral-gamma logging. One commercially available neutron-activation log can provide the ratio of carbon to oxygen and silicon to calcium (Lawrence, 1979). These data can be interpreted in terms of lithology and in-situ hydrocarbons. A neutron generator also is potentially useful for activating oxygen in water flowing behind casing so that flow rates can be measured.

If a daughter nuclide can be identified, it's concentration can be determined from measurements of the gamma activity from the daughter nuclide. Quantitative neutron-activation analysis in wells is not likely to be as accurate as laboratory analysis using the same technique because of the complex and varying geometric relations between source, detector, and distribution of isotopes.

Neutron-activation analysis is complex but potentially useful in ground-water hydrology. The logging parameters, such as type and output of source, type of detector and irradiation, and delay or gating times are based on an analysis of the isotopes sought and the presence of interfering elements.

#### NEUTRON-LIFETIME LOGGING

Neutron-lifetime or pulsed neutron-decay logs are produced using a pulsed-neutron generator and a synchronously gated neutron detector to measure the rate of decrease of neutron population near the borehole as neutrons are thermalized and captured. The rate of neutron decay is greatly affected by the chlorine concentration; therefore, the log provides a measurement of salinity and porosity, similar to resistivity logs (Helander, 1983). Neutron-lifetime logs have a significant advantage over standard neutron logs because the measuring gate can be delayed long enough that borehole effects are greatly decreased. Neutron-lifetime logs can provide useful data through casing and cement.

Usually the count rate from each of two time gates is recorded continuously, and a third curve may be calibrated in terms of capture cross section or capture units. The total capture cross section is a function of the cross sections of the individual elements, and it can be related to the porosity and salinity. If another type of log calibrated in terms of porosity is available for comparison, neutron-lifetime logs can be interpreted in terms of salinity. The logs are used in the petroleum industry to measure water saturation and to distinguish between oil, gas, and saltwater in cased wells. To date, applications in ground water have been limited.

## NUCLEAR-MAGNETIC-RESONANCE LOGGING

Nuclear-magnetic-resonance logging (NMR) or nuclear-magnetic logging (NML) has been studied for three decades, but it still is not widely used for petroleum applications and is relatively unknown in ground-water studies. Based on theory, it is a useful method for ground-water studies because a measurement can be obtained of the quantity of water that is free to move into a borehole from the rocks penetrated. At least one type of probe is available from a commercial-service company. Tests are needed to determine the relation of the log to such important ground-water parameters as specific yield and permeability.

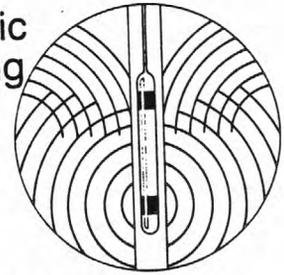
Several types of NMR logging systems exist; their basic principles are similar (Brown and Neuman, 1982; Jackson, 1984). The NMR uses a pulsed direct current, polarizing field to align a fraction of the nuclei of hydrogen atoms (protons) with an induced magnetic field. The signal that is recorded on the log is produced by the precession of the protons into the Earth's magnetic field after the polarizing signal is shut off. The proton relaxation time is short for fluids in solids or bound to surfaces, but is much longer for fluids free to move in pore spaces. The logs are calibrated in terms of the free-fluid index, which has been related to both porosity and permeability in some studies (Loren, 1972).

Use of NMR probes is limited by borehole conditions. One commercial probe has a coil 5.9 in. in diameter, so it seldom is used in boreholes less than 7 in. in diameter; and calibration is questionable in boreholes with a diameter larger than 12.5 in. The volume of investigation is relatively small; 3/4 of the signal originates from within one borehole radius of the probe. Because the borehole is filled with fluid that will be recorded as 100-percent porosity, it usually is necessary to add magnetite powder to the drilling mud to eliminate the borehole contribution to the log. A new (1984) NMR probe has been developed and successfully tested in the American Petroleum Institute calibration pit (Jackson, 1984). This new probe produces an NMR signal from a doughnut-shaped region in the rock and eliminates the borehole signal. In addition to providing porosity and saturation data, computer deconvolution of relaxation time measured by this probe yielded pore-size distribution.

Test 3.--NUCLEAR LOGGING

1. A Government license is required in order to make which of the following logs?
  - a. Neutron.
  - b. Gamma.
  - c. Gamma-gamma.
  - d. Gamma spectrometry.
2. Neutrons are effectively shielded or absorbed by:
  - a. Paraffin.
  - b. Lead.
  - c. Plastic
  - d. Water
3. Standard gamma logs:
  - a. Measure the quantity of clay in rocks.
  - b. Provide information through casing.
  - c. Distinguish uranium, thorium, and potassium.
  - d. Can be related to variations in permeability in some sediments.
4. Time constant:
  - a. Can be decreased in rocks with substantial radioactivity.
  - b. Is the time for the signal (voltage) to increase to 63 percent of the voltage applied.
  - c. Is an important factor in determining logging speed.
  - d. Needs to be carefully selected for digitized logs.
5. Compensated neutron and gamma-gamma probes:
  - a. Eliminate the effect of borehole-diameter changes.
  - b. Contain two detectors at different spacings.
  - c. May provide more accurate data than uncompensated probes.
  - d. Are side collimated.
6. Gamma-gamma logs may have substantial errors caused by:
  - a. Z/A ratio.
  - b. Mud cake.
  - c. Hydrogen content.
  - d. borehole diameter.
7. Neutron logs can be related to:
  - a. Moisture content.
  - b. Effective porosity.
  - c. Hydrogen content.
  - d. Total porosity.
8. These errors can be caused by running the nuclear logs too fast:
  - a. Decreased log response.
  - b. Lithologic contacts incorrectly located.
  - c. Inadequate resolution of thin beds.
  - d. Incorrect porosity values from neutron and gamma-gamma logs.
9. These nuclear particles or photons may be detected in well logging:
  - a. Activation gamma photons.
  - b. Beta particles.
  - c. Alpha particles.
  - d. Protons.

10. Neutron logs would probably be better than gamma-gamma logs under which of the following conditions:
  - a. Large rock porosity.
  - b. Small rock porosity.
  - c. Steel casing in the borehole.
  - d. Large rock bulk density.
11. To obtain porosity from a gamma-gamma log, you need to have:
  - a. Data for grain density.
  - b. Calibration data for a similar lithology.
  - c. Data for fluid density.
  - d. Data for borehole-diameter corrections.
12. When compensated neutron and gamma-gamma logs are calibrated in limestone:
  - a. The porosity for dolomite indicated on the neutron log will be less than that indicated on the gamma-gamma log..
  - b. The two logs will indicate the same porosity for sandstone.
  - c. The porosity for shale indicated on the neutron log will be less than that indicated on the gamma-gamma log.
  - d. The two logs will indicate the same porosity for limestone.



## ACOUSTIC LOGGING

Acoustic logging includes those techniques that use a transducer to transmit an acoustic wave through the fluid in the borehole and in the surrounding rocks. Several different types of acoustic logs are used; these differences are based on the frequencies used, the way the signal is recorded, and the purpose of the log. All these logs require fluid in the borehole to couple the signal to the surrounding rocks. Four types will be described here: Acoustic velocity, acoustic wave form, cement bond, and acoustic televiewer. Acoustic logs can provide data on porosity, lithology, cement, and the location and character of fractures.

### ACOUSTIC-VELOCITY LOGGING

Acoustic-velocity logs, also called sonic logs or transit-time logs, are a record of the traveltime of an acoustic wave from one or more transmitters to receivers in the probe. The acoustic energy travels through the fluid in the borehole and through surrounding rocks at a velocity that is related to the matrix mineralogy and porosity of the rocks. Sonic logs are used extensively in the petroleum industry to identify lithology and measure porosity; sonic logging equipment is now installed on some water-well loggers.

### PRINCIPLES AND INSTRUMENTATION

The principles and instrumentation required to make acoustic logs are complex, and the reader is referred to Guyod and Shane (1969) for a more complete description than can be provided here. Most acoustic-velocity probes use magnetostrictive transducers to convert electrical energy to acoustic energy. Most of the transducers are pulsed 10 or more times per second, and the acoustic energy emitted has a frequency in the range of 10 to 35 kHz. Probes are constructed of low-velocity materials, so that the fastest travel path for the acoustic pulse will be through the borehole fluid and the adjacent rocks, which transmit acoustic energy faster than does the borehole fluid. Acoustic probes are centralized with bow springs or rubber fingers, so the travel path to and from the rock will be of consistent length. Some of the energy moving through the rock is refracted back to the receivers, which may be piezoelectric transducers. The receivers reconvert the acoustic energy to an electrical signal, which is transmitted up the cable. At the land surface, the entire signal may be recorded for acoustic wave form logging, or the transit time may be recorded for acoustic-velocity logging. The amplitude of parts of the acoustic wave also may be recorded; that technique is described later under acoustic-wave-form logging.

Acoustic energy transmitted in the borehole fluid and adjacent rock is divided into several components; the most important for this discussion are the compression and shear waves. Standard acoustic-velocity logs are based on the arrival time of the compression wave at the receivers. Compression and shear waves at near and far receivers, along with the fluid waves that are transmitted through the borehole fluid, are shown in figure 73 (Paillet and White, 1982). The optimum frequency range for excitation of compression and shear waves depends in a complicated way on borehole diameter and rock properties but usually is in the range of 10 to 25 KHz. Most acoustic-velocity probes have paired receivers located 1 foot apart; some probes have several pairs of receivers with different spacing; the pair that is to be used may be selected from the land surface. Some compensated probes have two transmitters and two pairs of receivers. Transmitter to near-receiver distance generally is greater than 2 ft. Compression waves, or P waves, are propagated by movement of particles in an elastic medium in the direction of propagation. P waves have a faster velocity and lower amplitude than shear waves, or S waves. S waves have a velocity about one-half that of P waves and are characterized by particle movement perpendicular to the direction of wave propagation. S waves are not transmitted directly by the borehole fluid, but by means of an intermediate P wave. Fluid waves are slower and have higher amplitude than P and S waves.

Figure 73.--Acoustic-wave forms for a two-receiver system and arrival times of compression, shear and fluid waves (modified from Paillet and White, 1982).

The signals shown in figure 73 are typical of those displayed on an oscilloscope at the surface. Acoustic-velocity logging modules contain a tracking circuit that detects the arrival of the P wave when the wave amplitude exceeds a threshold selected by the operator. The amplitude of the transmitted signal and the received signal along with the height of the detection threshold may be controlled from the land surface. A circuit is used to convert the difference in arrival time at the two detectors to transit time, ( $\Delta t$ ) in microseconds per foot. Acoustic-velocity logs are recorded with interval transit time increasing from right to left; porosity also will increase to the left, as it does on neutron and gamma-gamma logs. On many logs, two scales show interval transit time, in microseconds per foot, and porosity, in percent, assuming a specified rock type.

For rocks with uniformly distributed intergranular-pore spaces, porosity usually is derived from the time-average equation. This equation is based on the theory that the path of an acoustic wave through saturated rock consists of two velocities in series, the velocity in the fluid,  $V_f$ , in feet per second, and the velocity in the rock matrix,  $V_m$ , in feet per second. The method assumes that the length of the path in the fluid is equal to the porosity ( $\phi$ ); and that the length of the path in the rock matrix is equal to  $(1/\phi)$ . The time-average equation is expressed as:

$$\Delta t = 1/VL = \phi/V_f + (1-\phi)/V_m \quad (10)$$

where VL is the velocity in the rock, in feet per second, from a log. For calculation of porosity, the time-average equation is converted to the form:

$$\phi = (\Delta t_{\text{log}} - \Delta t_{\text{matrix}}) / (\Delta t_{\text{fluid}} - \Delta t_{\text{matrix}}). \quad (11)$$

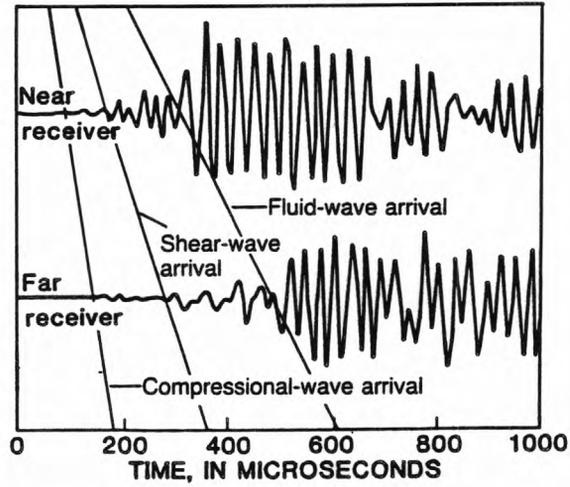


Figure 73.--Acoustic-wave forms for a two-receiver system and arrival times of compression, shear and fluid waves (modified from Paillet and White, 1982).

Velocities and transit times for some common rocks and fluids are provided in table 6. Note that the range can be very large, so laboratory measurements or experience in logging specific rock types may be needed to calculate accurate porosities.

The data in figure 74 can be used to convert transit times from logs to approximate porosity values when matrix transit times are not accurately known. More information on determining porosity is included in the sections on calibration and interpretation.

Table 6.-- Compression-wave velocity and transit time for some common rocks and fluids. [Single values are averages]

Rock or fluid type	Velocity (feet per second)	Transit time (microseconds per foot)
Sandstone		
Slightly consolidated-	15,000-17,000	58.8-66.7
Consolidated-----	19,000	52.6
Shale-----	6,000-16,000	62.5-167.0
Limestone-----	19,000-21,000+	47.6-52.6
Dolomite-----	21,000-24,000	42.0-47.6
Anhydrite-----	20,000	50
Granite-----	19,000-20,000	50.0-52.5
Gabbro-----	23,600	42.4
Freshwater-----	5,000	200
Brine-----	5,300	189

Figure 74.--Conversion of transit time from acoustic-velocity logs to porosity for various rock types.

#### CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

The interval transit-time scale usually has a resolution of one sec/ft on most acoustic-velocity logs and the accuracy is somewhat less; however, the scale needs to be checked, if possible. The difference in arrival time of the P wave at two receivers can be read directly from a calibrated oscilloscope, which is an essential part of any acoustic-logging system. Because transit time is a direct measurement of a physical property, it usually is not subject to operator errors, but operator adjustment of the triggering of the first compression-wave arrival can affect the accuracy of the measurement.

Most calibration pits are not specifically designed for acoustic-velocity probes; however, they may be used if velocity analyses are available and if the use of probe centralizers will not damage the pit. Calibration also can be accomplished using core samples analyzed in the laboratory for acoustic velocity and porosity.

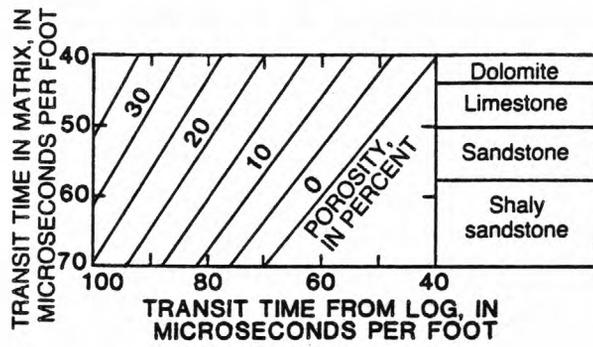


Figure 74.--Conversion of transit time from acoustic-velocity logs to porosity of various rock types.

The response of an acoustic-velocity probe can be checked onsite with a piece of steel pipe cut in half lengthwise. The probe can be laid horizontally in the pipe and dams made at both ends with flexible caulking, so that half of the transmitters and receivers can be covered with water. Steel pipe has an acoustic velocity variously reported to be 17,000 to 20,000 ft/s, so the probe may be checked for that value. It is possible to make the same check in a borehole that contains free-hanging steel pipe; however, if the pipe is cemented in with good bonding, first arrival might be through the rock if it has a faster acoustic-velocity.

Some logging systems have several built-in calibration signals that can be used to check uphole circuits and to place values on logs; however, such signals do not check the transmitted or received signal or the triggering circuits. An oscilloscope is essential for checking the operation of these components.

#### VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION

The radius of investigation of an acoustic-velocity probe is reported to be about three times the wavelength (Pirson, 1963). The wavelength is equal to the velocity divided by the frequency. At a frequency of 20 kHz, the radius of investigation theoretically ranges from about 0.75 ft for completely unconsolidated materials or freshwater with an acoustic-velocity of 5,000 ft/s up to about 3.75 ft for hard rocks with an acoustic-velocity of 25,000 ft/s. A lower transmitter frequency will increase the volume of investigation, but it will decrease the resolution of small features, such as fractures.

#### EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

One of the most obvious problems on acoustic-velocity logs is cycle skipping caused by the amplitude of the first compression-wave cycle being too low for detection or by prearrival noise of sufficient amplitude to be detected. If the first cycle is detected at the near receiver and the second cycle is detected at the far receiver, the resulting transit time will be much too long and the log will show a sharp deflection. Often the amplitude of the received signal will vary from greater than to less than the detection level, which causes rapid fluctuations in the log trace that are easily recognized as cycle skips (fig. 75). Cycle skipping frequently is blamed on gas in the borehole fluid; however, any condition that causes the amplitude of the compression wave to be less than the detection level at one of the receivers will produce cycle skipping on the log. Causes include improper adjustment of signal gain or detection level, fractures or solution openings, rocks that attenuate the signal, and gas in the borehole fluid. Cycle skipping can be used to locate fractures in some boreholes, but corroborating evidence is necessary.

Borehole enlargements or cavities may produce cycle skips or errors in transit time when the receiver pair is opposite the top or bottom of the cavity. When the edge of a cavity is between receivers, the travel path may be of different length to the receivers, causing the transit time to be erroneous. Some borehole-compensated probes contain transmitters located both above and below two pairs of receivers and record the average of the two transit times. These probes may decrease the effect of cavities somewhat, but they do not assure an error-free log.

Figure 75.--Typical response of acoustic-velocity and caliper logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks.

Acoustic velocity in porous media is dependent on such lithologic factors as the type of matrix; the density, size, distribution, and type of grains and pore spaces; and the degree of cementation. Acoustic velocity is also dependent on the elastic properties of the interstitial fluids (Jenkins, 1960). The commonly used time-average equation does not account for most of these factors, but it has been determined to produce reasonably correct porosity values under most conditions. Because correction for all of these listed factors is impossible, some core analyses are needed for checking porosity values recorded on acoustic-velocity logs in each new geologic environment.

#### INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

Acoustic-velocity logs are useful for providing information on lithology and porosity under a fairly wide range of conditions. They usually are limited to consolidated materials penetrated by uncased, fluid-filled boreholes. Hypothetical, but typical, responses of acoustic-velocity logs in a series of sedimentary-rock types and in granite are shown in figure 75. The responses can be compared with other logs in these same lithologic types in figure 7. The hypothetical response of an acoustic-velocity log compared to other logs in a series of igneous and metamorphic rocks is shown in figure 8. In figure 75, cycle skips are caused by the solution openings and probably also by fractures in the arkose and granite. Solution openings and fractures also are indicated by the caliper log. Transit times decrease, or acoustic velocities increase, with greater depth and with increase in rock hardness or cementation. In addition acoustic velocities may vary with confining pressure for several hundred feet below the land surface. This effect is most evident in slightly consolidated materials but it has been noted in crystalline rocks. Resolution of thin beds is good when 1-ft receiver spacing is used; contacts generally are marked by sharp deflections. Changes in diameter of the bit used to drill the borehole, as shown in figure 75, do not cause substantial shifts on an acoustic-velocity log made with two or more receivers.

Many of the rock types logged will be characterized by a limited range of transit times; therefore, acoustic-velocity logs will provide diagnostic information on lithology as well as porosity. Some porosity values measured on core plotted against transit time obtained from an acoustic-velocity log, for a sequence of basin-fill sedimentary and volcanic rocks in Idaho, are shown in figure 76. The correlation coefficient for the core and log data from this well is 0.87, and the log could be used to estimate porosity in this hole. Note that the siltstone had a small range of acoustic-transit times, even though the porosity of the siltstone had a large range. The sandstone had a larger, but still diagnostic range of acoustic-transit time and porosity, whereas the tuff had an undiagnostic range of acoustic-transit time and porosity, probably because of its diverse lithologic character.

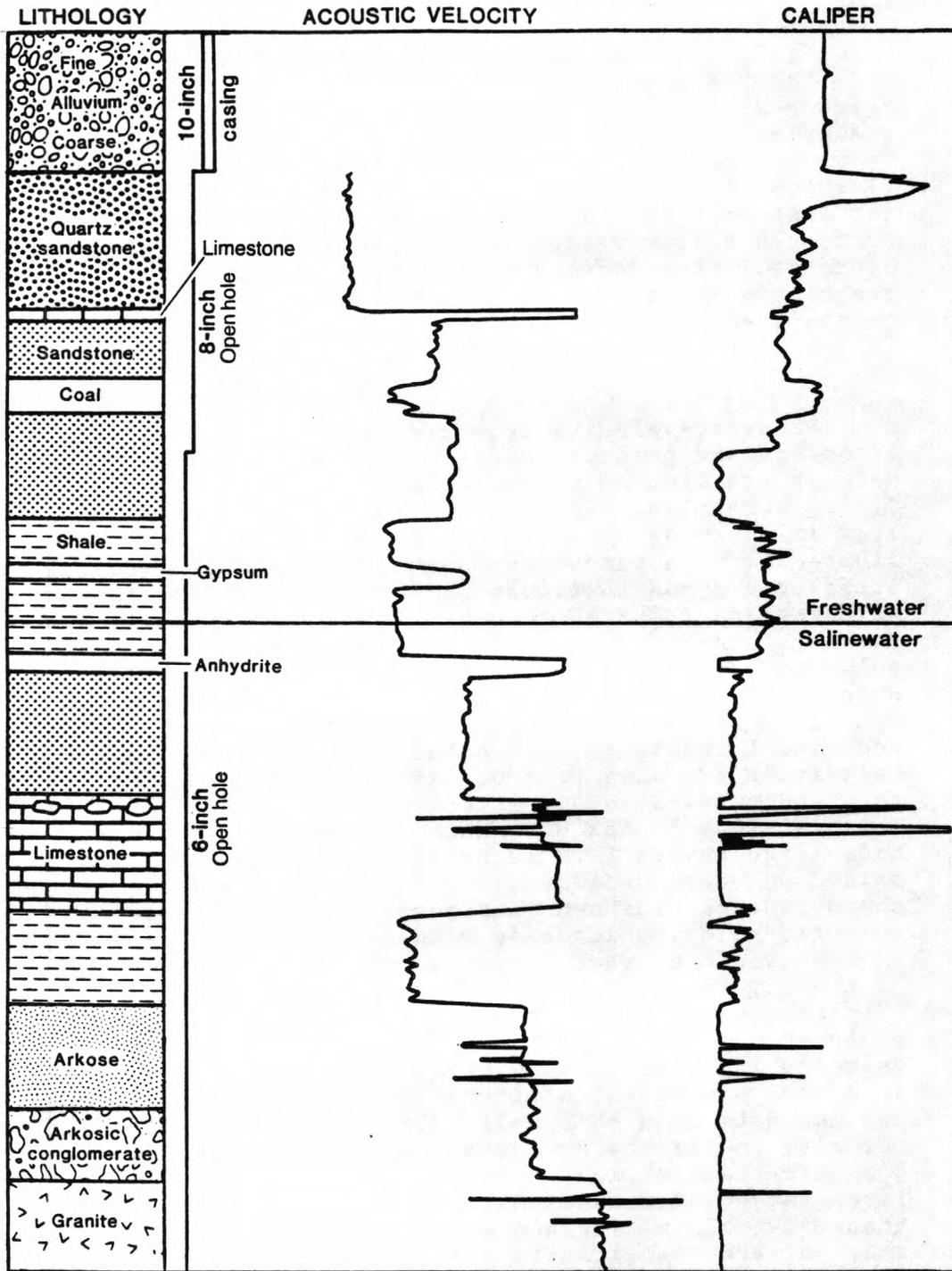


Figure 75.--Typical response of acoustic-velocity and caliper logs to a sequence of sedimentary rocks.

A computer plot of porosity from core analyses versus values from an acoustic-velocity log that was calibrated in terms of porosity is shown in figure 77. The scatter of data points is large and errors in deriving porosity from this log would be substantial. The value of having some core analyses for evaluation of these log data is obvious. In figure 77, some data points plot on the line where the core and log porosity values are equal; however many data points indicate that the log porosity values are too small. The main reason for this error is the presence of secondary porosity, which was not detected by the acoustic-velocity log. Secondary porosity is not detected by acoustic-velocity logs because the first acoustic waves to arrive travels the fastest path around solution openings. In addition, the logging operator used a limestone matrix lithology for calculating the porosity curve when dolomite was more prevalent in the rocks penetrated by the well. An example of how cross plots can be used to correct porosity for matrix lithology is shown in figure 11. Some borehole enlargements also are present that may have caused erroneous log values.

Figure 76.--Relation of acoustic-transit time to porosity for tuff, sandstone, and siltstone, Raft River geothermal reservoir, Idaho.

Figure 77.--Porosity from core analysis versus porosity from a compensated acoustic-velocity log, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

In some geohydrologic environments, especially those consisting of carbonate rocks, porosity from an acoustic-velocity log and from a neutron log or gamma-gamma log or core can be cross-plotted to identify intervals of secondary porosity. Many of the data points above the calibration line in figure 77 represent intervals of large secondary porosity. A computer-generated cross plot of the neutron log versus acoustic-velocity log for Madison Limestone test well 1 also was used to characterize the most permeable intervals in the rocks penetrated by the well (Keys, 1986). In the permeable intervals, identified on flowmeter logs, many porosity values on the acoustic-velocity log were smaller than the corresponding values on the neutron log or determined from core analyses, because of secondary porosity.

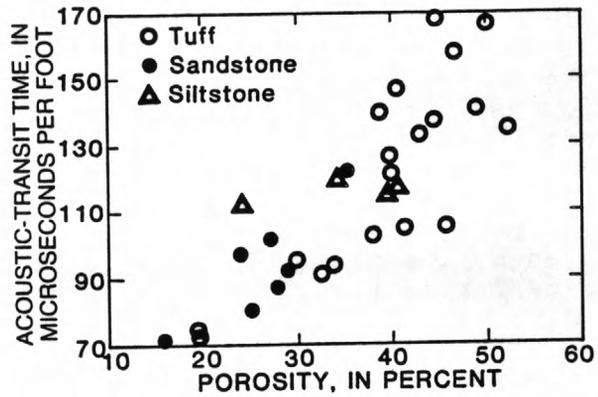


Figure 76.--Relation of acoustic-transit time to porosity for tuff, sandstone, and siltstone, Raft River geothermal reservoir, Idaho.

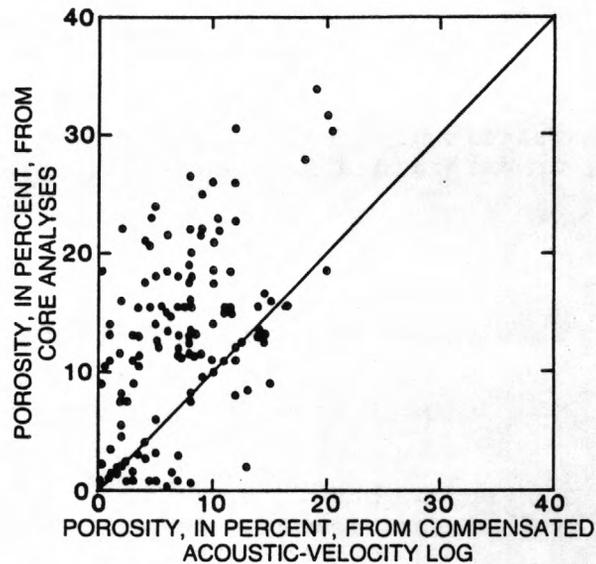


Figure 77.--Porosity from core analysis versus porosity from a compensated acoustic-velocity log, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

## ACOUSTIC-WAVE-FORM LOGGING

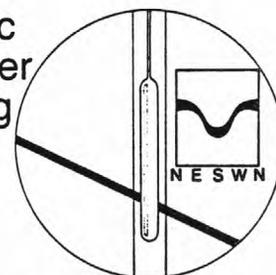
Considerable information on lithology and structure is available through analyses of the various components of a received acoustic signal. Analyses may include amplitude changes, ratios of the velocities of various components of the wave train, and frequency-dependent effects. Cement-bond logs are included in this section, because acoustic-wave-form data are needed to increase the accuracy of interpretation of these logs. Acoustic wave forms can be recorded digitally, photographs can be taken of the display on an oscilloscope, or a variable-density log can be made. The variable-density log or three-dimensional velocity log is recorded photographically, so that variations in darkness of the record are related to changes in amplitude of cycles in the wave form. Troughs in the wave form produce dark bands on the log; peaks produce light bands. A digitized acoustic-wave-form log is the most useful type, because the data can be analyzed quantitatively. Velocities and amplitudes of all parts of the recorded wave form can be measured from a digital record. Acoustic wave-form logs have not been used extensively in ground-water hydrology; however, the potential for obtaining useful information is significant, and the equipment is available commercially.

The elastic properties of rocks can be calculated from the velocities of compression and shear waves, and from corrected bulk density from a gamma-gamma log. The elastic properties or constants that can be determined are Poisson's ratio, Young's modulus, shear modulus, and bulk modulus. Guyod and Shane (1969) discuss the relation of these constants; Helander (1983) discusses the equations to use to calculate the constants from log data. These constants have their greatest application in mining and civil engineering; potential hydrologic applications include predicting the subsidence and fracturing characteristics of rocks. Taylor (1968) used acoustic logs to estimate the vertical compressibility of an artesian aquifer. The compressibility values then were used to plot the effects that changes in net stress had on the storage coefficient of the aquifer.

Because of the potential for obtaining information on aquifers from acoustic-wave-form data, the U.S. Geological Survey is conducting a study of the application of acoustic-wave-form analysis to ground-water hydrology; a number of reports have been published. Paillet and White (1982) describe the relation of modes of acoustic-wave propagation to rock properties. Paillet (1980 and 1981) and Davison and others (1982) describe the characterization of fractures by various acoustic techniques. A significant finding was that a correlation exists between the attenuation of tube-wave amplitude in crystalline rocks and the permeability of fractures determined by packer-isolation tests in small-diameter boreholes. Thus, tube-wave amplitude logging has potential for predicting the relative flow through fractures in hard rocks. The tube wave is part of the fluid wave propagated along the borehole under certain conditions; it apparently is attenuated where water in the borehole is free to move in and out of fractures or when pressure oscillations in the borehole produce viscous losses by forcing water flow in permeable pore spaces.

Cement-bond logging systems commonly use a single transmitter and a single receiver to obtain information on the quality of the bond between the casing and the cement and between the cement and the borehole wall. Most cement-bond logs are a measurement only of the amplitude of the early arriving signal from the casing, but, to improve the accuracy of interpretation, the full acoustic wave-form is needed for study. Although a small proportion of the total acoustic energy may be received from the rock when the casing is free to vibrate, this signal usually is not detectable. The amplitude of the signal from the casing is decreased by the following: good bonding of cement to casing, larger area of casing surface bonded, increased thickness of cement, and longer curing time (Guyod and Shane, 1969). When the casing is well bonded to the borehole wall by cement, acoustic velocity logs of the rocks can be obtained.

The detection of channeling through cement in the annular space is one of the main objectives of cement-bond logging; yet, even an expert in the analysis of cement-bond logs probably will not accurately locate all channels. A basic problem derives from the fact that the signal is averaged around the circumference of the borehole so an open vertical channel 10 degrees wide is a small part of the total signal. When the bonding to hard rocks is good, the casing signal will be obscured by compression-wave arrivals from the rock and the amplitude may not indicate the presence of channels. Although the interpretation of cement-bond logs may seem simple, it is qualitative and best performed by the expert. Newer cement-bond logging systems plot the ratio of amplitudes in the casing time window to the formation time window.



## ACOUSTIC-TELEVIEWER LOGGING

An acoustic televiwer (ATV) is a logging device that can provide high-resolution information on the location and character of secondary porosity, such as fractures and solution openings. The ATV also can provide the strike and dip of planar features, such as fractures and bedding planes. The acoustic televiwer also is called the borehole televiwer; this term occasionally causes it to be confused with borehole television. Borehole television is not discussed in detail in this report because the probes presently available cannot be operated on standard-logging cable and because the light required for television limits application to boreholes with clear water and clean walls. An (ATV) log is available from a few commercial-service companies, however, the equipment to make such a log can be purchased. ATV logging has been applied to ground-water studies in the United States and several foreign countries, but it is not yet used extensively, partly because of the cost and complexity of the equipment.

### PRINCIPLES AND INSTRUMENTATION

The standard ATV probe uses a rotating 1.3-MHz transducer that functions as both transmitter and receiver (Zemanek and others, 1969). Lower frequencies may be used for better mud penetration. The piezoelectric transducer is rotated at 3 r/s and is pulsed approximately 800 times per second. The high-frequency acoustic energy is reflected from, but does not penetrate, the borehole wall. A trigger pulse is transmitted to the recording equipment at the land surface from a flux-gate magnetometer each time the transducer rotates past magnetic north. This pulse triggers the sweep on an oscilloscope; each sweep represents a 360-degree scan of the borehole wall. The brightness of the oscilloscope trace is proportional to the amplitude of the reflected acoustic signal, somewhat analogous to a rotating depth finder in a boat. The probe needs to be centralized accurately with bow springs so the signal will reflect from the borehole wall perpendicularly and return along the same path to the transducer. The sweeps are moved across the oscilloscope or other type of graphic recorder by a depth-related signal derived from the cable measuring sheave. If the log is recorded at speeds greater than 5 ft/min, small horizontal features may not be detected. A camera or graphic recorder, using continuous light-sensitive paper, is used to make a record of the intensity of the sweeps that produces a continuous image. If a polaroid camera is used to record the acoustic image, the photographs can be taped together to form a continuous log. An ATV system requires at least four-conductor logging cable.

The ATV log can be thought of as a cylinder that has been opened along the north side and flattened, as illustrated in figure 78. In this figure, an open fracture dipping to magnetic south is shown intersecting a borehole in a three-dimensional drawing on the left. The hypothetical ATV log on the right shows the fracture as it might appear, as a dark sinusoid, with the low point oriented toward magnetic south. The transducer rotates clockwise, as viewed looking down the borehole; hence, compass directions are in the order shown at the bottom of the ATV log in figure 78. This figure is discussed further in the section on interpretation.

Fractures and other openings in the borehole wall or in the casing appear as dark areas for several reasons. Increasing borehole diameter means the acoustic signal must travel farther and that it will be more attenuated by the fluid in the borehole. In addition, where part of the surface of fractures and other openings is not at right angles to the incident acoustic signal, little of the signal will be reflected back to the transducer.

Because of the large number of equipment adjustments that need to be made to produce a quality ATV log, an experienced operator is needed. A second oscilloscope also needs to be available to monitor the incoming signal so adjustments can be made as required. The acoustic signal can be taped on a modified video-cassette recorder simultaneously with graphic recording; the taping allows the log to be enhanced by later playback, using different adjustments of uphole equipment, if necessary. It also is possible to digitize the acoustic signal and to use image-enhancement computer programs to improve the log.

Figure 78.--Three-dimensional view of a fracture intersecting a borehole and appearance of the same fracture on an acoustic-televiewer log.  $D$  is the borehole diameter and  $H$  is the length of the fracture intercept in the borehole.

Modifications to ATV equipment permit recording an acoustic-caliper log, which consists of four high-resolution traces. The use of a lower frequency transducer will provide better penetration of casing, and the ATV probe can be used to examine cement in the annular space. Broding (1984) demonstrated the ability of a lower frequency probe to locate voids and channels in cement that were not detected by other logging methods. ATV logs made in steel casing or in the presence of large concentrations of magnetic minerals will not be oriented correctly because the magnetometer does not work reliably under these conditions. Under such conditions a switch in the ATV probe can be used for triggering the sweep relative to the probe instead of the magnetometer; as a result, compass orientation will be lost but an unoriented log may be obtained.

#### CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

Magnetometer orientation and recording scales need calibration and occasional standardization onsite. The magnetometer needs to be checked with a compass to determine if it triggers on magnetic north within 1 degree, if possible; this can be accomplished by using a narrow reflective object in a plastic bucket filled with water. The lower set of centralizers usually are removed for this procedure. If an acoustic-caliper log is to be made, borehole-diameter response needs to be checked. Although the time-distance relation may be calculated by using the calculated velocity of sound in the borehole fluid, an onsite check is occasionally needed. To make this check, the probe is carefully centered in non-magnetic rings of different sizes immersed in a water-filled bucket. Checking orientation and borehole-diameter response also provides a prelogging check of probe operation. Both horizontal and vertical scales are checked with a ruler on the analog record, before and during logging because drift is not uncommon. Logging speed needs to be checked frequently with a stop watch because logging speed changes as the probe moves up the borehole, and because the analog meters used to display logging speed are not accurate at slow rates.

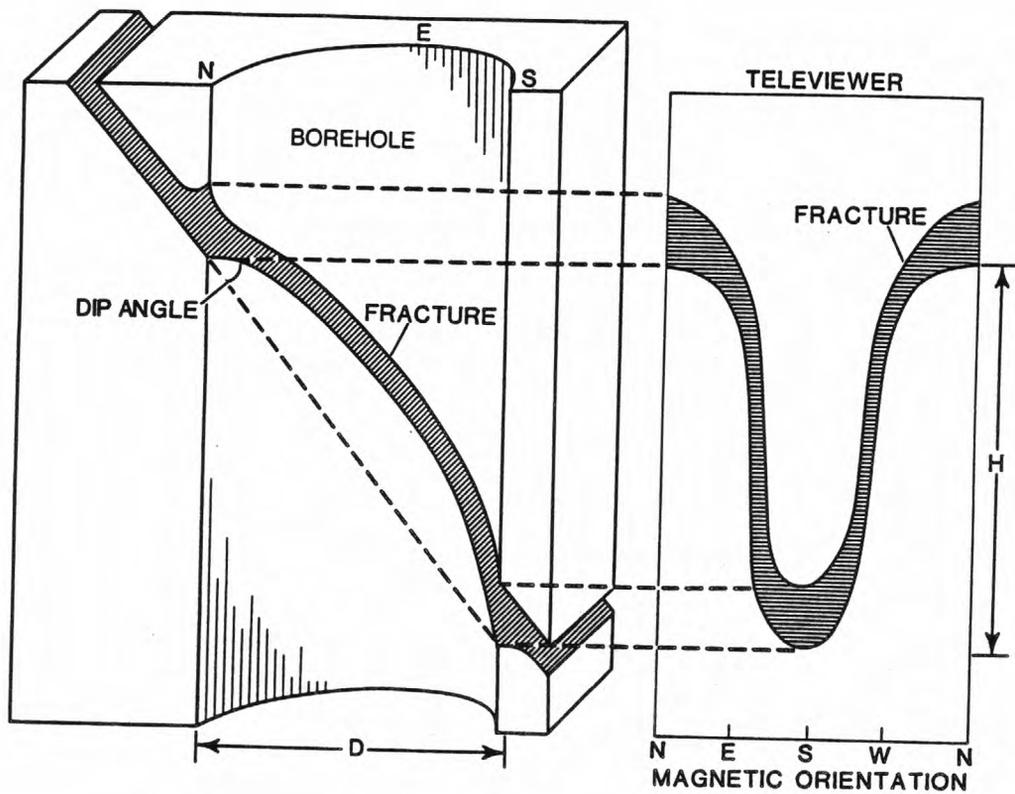


Figure 78.--Three-dimensional view of a fracture intersecting a borehole and appearance of the same fracture on an acoustic-televIEWER log.  $D$  is the borehole diameter and  $H$  is the length of the fracture zintercept in the borehole

## VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION

The concept of volume of investigation does not apply to the ATV in a strict sense because, with the typical high-frequency transducer, most of the signal is received from the wall of the borehole. Even if the frequency is decreased to one-half the usual value, rock penetration is small, although mud penetration is improved. However, ATV probes have mechanical and electronic limits to the diameter of the well that can be logged. The operating range of borehole diameter for most 1 7/8 in. ATV probes is from 3 to 16 in. Adjustment of the electronic-gating circuits might allow some increase in borehole diameter, but the centralizers need to be designed to do an effective job in a large diameter borehole.

## EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

Although the interpretation of ATV logs ought to be relatively straightforward, it is complicated by a number of extraneous effects. Most significant are inadequate centralization, incorrect gain settings, errors caused by vertical deviation of the borehole, and aberrations in the magnetic field. The effect of several of these problems is illustrated in figure 79. The commercial acoustic-televviewer log on the right was made with gain settings that were too low to accurately resolve the numerous solution openings in this dolomite, particularly in the depth range from 3,000 to 3,010 ft. Many more features can be seen in the ATV log on the left. The black streak down the left side of the commercial log is caused by inadequate centralization, probably because the well is not circular. The effect is much more obvious on the commercial log because the gain settings were too low. Continuous monitoring of the signal displayed on an oscilloscope will allow an experienced operator to make the proper gain adjustments.

Figure 79.--Acoustic-televviewer logs made by the U.S. Geological Survey (left) and a commercial service company (right), Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

Substantial deviation from vertical is common in deep boreholes, which introduces several errors on ATV logs. In addition to the obvious error in the measured vertical depth, corrections need to be made to dip and strike calculated from ATV logs made in deviated boreholes. Another orientation error is related to the effect of the vertical component of the Earth's magnetic field on the tilted magnetometer. Kierstein (1984) has developed computer programs for correcting the data and solutions that use a stereographic projection; she describes the orientation problems in detail. A borehole-deviation survey must be made if errors from this source are to be recognized and corrected. Steel casing or drilling equipment lost in the borehole and magnetite will cause misorientation or missing sweeps, making the ATV log difficult to interpret. Where the presence of magnetic materials is suspected, a rerun of the log using the mechanical switch for triggering, rather than magnetometer, may eliminate the problem. Such triggering problems have been used to locate magnetite concentrations, which have been substantiated by the examination of core.

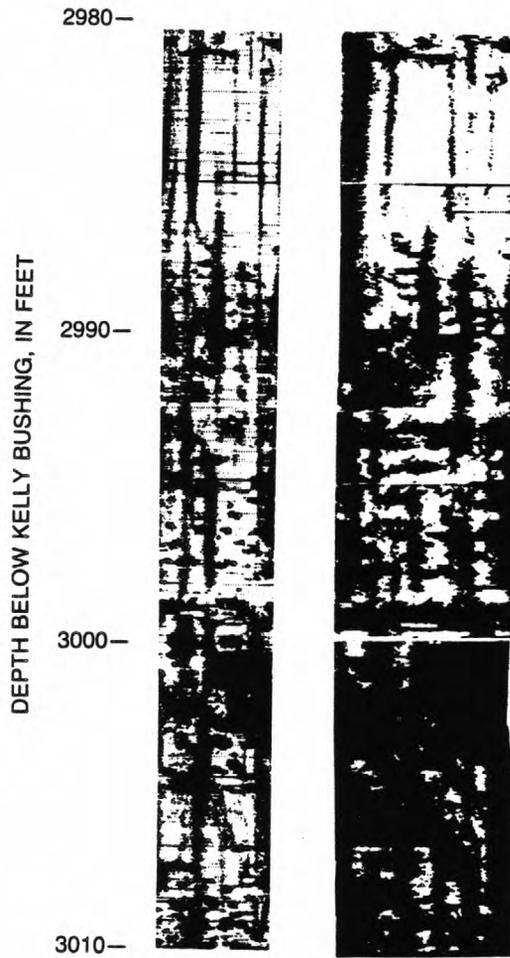


Figure 79.--Acoustic-televiewer logs made by the U.S. Geological Survey (left) and a commercial service company (right), Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

## INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

An acoustic televiewer provides a record of the location, character, and orientation of any features in the casing or borehole wall that alter the reflectivity of the acoustic signal. These include diameter and shape of the borehole, roughness of the borehole wall that may be caused by drilling procedures or lithology, differences in rock hardness, and structural features, like bedding, fractures, and solution openings. In addition to providing a photograph-like image that can be interpreted in terms of the character of these features, the ATV log also permits the calculation of orientation of fractures or bedding planes. The smallest feature that can be resolved on an ATV log depends on a number of factors, such as borehole diameter and borehole wall roughness. Under ideal conditions, features as small as 1/32 in., or possibly even smaller, can be identified.

An acoustic televiewer log of a producing fracture zone in a geothermal well at Roosevelt Hot Springs, Utah, is shown in figure 80. Acoustic- and mechanical-caliper logs of this producing zone are shown in figure 81. These logs were made at temperatures as high as 260 degrees C (Keys, 1979). The producing interval shown in figure 80 is about 4 ft thick; this interval apparently is the result of alteration and solution along a series of subparallel fractures. The fracture at the top of the interval appears to be about 6 in. wide, based on the ATV log; probably it is much less. Rock adjacent to fractures tends to be broken out during drilling, and the broken edges further increase the apparent thickness of the fractures on the ATV log by refracting the acoustic signal. This is particularly evident at the top and bottom of the sinusoid on steeply dipping fractures, as shown in figure 78. The open fracture in the producing zone in figure 80 is paralleled by one fracture above, and probably six fractures below, which produced a brecciated, and probably altered, permeable zone. The effect of drilling technique and lithology on the interpretation of fracture character from ATV logs is discussed by Paillet and others (1985). Log quality generally is not as good where the wall of the borehole is rough, or where rocks are soft.

Figure 80.--Acoustic-televiewer log of producing zone A in a geothermal well, Roosevelt Hot Springs, Utah.

Figure 81.--Mechanical- and acoustic-caliper logs of producing zone A in a geothermal well, Roosevelt Hot Springs, Utah.



Figure 80.--Acoustic-televiwer log of producing zone A in a geothermal well, Roosevelt Hot Springs, Utah.

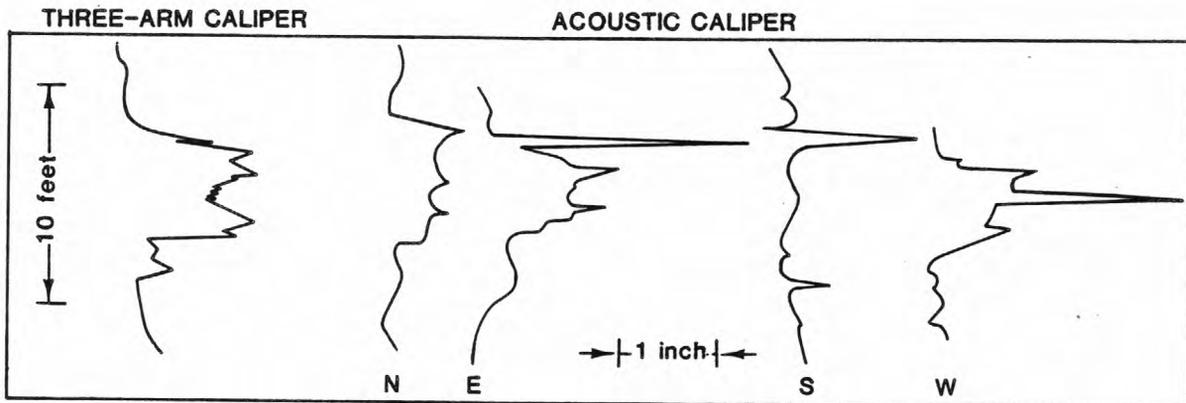


Figure 81.--Mechanical- and acoustic-caliper logs of producing zone A in a geothermal well, Roosevelt Hot Springs, Utah.

To calculate the strike and dip of fractures or bedding, the following information is needed: (1) The vertical intercept distance on the ATV log, H, as shown in figure 78; (2) the direction of dip from the ATV log, and (3) the borehole diameter, D, from a caliper log. The same units need to be used for H and D. The angle of dip, in degrees, is equal to the arc tangent of H/D. If the average H for the fractures in figure 80 is 12 in. and the borehole diameter is 6 in., the dip would be 63x; if the borehole diameter is 12 in., the dip would be 45x. Direction of dip usually can be measured to the nearest 5x, using a 360x scale constructed to fit the width of the ATV log. The average direction of dip of the fractures in figure 80 is slightly south of west. Errors of measuring strike and dip are much greater for slightly dipping features than for steeply dipping features. All calculations of orientation need to be corrected for hole deviation and magnetic effects as explained by Kierstein (1984).

The orientation of the stress field may be determined from an analysis of ATV logs made in wells where fractures have been induced hydraulically, either intentionally or accidentally, by drilling (Wolff and others, 1974, and Keys and others, 1979). Hydraulic fractures are oriented perpendicular to the direction of least principal stress. Breakouts are increases in borehole diameter oriented at right angles to the maximum, principal, horizontal stress. They are easily recognized on ATV logs and have been discussed in detail by Zoback et. al. (1986) and Paillet and Kim (1986). Breakouts appear as two vertical dark bands with irregular margins located about 180 degrees apart on the log. Breakouts also can be identified and oriented with four-arm directional mechanical- or acoustic-caliper logs, which may help to distinguish them from the dark bands caused by a decentralized ATV probe.

Interpretation of ATV logs is complicated by many factors, one of the most significant being gain adjustment. Four ATV logs recorded at different gain settings are shown in figure 82. Based on the log on the left, the intersecting fractures appeared to be quite open and permeable; however, increasing the gain indicated that the fractures were widened artificially near the borehole. The interpretation that these fractures were almost closed or filled with clay a short distance from the borehole wall was substantiated by an isolation-packer test that indicated minimal permeability for the interval containing the fractures (Davison and others, 1982).

The relation between ATV log response and single-point resistance, caliper, neutron, and gamma logs is illustrated in figure 83. Bedding in the Tertiary Monterey Shale is shown by the horizontal bands across the ATV log. Beds of hard, silicified shale appear white on the ATV log, and they are indicated clearly by substantial resistance on the single-point resistance log, minimal apparent porosity on the neutron log, and minimal radioactivity on the gamma log. Natural fractures are shown clearly on the ATV log at depths of 242, 252, 258, and 276 to 278 ft. Although these fractures are shown as borehole enlargements on the caliper log, and several produce anomalies on the single-point resistance log, the relative width and orientation cannot be determined from these logs. The dark vertical bands located 180 degrees apart just above the deepest fractures probably are breakouts. Note the numerous horizontal bedding planes in the softer shale. In another borehole in the same rocks, an inflatable packer left impressions in the shale that could be identified on the ATV log. It is common on softer rocks to identify grooves in the wall of the borehole caused by probe centralizers or by caliper arms.

Figure 82.--Acoustic-televiewer logs of a 5-foot interval at four different gain settings, borehole CR-6, Ontario, Canada.

Figure 83.--Single-point-resistance, caliper, acoustic-televiewer, neutron, and gamma logs of a borehole penetrating the Monterey Shale, California.

The ATV also can be used to examine casing for damage and to locate joints in pipe and well screens; borehole television might be better for these purposes if the water is clear and the walls are clean. Above the water level, borehole television needs to be used because the ATV will not operate. A comparison has been published between fractures located by the ATV, television, and logging the core in a borehole penetrating crystalline rocks (Davison and others, 1982). Core logging identified the largest number of fractures; however, all of those not detected by the ATV log probably were closed so tightly that they would not transmit water. The smallest number of fractures was identified by borehole television in this example. In dark rocks, borehole television will fail to locate many fractures seen on an ATV log. Use of borehole television is limited further by borehole depths and temperature; another factor limiting use is that it cannot be operated through a standard logging cable.

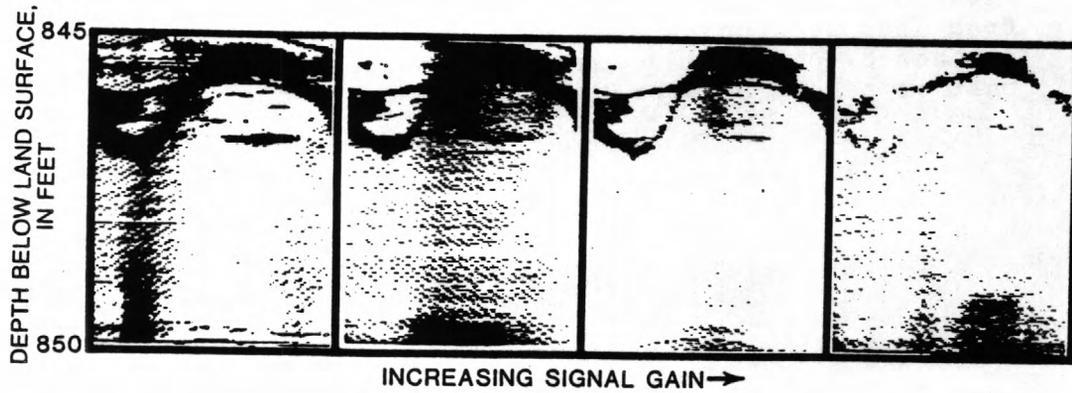


Figure 82.--Acoustic-televviewer logs of a 5-foot interval at four different gain settings, borehole CR-6, Ontario, Canada.

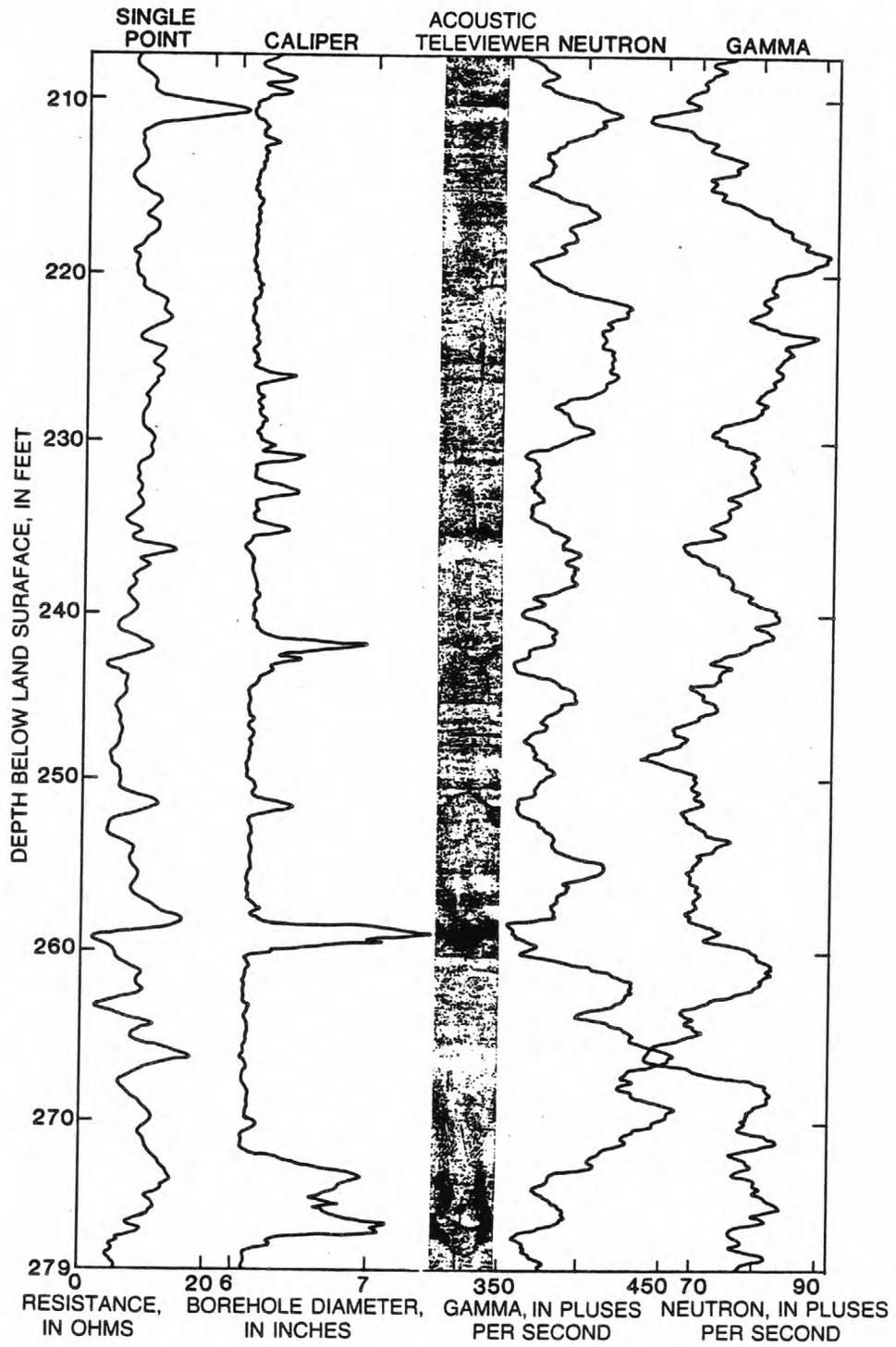
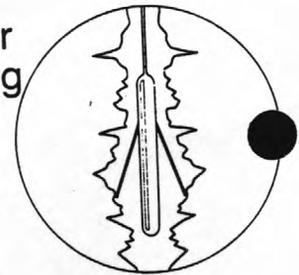


Figure 83.--Single-point-resistance, caliper, acoustic-televiwer, neutron, and gamma logs of a borehole penetrating the Monterey Shale, California.



## CALIPER LOGGING

Caliper logs provide a continuous record of borehole diameter and are used extensively for ground-water applications. Changes in borehole diameter may be related to both drilling technique and lithology. Caliper logs are essential to guide the interpretation of other logs, because most of them are affected by changes in borehole diameter. Caliper logs also are useful in providing information on well construction, lithology, and secondary porosity.

### PRINCIPLES AND INSTRUMENTATION

Many different types of caliper probes are described in detail by Hilchie (1968). The most common type of probe used for logging water wells has three arms approximately the diameter of a pencil, that are spaced 120 degrees apart and mechanically coupled together. Arms of different lengths can be attached to this type of probe to optimize sensitivity for the borehole-diameter range expected. Mechanical caliper probes have been used to measure a maximum borehole diameter of 42 in. The typical water-well caliper probe has arms that are connected together to move a linear potentiometer so changes in resistance, transmitted to the land surface as voltage changes, are proportional to average borehole diameter. In some probes, the voltage changes are converted to a varying pulse rate to eliminate the effect of changes in resistance of the cable. Three-arm averaging and single-arm caliper probes will operate on single-conductor cable; however, multiple independent-arm probes may require more conductors.

Single-arm caliper probes commonly are used to provide a record of borehole diameter, while running another type of log. The single arm also may be used to decentralize a probe, such as a side-collimated, gamma-gamma probe. Some of the single-arm decentralizing caliper probes use a pad or wide arm, that does not allow borehole roughness to be resolved. The single-arm caliper probe has an advantage in that the arm generally follows the high side of a deviated hole. A three-arm averaging caliper probe does not function properly in highly deviated boreholes, because the weight of the tool forces one arm to close, which closes the other two arms.

Bow springs or bow springs with pads are used to provide a caliper log on some commercial probes, but the log does not have the resolution that can be achieved with small fingers or arms. The data from bow-spring or single-arm devices sometimes are used in real time to correct another log made simultaneously for hole-diameter effects. The corrected log will therefore be no better than the borehole-diameter data that is transmitted to the correction circuits.

High-resolution caliper-logging probes generally have three or four independent arms; these arms are sometimes compass-oriented. The difference in resolution between logs made with a four-arm probe and the more common types is shown in figure 84 and is described in the section on interpretation. Vertical resolution is a function of the length of the contact surface at the end of the arm as well as the response of the mechanical and electronic components in the system. Horizontal resolution, which provides accurate borehole-diameter measurement regardless of borehole shape, is related to the number of independent arms. Although four arms are typical for a high-resolution probe, some have more.

Figure 84.--Caliper logs from probes having four independent arms, three averaging arms, and a single arm, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

Acoustic calipers may use the time-of-travel data from an ATV to provide compass-oriented, high-resolution logs. The reflected signal usually is averaged for about 5 degrees of transducer rotation. This type of caliper log will show minute openings, but it is limited to the maximum borehole diameter that the ATV can log. Most ATV systems are designed to operate in wells as much as 16 in. in diameter, but they can be modified to operate in larger-diameter wells. A sonar caliper probe that emits low-frequency acoustic energy has been designed to measure the cross section of extremely large-diameter wells and gas-storage caverns (Dawson-Grove, 1969). The transducer in this probe is rotated similarly to the acoustic televiewer; however, it may be tilted up or down to scan a cavity. The sonar caliper probe has a range of measurement of 1.5 to 1,000 ft.

#### CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

Calibration of caliper probes is done most accurately in cylinders of different diameters. Because large cylinders occupy considerable space in a logging truck, it is common practice to use a metal plate for onsite standardization of three-arm averaging or single-arm probes. The plate is drilled and marked every inch or two and machined to fit over the body of the probe. One arm is placed in appropriate holes for the range to be logged; the pen location is labeled on the analog chart and a digital value is recorded, if applicable. Because values obtained with a calibration plate are not as accurate as those obtained with a cylinder, the log scale generally is checked using casing of known diameter logged in the borehole. A common horizontal scale used for water-well logs is 1 in. of chart equals 1 in. of borehole diameter. With this scale, changes of average hole diameter of 0.1 in. are easily detected. Some caliper systems are capable of detecting much smaller changes; the horizontal scale can be expanded 10 times, if necessary, however, noise may become significant at this sensitivity.

#### VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION

The concept of volume of investigation does not apply to caliper logs, because they are designed to measure changes in distance to the borehole wall, not into the rock. The radius of investigation varies from a few inches within the borehole to 1,000 ft within gas-storage caverns for the various types of caliper probes described here. Under some conditions, data can be obtained on the borehole shape through casing and cement using an ATV with lower than normal frequency or a gamma-gamma probe.

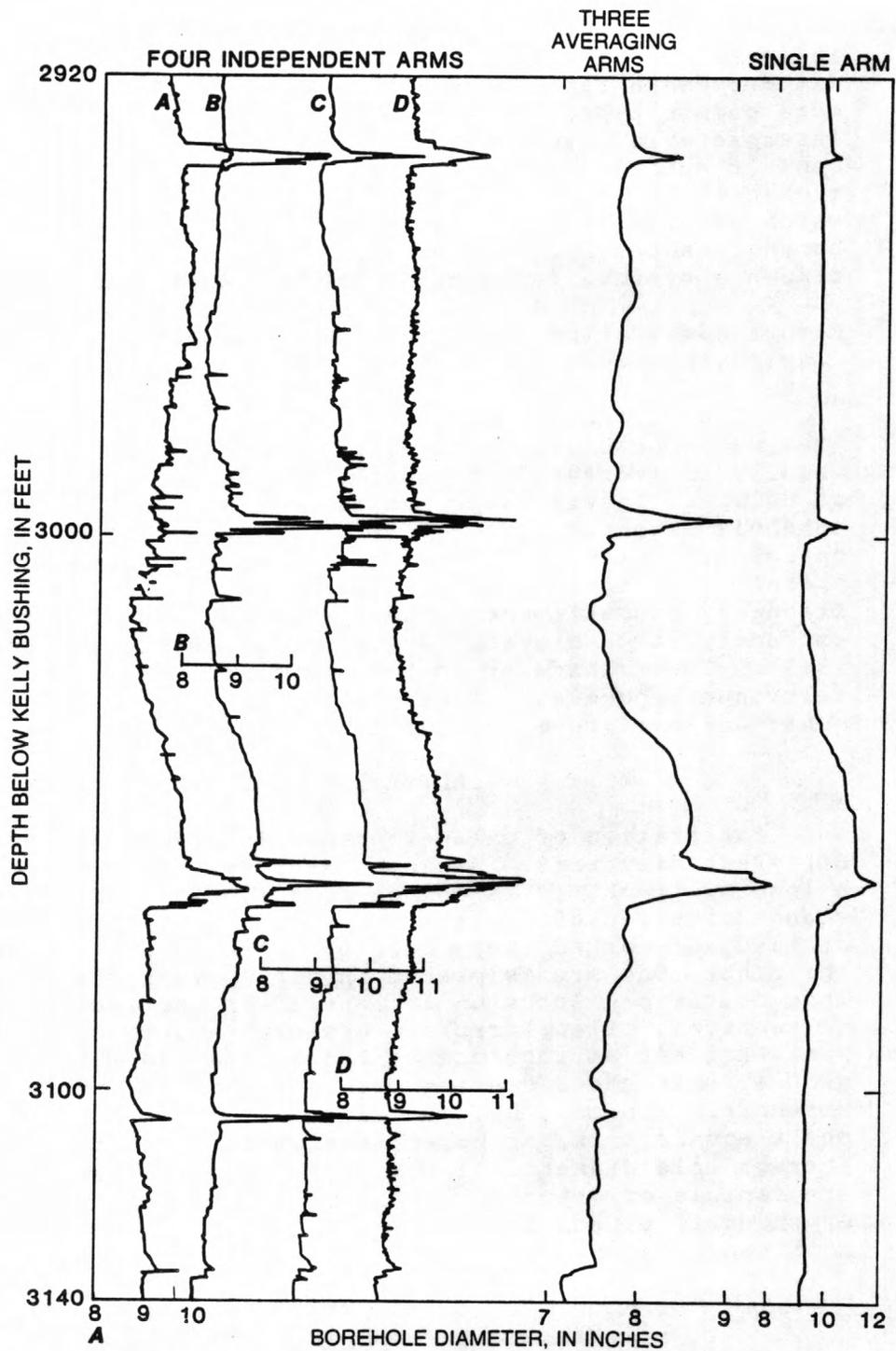


Figure 84.--Caliper logs from probes having four independent arms, three averaging arms, and a single arm, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

## EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

Most extraneous effects on caliper logs are caused by instrumental problems, rather than by the borehole. Occasionally, heavy drilling mud will prevent caliper arms from opening fully and thick mud cake may prevent accurate measurement of drilled diameter. A typical three-arm-averaging caliper probe used for logging water wells will not be lowered into the heavy mud that is common in the bottom of wells, because it may not open. If the lack of pen deflection indicates that the arms have not opened, this problem may be corrected by lifting the probe out of the heaviest mud or by bouncing it up and down. Packing the external mechanical mechanism and grooves for the arms with viscous grease will decrease the incidence of arms failing to open.

Electrical leakage of cable and grounding problems may cause spurious response on caliper logs. Some caliper probes are subject to temperature drift, but this problem usually occurs only if the temperature range is extreme. Checking the scale in casing of known diameter and checking the calibration immediately after logging will indicate any changes that might have occurred during logging. Two of the arms on a three-arm averaging probe may need to be removed to produce a valid log in a markedly deviated hole. A subsequent caliper log in the same borehole may not repeat exactly because the probe may rotate causing the arms to follow slightly different paths.

## INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

A valid caliper log is essential to guide the interpretation of the many different types of logs that are affected by changes in borehole diameter, even those logs that are labeled borehole compensated. Substantial differences in response of gamma-gamma logs in two closely spaced boreholes, which are almost entirely the result of differences in borehole diameter, are illustrated in figure 59. Caliper logs of these two boreholes are shown in figure 20. Because the lithology penetrated by the boreholes is nearly the same the differences in borehole diameter are related almost entirely to drilling technique. In general, the circulation of large volumes of drilling fluid and a large number of trips in and out of a borehole with the drill string cause an increase in borehole diameter. Thus, the shallower part of a borehole generally has a larger diameter than the deeper part because it has been affected by more drilling activities. Drill bits also may become smaller with use; changes in drill-bit size will be obvious on a caliper log, as will casing of different size. Couplings, welds, and screens may be located using a high-resolution caliper log.

Because a caliper log is needed to interpret many other logs, it needs to be made before casing is installed in a borehole that is in danger of caving. When borehole conditions are questionable, the first log made generally is the single-point-resistance log, because it will provide some lithologic information; the probe is relatively inexpensive, if it is lost. If no serious caving problems are detected during the running of the single-point-resistance log, a caliper log needs to be run before casing is installed so it can be used to aid the analysis of nuclear logs made through the casing. Data for extremely rough intervals of borehole wall, with changes in diameter of several inches, cannot be corrected based on caliper logs; data for these intervals need to be eliminated from quantitative analysis.

Caliper logs can provide information on lithology and secondary porosity. Examples of the response of caliper logs to lithology and structures in sedimentary and igneous rocks are provided in figures 7 and 8. Hard rocks like limestone will have a smaller diameter than adjacent shale. Thin beds may result in an irregular trace. Secondary porosity, such as fractures and solution openings, may be obvious on a caliper log; however, the character will not be uniquely defined as it would be on an acoustic-televiwer log. Four traces from an acoustic-caliper log and a mechanical-caliper log for a producing-fracture zone in a geothermal well at Roosevelt Hot Springs, Utah, are included in figure 81. An ATV log of this interval is shown in figure 80. The oriented traces of the acoustic caliper clearly show the apparent openness of the fractures and the direction of dip of the larger fracture at the top of the zone. These traces also demonstrate that the borehole is not symmetrical or circular, which is a typical, rather than an unusual, situation. An elliptical cross section is particularly common in deviated boreholes. Note that the mechanical caliper log, made with a three-arm averaging probe, does not indicate the actual irregularity of the fractured and altered zone. The average borehole diameter probably was increased in this interval by drilling because the rocks were softer and because numerous fractures permitted spalling into the borehole.

The differences that can occur between three of the most common types of caliper logs made in the same well are illustrated in figure 84. The high-resolution logs on the left were made with a probe having four independent arms. The log for the three-arm averaging probe is typical of that recorded in many water wells. The log for the single-arm caliper probe on the right was recorded during the running of a compensated gamma-gamma log. The resolution of these logs decreases from left to right. The numerous sharp excursions on curves A, B, C, and D may appear to be noise, however they are real because they repeated on subsequent logs. ATV logs indicate that these excursions are caused by solution openings in the carbonate rocks. Some of these openings are shown on the ATV log in figure 79. Flowmeter logs indicate that most of the water flowing from this well under artesian pressure was produced from the interval below a depth of about 3,000 ft where the high-resolution caliper logs indicate the maximum number of solution openings. Note that the single-arm caliper log and, to a degree, the three-arm caliper log give a false impression as to the character of solution openings intersecting this well. For example, in figure 84, a significant solution opening just below a depth of 3,100 ft is not indicated on the single-arm caliper log, is indicated by a small anomaly on the three-arm-averaging caliper log, but is clearly indicated by the-four-independent arm caliper logs.

Open fractures are detected readily by three-arm averaging caliper probes; but, as illustrated in figures 8 and 83, the true character of the fractures may not be correctly interpreted from the log. If an open fracture is dipping at a sufficient angle so that the three arms enter the opening at different depths, the separate anomalies produced indicate three fractures, rather than one.

Caliper logs have been used to correlate major producing aquifers in the Snake River Plain in Idaho (Jones, 1961). Vesicular and scoriaceous tops of basalt flows, cinder beds, and caving sediments were identified with three-arm caliper logs. In the basalt of the Quaternary Snake River Group, caliper logs also were used to locate the optimum depth for cementing and to estimate the volume of cement that might be required to fill the annulus to a preselected depth (Keys, 1963). Similarly, a caliper log can be used to calculate the volume of gravel pack needed and to determine the size of casing that can be set to a selected depth. Caliper logs are particularly useful for selecting the depths for inflating packers. Packers can be set only in those intervals of a borehole that are within a specified range of borehole diameters and packers may be damaged if they are set in rough or irregular parts of a borehole. Packers set under these conditions may explode; if they are set on an open fracture, they may explode or be bypassed by flow. Caliper logs are useful for determining what other logs can be made and what range of borehole diameters will be accepted by centralizers or decentralizers. Borehole-diameter information is essential for the calculation of volumetric rate from flowmeter logs.

Mud cake, mud rings, or clay squeezes can be identified with caliper logs. Clay squeezes are caused by a gradual hydration of clay; they may result in a borehole closing entirely, with the resultant loss of a logging probe. A sequence of caliper logs has been used to identify intervals that were freezing inward in permafrost, which eventually resulted in the borehole closing. The more rapid freezing rate probably was the result of greater thermal conductivity of certain sedimentary units. A series of caliper logs also may show increases in borehole diameter with time, caused by reaction of acidic wastes with carbonate rocks; thus the logs identify the intervals accepting most of the waste (Keys and Brown, 1973).

Test 4.--ACOUSTIC AND CALIPER LOGGING

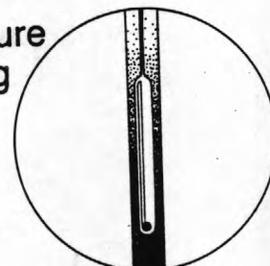
1. Acoustic-velocity logs are distinguished from acoustic-televiewer logs by:
  - a. The use of a lower frequency.
  - b. A much greater depth of rock penetration.
  - c. The use of two or more transducers.
  - d. The use of centralizers.
2. Acoustic-velocity logs measure:
  - a. Transit time, in microseconds per foot.
  - b. Transit time of the shear wave.
  - c. Velocity of the tube wave, in miles per second.
  - d. Compression-wave transit time.
3. The acoustic televiewer can be used to obtain:
  - a. Location of perforations in casing.
  - b. Strike and dip of bedding.
  - c. Location and orientation of fractures.
  - d. Size of some solution openings.
4. Acoustic-waveform logs:
  - a. Can be made with an acoustic-velocity probe.
  - b. Can be used to locate open fractures.
  - c. Require a different recording system than that used for acoustic-velocity logs.
  - d. Are used commercially to evaluate cement bond.
5. Acoustic-televiewer logs:
  - a. Can be recorded quite rapidly.
  - b. Are affected by the presence of magnetic materials.
  - c. Cannot be recorded in steel casing.
  - d. May require several logging trips to optimize results.
6. Porosity can be obtained from acoustic-velocity logs:
  - a. In dry holes.
  - b. By using the equation:  
$$\phi = \frac{\Delta t_{\text{log}} - \Delta t_{\text{matrix}}}{\Delta t_{\text{liquid}} - \Delta t_{\text{matrix}}}$$
  - c. By calibration with core samples.
  - d. In fractured and vuggy limestone.
7. The acoustic caliper has the following advantages over a three-arm averaging mechanical caliper:
  - a. Greater resolution can be obtained.
  - b. Can be used under more varied borehole conditions.
  - c. The traces are oriented.
  - d. The equipment is less expensive.
8. Caliper logs can be used for:
  - a. Distinguishing crystalline-rock types.
  - b. Correction of other logs.
  - c. Calculating cement volumes.
  - d. Locating packer seats.
9. Borehole-diameter changes may be caused by:
  - a. Lithology.
  - b. Drilling technique.
  - c. Fractures and solution openings.
  - d. Mineral solution after drilling.

10. Markedly deviated boreholes are a problem for acoustic probes and some calipers because:
  - a. The transducers do not work properly when they are not vertical.
  - b. Properly centering acoustic probes is difficult.
  - c. Coupled arms on three-arm averaging caliper probes may be forced closed.
  - d. Orientation corrections are needed for the acoustic televiewer.
11. The cement-bond log:
  - a. Can be readily interpreted by any log analyst.
  - b. Is the best method for locating channels through cement.
  - c. Can indicate the quality of bonding between cement, casing, and the borehole wall.
  - d. Will record "formation" signal through casing under some conditions.

## FLUID LOGGING

Fluid logging includes those techniques that measure characteristics related to the fluid column in the borehole; no direct signal is derived from the surrounding rocks and their contained fluids. The fluid logs that are described here are temperature, conductivity, and flow. Fluid logs are unique in that the recorded characteristics of the fluid column may change rapidly with time and may be altered by the logging process.

### Temperature Logging



## TEMPERATURE

Temperature logs can provide useful information on the movement of water through a borehole, including the location of depth intervals that produce or accept water; thus, they can provide information related to permeability distribution and relative hydraulic head. Temperature logs can be used to trace the movement of injected water or waste, to locate cement behind casing and to correct other logs that are sensitive to temperature. Although the temperature sensor only responds to the temperature of the water or air in the immediate vicinity, recorded temperatures may indicate the temperature of adjacent rocks and their contained fluids. Rock temperature may be indicated if no flow exists in the borehole and if equilibrium exists between the temperature of the fluid in the well and the temperature of the adjacent rocks. Temperature logs may have been the first type of geophysical log recorded and they have been extensively used in ground-water hydrology for many years (see fig. 3). For many oil wells, the only temperature data available are bottom-hole temperatures obtained by taping maximum-reading thermometers to the logging probes.

### PRINCIPLES AND INSTRUMENTATION

Most of the temperature probes used in ground-water studies utilize a glass-bead thermistor mounted in a tube that is open at both ends to protect it from damage and to channel water flow past the sensor. The thermistor may be enclosed in a protective cover, but it needs to be made of materials with a substantial thermal conductivity and minimal specific heat to permit fast response time. Response time is fastest, about 1 s, when the glass-bead thermistor is exposed to the fluid, but breakage is more likely. The thermistor also is thermally insulated from the body of the logging probe.

A small electrical current is conducted through the glass-bead thermistor to measure the changes in resistance that occur as a function of temperature. The changes in resistance of the thermistor are converted to a varying pulse rate to eliminate the effect of changes in resistance of the logging cable. Electronic components in the probe that might change output because of thermal drift are placed in a constant temperature oven that maintains a temperature higher than the ambient temperature. Thermistor-type temperature probes used by the U.S. Geological Survey have an accuracy, repeatability, and sensitivity of about 0.02 degrees C. They also are stable for long periods, but they have the disadvantage of a nonlinear temperature response. If desired, the nonlinear curve can be replotted on a linear scale in a computer. Other types of low-temperature measuring systems for water are described in detail by Stevens and others, 1975. For high-temperature logging in geothermal wells, platinum resistor sensors may be used that have an accurate, stable, and linear response, but a much longer response time. In a simple version of a geothermal-well probe, no electronics are in the probe, therefore, changes in electrical leakage in the logging cable can introduce an error.

Two general types of temperature logs are commonly made: the temperature log is a record of temperature versus depth; the differential-temperature log is a record of the rate of change in temperature versus depth. The differential-temperature log is more sensitive to changes in temperature gradient. The increased sensitivity of a differential-temperature log is illustrated in figure 85. The anomaly on the differential-temperature log clearly correlates with an anomaly on the caliper log, which is caused by a large solution opening in the carbonate rock. Note that no scale is usually present on the differential log; if a scale is used, it would be in degrees per foot. The differential-temperature log can be considered to be the first derivative of the temperature log; it can be obtained by two different types of logging probes or by computer calculation from a temperature log.

One type of differential-temperature probe measures the difference in temperature between two sensors that are placed from 1 to several feet apart along the vertical axis of the probe (Basham and Macune, 1952). A second type of differential-temperature probe uses one sensor and an electronic memory so that the temperature at one time can be compared with a selected previous time (Johns, 1966). Logging speed needs to be maintained accurately for this method. With either type of probe, the recorder can be set at a reference gradient, which will plot as a straight line. Departures from the reference gradient will be recorded as deflections on the log. The same result can be derived from computer analysis of a digitized temperature log; such analysis has the advantage that the spacing or delay can be varied in the computer to provide the maximum sensitivity. All differential-temperature logs in this report were produced by a computer with theoretical spacings from 1 to 3 ft.

Figure 85.--Caliper, differential-temperature, and temperature logs for an interval in Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

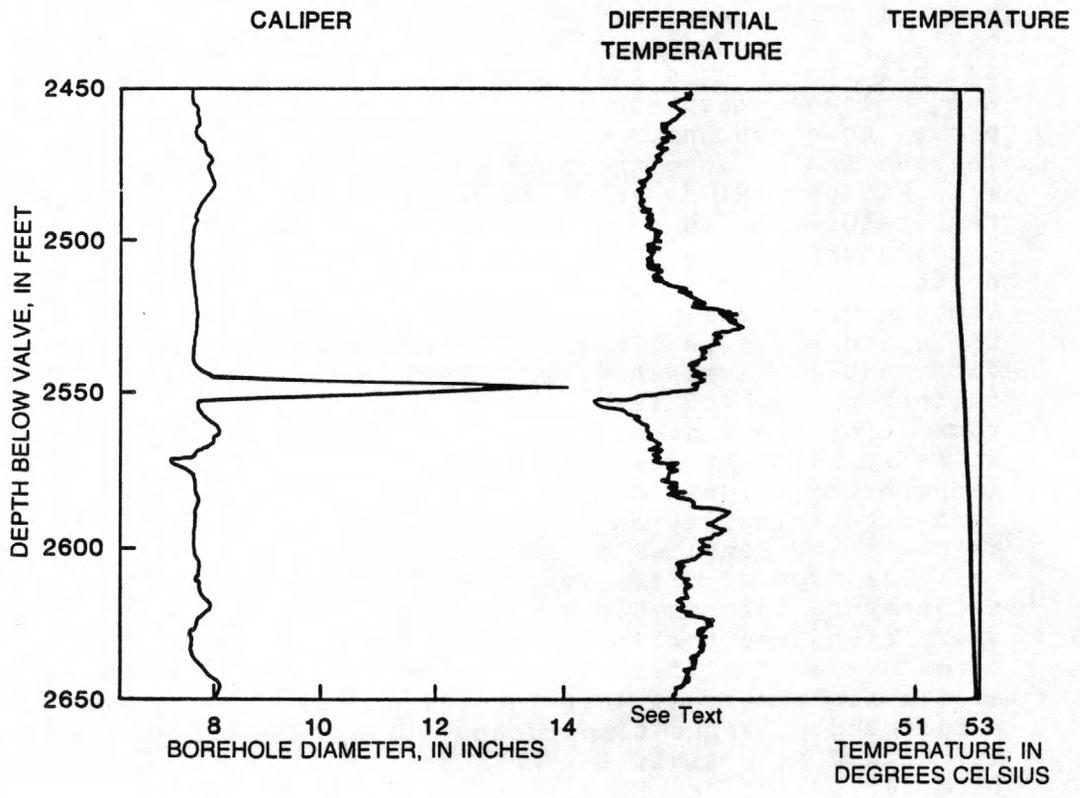


Figure 85.--Caliper, differential-temperature, and temperature logs for an interval in the Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming.

## CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

The calibration of temperature probes needs to be done in a constant temperature bath using accurate mercury thermometers. The bath and probe need to reach thermal equilibrium before a calibration value is established. For calibration of geothermal-logging probes, an oil with a high burning temperature, like peanut oil, may be used. Periodic recalibration is needed to establish the stability of any temperature-logging system; but, if the long-term stability has been proven, onsite standardization may be sufficient.

Onsite standardization cannot be done with great accuracy because no portable substitute exists for a constant-temperature bath. The only temperature that can be achieved and maintained for sufficient time to permit a valid calibration is 0 degrees C, in an ice bath. An approximate check of system response may be made at other temperatures, but the temperature of water in a bucket will be changing constantly; a thermometer reading of the water temperature immediately surrounding the sensor is difficult to make. Some probes incorporate a fixed resistor that can be switched into the measuring circuit in place of the thermistor to check system response onsite. A resistance-decade box can be substituted in place of the resistance temperature sensor to check response of all of the logging system except the sensor.

## VOLUME OF INVESTIGATION

The sensor in a temperature probe only responds to the fluid in its immediate vicinity. Therefore, in an interval in which fluid is moving, measured temperature may be different from the temperature in adjacent rocks. Under these conditions, a thermal gradient will exist from the borehole wall outward. Only in a borehole where no fluid movement has occurred for sufficient time to permit thermal equilibrium to be established does a temperature log reflect the geothermal gradient in the rocks. Thus, the concept of volume of investigation does not apply to temperature logs.

## EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

Errors can be caused on temperature logs by such instrumental problems as thermal lag, drift of the electronics, and self-heating of the thermistor. None of these factors are significant in a well designed probe. A number of borehole conditions may cause misinterpretation of a temperature log. Drilling, testing, and cementing a borehole cause significant perturbations of the thermal system, and years may be required for thermal equilibrium to be re-established. Predicting the return of thermal equilibrium between the borehole and adjacent rock after drilling or injection of fluids or under conditions of natural vertical circulation is difficult. A theoretical method for calculating true formation temperature under these conditions is described by Sanyal et al. (1980). Movement of the logging probe disturbs the thermal profile in the fluid column. Unless rapid flow is occurring, each temperature log will be different. The degree of disturbance caused by any type of logging probe is related to speed of logging and the diameter of the probe in relation to the diameter of the borehole. Fast logging speed and large-diameter probes will cause the greatest disturbance. The most accurate temperature log is made before any other log is made; the temperature log is recorded while moving slowly down the borehole. Logging speed is a function of response time of the probe; a speed faster than 25 ft/min seldom produces an accurate temperature log.

Convection is a major problem in the interpretation of temperature logs, particularly in large-diameter wells and in areas of substantial thermal gradient. Convective cells in large-diameter wells can cause major temperature anomalies unrelated to ground-water movement. Krige (1939) developed an expression for the critical temperature gradient above which convection occurs:

$$Cvk/g\alpha a^4 + g\alpha T/cp \quad (12)$$

where  $g$  = acceleration of gravity; in  $\text{cm}/\text{sec}^2$

$T$  = absolute temperature (kelvin)

$\alpha$  = coefficient of thermal expansion of water; in  $\text{degrees\_kelvin}^{-1}$

$cp$  = specific heat at constant pressure; in  $\text{degrees\_kelvin}^{-1}$

$v$  = kinematic viscosity; in  $\text{cm}^2 \text{sec}^{-1}$

$k$  = thermal conductivity; in  $\text{cm}^2 \text{sec}^{-1}$

$a$  = radius of the borehole; cm

$C$  = a constant, which is 216 for most boreholes.

Sammel (1968) plotted critical thermal gradients as functions of temperature, concentration of dissolved solids, and borehole diameter. He concluded that convection may cause temperatures of water in the upper interval of deep boreholes to be substantially different from true temperatures in the rocks penetrated. Because of the effect of convective movement, small-diameter boreholes provide more useful temperature logs under most conditions.

## INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

Temperature logs can aid in the solution of a number of ground-water problems if they are properly run under suitable conditions and if interpretation is not oversimplified. If there is no flow in or adjacent to a borehole, the temperature gradually will increase with depth, as a function of the geothermal gradient. Typical geothermal gradients range between 0.47 and 0.6 degrees C per 100 ft of depth; they are related to the thermal conductivity or thermal resistivity of the rocks adjacent to the borehole and the geothermal heat flow from below. Conaway (1977) developed a computer program for correcting digitized temperature data and calculating temperature gradient or differential-temperature logs. The resulting logs of a cased well were determined to correlate well with measurements of thermal resistivity on core and to resolve stratigraphic units as thin as 1.5 ft, where thermal-resistivity contrast was adequate (Conaway and Beck, 1977). Thus, temperature logs can be used to obtain lithologic information, which is not a common use in ground-water studies because water movement commonly obscures temperature changes caused by lithology. Schneider (1972) has reported that prolonged pumping of an aquifer may cause a substantial distortion of the natural geothermal field by the induced upward flow of warm water or the induced downward flow of cold water or both.

If rapid vertical flow of water occurs in a well, the temperature log through that interval will show little change. Vertical flow, up or down, is common in wells that are completed through several aquifers or fractures that have different hydraulic head, although the flow rate is seldom fast enough to produce an isothermal log. An example of a temperature log in a geothermal well that indicates the intervals of producing fractures is given in figure 86. Much of the water was entering the well at a depth of 2,900 ft, but there are additional producing fractures below a depth of 3,000 ft. Although the production rate was rapid in this well, the upward flowing water cooled markedly, because the well had not been flowing for a long period and because the shallow rocks had not yet been heated substantially.

The identification of fractures that are producing water from Triassic sedimentary rocks near Raleigh, N.C., is illustrated in figure 87. The temperature log on the left indicates several changes in temperature gradient that are clearly defined by the computer-derived, differential-temperature log. The caliper log indicates that the water production may come from fractures; this interpretation is substantiated by the acoustic-televiwer logs, on the right. Differential-temperature logs usually display sharper anomalies that are easier to identify than subtle changes in gradient in a temperature log.

Figure 86.--Temperature log of a producing geothermal well at Roosevelt Hot Springs, Utah.

Figure 87.--Temperature, differential-temperature, caliper, and acoustic-televiwer logs of Sears test well 1 near Raleigh, N.C.

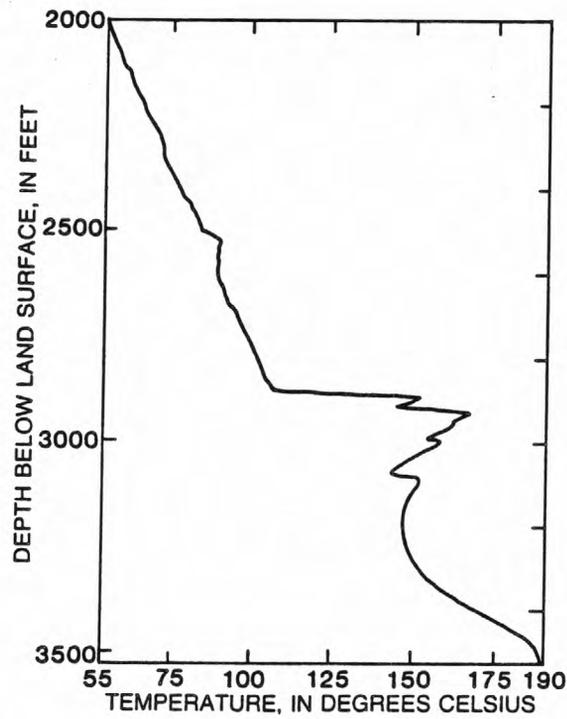


Figure 86.--Temperature log of a producing geothermal well at Roosevelt Hot Springs, Utah.

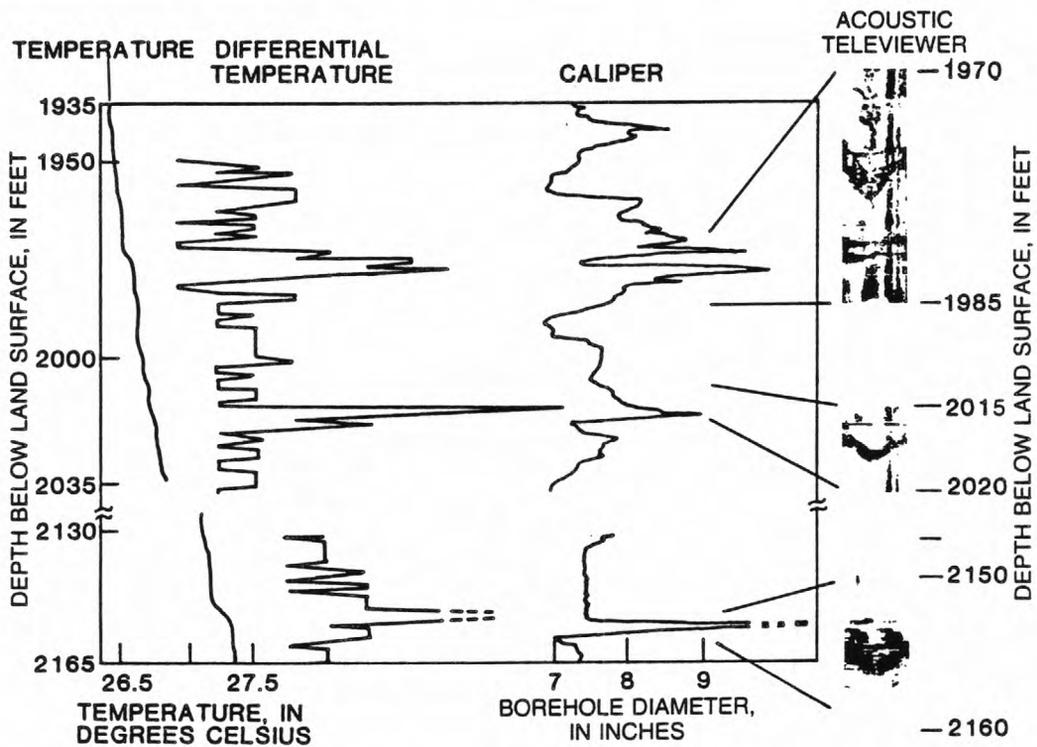


Figure 87.--Temperature, differential-temperature, caliper, and acoustic-televviewer logs of Sears test well 1 near Raleigh, N.C.

A radial differential-temperature probe has been described that can be used to detect flow behind casing (Cooke and Meyer, 1979). Two sensors are extended to contact the casing; the temperature difference between the two sensors is recorded as they rotate. The temperature of fluid or gas flowing in a channel in cement usually will be somewhat different than the temperature of cement where channels are not present. Detection can be improved by injecting water of different temperature into the borehole.

Many temperature logs are recorded at a relatively insensitive scale to decrease off-scale deflections and the necessary repositioning of the trace. Commercial-temperature logs generally are recorded at a sensitivity that makes the resolution of 1 degree C changes difficult. Commonly, water wells are logged at a scale of 1 degree C per 1 in. of paper; scales may be expanded to 10 times that sensitivity, if necessary. Because the most accurate temperature log is made on the first logging trip down a well, the temperature range is not known; the tendency may be to decrease sensitivity to keep the record on scale. One way to record at maximum sensitivity and simultaneously produce a log without off-scale deflections is to transmit the signal to two recorder channels with a 10:1 difference in sensitivity. If the data from the probe are digitized, then the temperature logs can be replotted later at the best scale, and a differential-temperature log can be produced.

Seasonal ground-water recharge from the land surface may produce cyclic temperature fluctuations at shallow depths; vertical flow causes curvature in the geothermal gradient. Stallman (1965) suggested that the measurement of temperature profiles with maximum sensitivity would permit the calculation of vertical fluid movement in the unsaturated zone. Bredehoeft and Papadopoulos (1965) developed one-dimensional curves for estimating vertical water movement below the water table from temperature profiles. Using this method, Sorey (1971) calculated the rate of upward water movement through semiconfining beds that was similar to rates derived from pumping tests and water budgets. From a practical standpoint, the precision of the borehole measurements was 0.01 degree C; The method was restricted to ground-water velocities sufficiently fast to cause measurable curvature in a temperature log.

Temperature logs can be used to trace the movement of injected water (Keys and Brown, 1978). A few of several hundred temperature logs, made during a 7-day recharge test in the High Plains of Texas, are shown in figure 88. Water from a playa lake was injected into an irrigation well, and logging was used to determine the movement of the recharge water and the extent of plugging of the Ogallala aquifer. Several monitoring wells were drilled and completed with 2-in. steel pipe, capped on the bottom and filled with water. The logs in figure 88 were of a monitoring well located 39 ft from the injection well. Most of the time, the water in the playa lake was warmer than the ground water and the lake-water temperature fluctuated several degrees each day. The passing of a cold front caused a marked decrease in temperature of the lake water, which was detected in the monitoring wells. The first warm water was detected in the monitoring well less than 4 hours after recharge started. The temperature logs indicated that the interval of greatest permeability was located at a depth of about 160 ft. Recharge water did not arrive at a depth of 180 ft until the third day. Diurnal temperature fluctuations and development of a recharge cone are indicated by the data in figure 88.

Figure 88.--Selected temperature logs made in a monitoring well located 39 feet from a recharge well, High Plains of Texas.

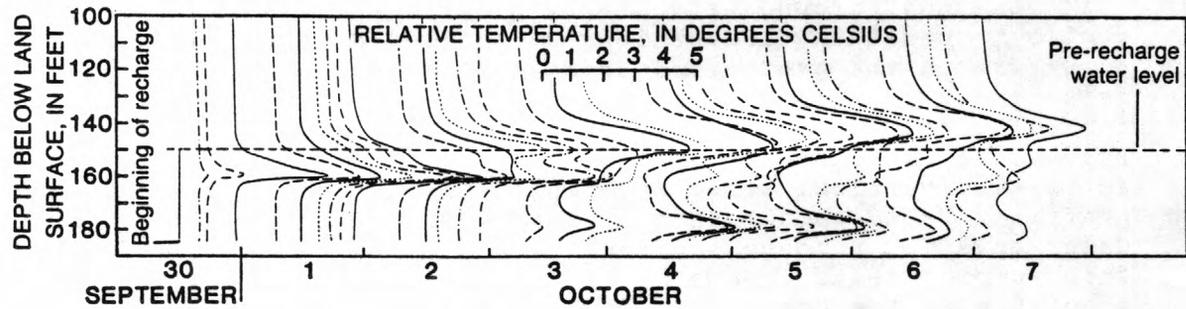


Figure 88.--Selected temperature logs made in a monitoring well located 39 feet from a recharge well, High Plains of Texas.

Diurnal-temperature cycles and traveltime of the center of thermal waves plotted in figure 89 were calculated from temperature logs made in the same monitoring well mentioned previously; however, logs from other monitoring wells gave similar results. The prominent solid line in the upper graph of figure 89 shows the diurnal-temperature fluctuations of the recharge water obtained from a continuous recorder on the recharge line. The other three lines represent water temperature fluctuations at three depths in the monitoring well obtained from temperature logs. The points shown by symbols represent the temperature at the calculated center of the thermal waves. As shown by the data in the lower graph of the figure, the traveltime of the center of the thermal waves did not decrease substantially during the duration of the test, except possibly at the end. Several significant conclusions were reached as a result of this test. The aquifer was not plugged by recharging water containing a large concentration of suspended solids and substantial entrained air; in addition the land owner reported greatly increased yield from the well. Temperature logs and subsequent microscopic examination of core indicated that plugging of the uniform fine-grained sand did not occur because of the presence of secondary porosity.

Temperature logs can be used to trace the movement of water that has been heated by the sun in a tank after injection of that water into the ground. In a similar fashion, temperature logs can be used to locate plumes of wastewater that result from injection in wells or seepage from ponds, if the temperature of the wastewater is sufficiently different from that of the ground water. An example of the identification of a plume of warm wastewater for a distance of more than 1.5 mi from a disposal well was described by Jones (1961). Temperature logs made in a series of monitoring wells clearly showed the horizontal and vertical distribution of the wastewater, which was corroborated by fluid-conductivity logs.

Figure 89.--Diurnal-temperature cycles and traveltimes of the center of thermal waves, based on temperature logs made in a monitoring well located 39 feet from a recharge well, High Plains of Texas.

Temperature logs can be used to determine the location of cement grout outside of casing. The casing is filled with water, and the log usually is made within 24 hours of grout injection; however, anomalous temperatures may persist for several days. A neat portland-cement grout was determined to have a temperature of 70 degrees C after 4 to 8 h and 38 degrees C after 8 to 12 h, in a depth interval where normal temperatures are considerably less than 38 degrees C.

Temperature data from wells also are used to calculate water density, viscosity, thermal conductivity and to develop heat-flow maps, which can be used to estimate fluid flux, particularly in geopressured aquifers.

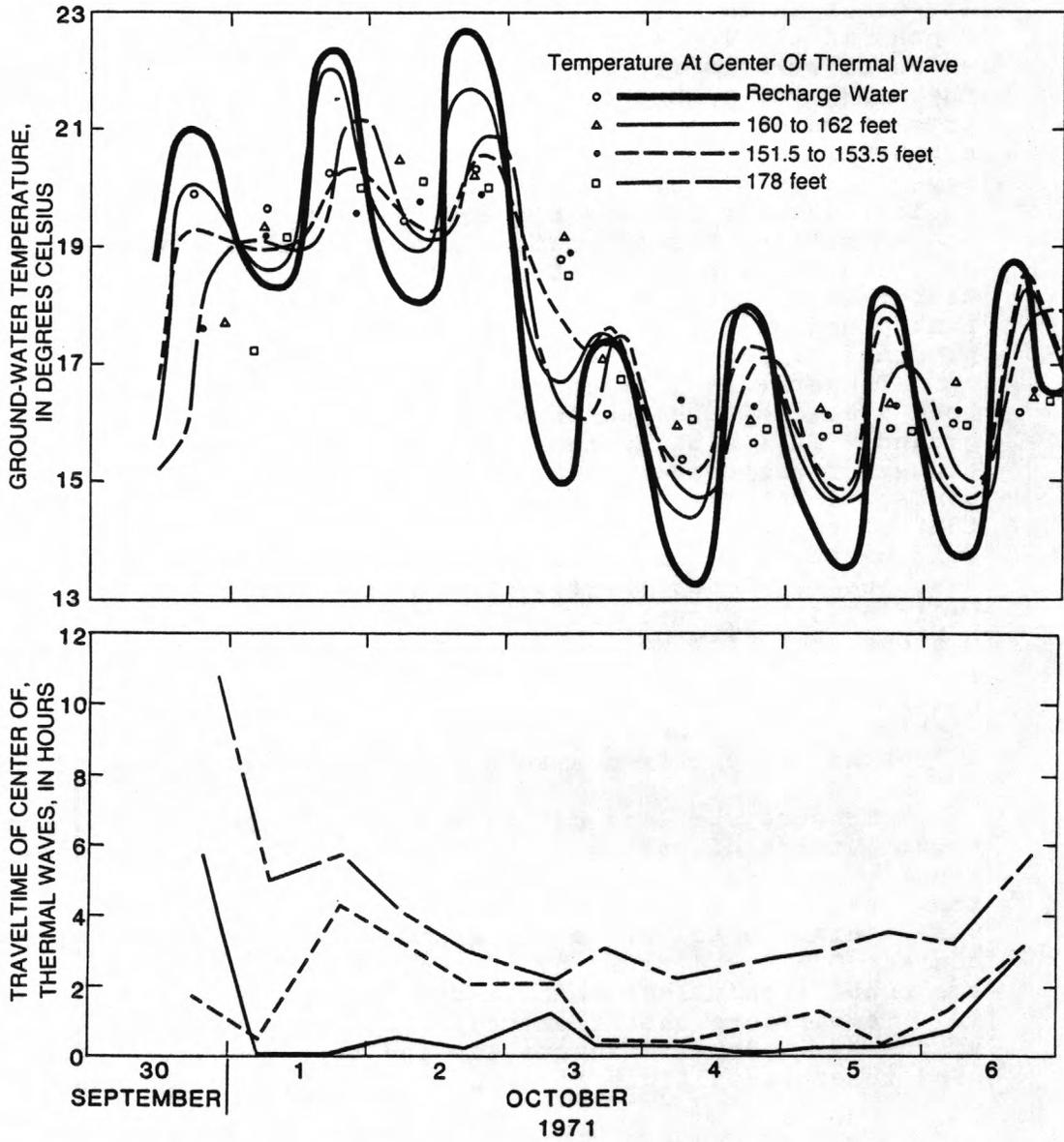
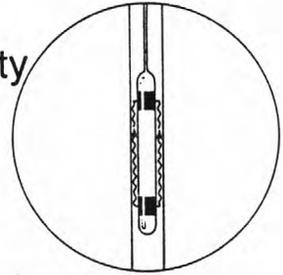


Figure 89.--Diurnal-temperature cycles and traveltimes of the center of thermal waves, based on temperature logs made in a monitoring well located 39 feet from a recharge well, High Plains of Texas.

## Fluid Conductivity Logging



### CONDUCTIVITY

Logs of fluid conductivity, which is the reciprocal of fluid resistivity, provide data related to the concentration of dissolved solids in the fluid column. Although the quality of the fluid column may not reflect the quality of adjacent interstitial fluids, the information can be useful when combined with other logs. The log is simple and relatively inexpensive to make, but it has not been extensively used in ground-water hydrology to date.

### PRINCIPLES AND INSTRUMENTATION

Fluid-conductivity or fluid-resistivity logs are records of the capacity of the borehole fluid that enters the probe to conduct electrical current. The probe is not affected by changes in the conductivity of adjacent fluids or solid materials because the probe is constructed with the electrodes inside a housing. Because the ring electrodes are installed on the inside of a steel tube that is open at both ends, water will flow through the tube as the probe moves down the well. The electrodes generally are gold or platinum to decrease changes in contact resistance caused by chemical reactions and they are insulated from the steel housing. Probes for use on single-conductor cable have only two electrodes, which serve as both current and potential electrodes analogous to a volt-ohm meter. The four-electrode system used on multiconductor cable provides more accurate measurements. This system consists of two current and two potential electrodes that function in the same way as those in a normal resistivity logging system. Alternating current is used across the electrodes to decrease electrode polarization. If properly designed, the electronics in the probe will not respond to borehole temperature and changes in the resistance of the cable will not affect the data transmitted to the land surface.

Conductivity is recorded in micromhos per centimeter (microsiemens per centimeter), which is equal to 10,000 divided by the resistivity in ohm-meters. Both units are used for fluid logging and they can be converted to standard temperature by use of figure 9 or a similar chart. Specific conductance is measured at the standard temperature of 25 degrees C. The effect of fluid temperature on conductivity is substantial; a conductivity of 700 micromhos per centimeter in a sodium chloride solution at a borehole temperature of 10 degrees C is equivalent to a specific conductance of 1,000 micromhos per centimeter at 25 degrees C.

## CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

Calibration generally is done empirically in solutions of known sodium chloride concentration because most charts are based on this salt and because conversion factors are available to correct for the presence of other ions. The salinity of the calibration solution may be calculated by adding a known quantity of salt to distilled water and converting to conductivity, or by measuring with an accurate laboratory conductivity meter. Temperature of the calibration solution is recorded while the measurement is being made; temperature needs to be uniform and stable for the most accurate results.

Onsite standardization may be done using a resistance-decade box; however, this method is not accurate and it does not account for changes in contact resistance of the electrodes. A better approach is to have several fluids of known salt concentration in plastic bottles sufficiently large to allow submersion of all electrodes in the probe. A laboratory conductivity cell or a less accurate mud-resistivity kit also can be used to check the accuracy of the logging equipment onsite.

## EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

Disturbance of the fluid column in the borehole can make fluid-conductivity logs difficult to interpret. Disturbance of an equilibrium-salinity profile can be caused by the movement of logging probes or by convective cells. Because of the possibility of disturbance by logging, the most accurate fluid-conductivity log is made during the first trip down the borehole. The need to make fluid-conductivity logs first also pertains to fluid-temperature logs; therefore an ideal probe is capable of making simultaneous fluid-conductivity and fluid-temperature logs. Unlike temperature, chemical equilibrium between the fluid in the borehole and that in the formation only can be established by actual movement of fluid. Because of vertical flow, a fluid conductivity log may not represent the salinity of interstitial fluids adjacent to the borehole.

Some fluid-conductivity logging systems are not designed to exclude the effect of conductivity changes outside the probe. This type of extraneous response can be detected by logging in and out of steel casing. If the log shows a sharp deflection that is not the result of a coincidental change in salinity at the bottom of the casing, then equipment malfunction is indicated. Temperature drift is another common equipment problem, which is best detected in a temperature bath with fixed resistors across the electrodes so the thermal effect on fluid conductivity is not a factor.

## INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

When both fluid conductivity and fluid temperature are known, the equivalent sodium-chloride concentration can be determined from figure 9. Water samples need to be analyzed to determine the concentrations of the various ions so that corrections can be made. Fluid-conductivity logs first were used in ground-water investigations in 1930 by Livingston and Lynch (1937) of the U.S. Geological Survey. They developed the equipment to locate the sources of saltwater leaking into artesian wells in Texas, a common application for these logs.

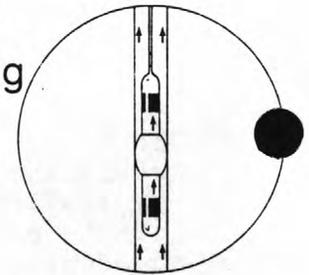
Another important use of fluid-conductivity logs is to aid in the interpretation of electric logs. Spontaneous-potential, single-point-resistance, and many types of multielectrode-resistivity logs are affected by the salinity of the fluid in the borehole. The substantial changes that can be produced on spontaneous-potential logs by differences in fluid conductivity are shown in figure 28. If charts are available, quantitative corrections may be made to some types of logs; if not, the reason for anomalous log response may be recognized. Electric logs usually are made shortly after a borehole is completed; the borehole may be filled with a column of drilling mud that is rapidly changing in composition. Gravity segregation of the mud and inflowing ground-water will modify the electrical conductivity of the fluid column and affect electric logs run during this period.

Regional patterns of ground-water flow and recharge areas may be recognized from fluid-conductivity logs of the water wells in an area (Olmsted, 1962). Fluid-conductivity data can be used to map and monitor areas of saltwater encroachment. Similarly, the logs can be used to monitor plumes of contaminated ground water from waste-disposal operations. Commonly, chemical waste or leachate from solid-waste-disposal operations produces ground water with a greater than normal conductivity. Fluid-conductivity logs provide the basis for selecting depths from which to collect water samples for chemical analyses. Water samplers are available that operate on single or multiconductor cables; these samplers can be opened and closed at selected depths. Analyses of samples will provide a basis for checking the calibration of the conductivity probe and for conversion of log data to salt concentration.

Fluid-conductivity logging equipment can be used to trace the movement of ground water by injecting saltwater as a tracer. Small quantities of saltwater may be injected at selected depths, and fluid-conductivity logs may be used to measure vertical flow in a single water well or larger quantities may be injected to trace the movement of saltwater to nearby water wells. The general technique for locating more permeable depth intervals is similar to tracing ground-water flow with temperature logs. This application of fluid-conductivity logs is discussed in more detail under flow logging. Quantities of salt used need to conform to applicable regulations on ground-water contamination.

The interpretation of fluid-conductivity logs is complicated by the flow regime in a water well. Unless the flow regime is understood, analysis of the fluid-conductivity log is subject to considerable error. Information on the construction of the well, flowmeter logs, and fluid-temperature logs are useful in the interpretation of fluid-conductivity logs. Electric logs may aid in determining if an interface between waters of different quality is spatially related to the quality of interstitial fluids. In summary, fluid-conductivity logs can be misleading unless other information is available for the construction of the well, the flow regime, and aquifer geometry.

## Flow Logging



## FLOW

The measurement of flow within and between water wells is one of the most useful logging methods available to ground-water hydrologists. Flow measurement with logging probes include mechanical methods, such as impellers; chemical and radioactive tracer methods; and thermal methods. They are used most commonly to measure vertical flow within a single well, but lateral flow through a single well or flow between wells also may be recorded by borehole-geophysical methods. Tracer methods that require sampling and analysis are not described in this report.

### PRINCIPLES AND INSTRUMENTATION

The Price current meter was used by Meinzer (1928) to locate intervals of leakage in artesian wells in Hawaii; Fiedler (1928) used the Au deep-well current meter in the Rosewell artesian basin at about the same time. These and other methods of flow measurement in water wells prior to 1960 are described in detail by Patten and Bennett (1962).

The most common logging probe used at the present time (1985) for measuring vertical fluid movement in water wells is the impeller flowmeter, which is a relatively inexpensive and reliable instrument. Most flowmeters incorporate a lightweight, three- or four-bladed impeller mounted on a shaft that rotates a magnet mounted on the same shaft. The magnet actuates a sealed microswitch so that one or more pulses are impressed on low-voltage direct current that is connected across the switch. The magnet and switch usually are located in an oil-filled housing, so a watertight seal on the shaft, which would increase friction, is not necessary. Unless these oil-filled probes are stored vertically, upside down, the oil level needs to be checked before each use. The impeller is protected from damage by a basket or housing, and the probe needs to be centralized with bow springs, or similar devices. Baskets and impellers of different diameters are available and are easily changed, so the maximum size for the water well being studied can be used to increase sensitivity. The pulses from the flowmeter either may be transmitted directly to the same ratemeter used for nuclear logging and integrated so the log is a record of the average rate of rotation as a function of depth or the individual pulses may be recorded for slow rotation rates.

Continuous logs of flow rate may be made at a constant logging speed and supplemented by more accurate stationary measurements at selected depths. The main shortcoming of impeller-type flowmeters is the lack of sensitivity to slow-velocity flow. The most commonly used impeller flowmeter usually stalls at vertical velocities of 4 to 5 ft/min although it is possible to measure velocities as slow as 2 to 3 ft/min under some conditions. Because velocities of 4 to 5 ft/min are required to start rotation water wells may be logged at speeds greater than 5 ft/min and actual flow velocities determined by subtracting the logging speed from the recorded velocity. The addition of a packer or other flange-like device to concentrate most of the flow through the basket will improve sensitivity at slow velocities, particularly in large-diameter water wells, however the flowmeter will need to be recalibrated after such an addition.

Tracer methods have been used in ground-water investigations for many years, but only those that use logging equipment are described here. Tracer methods are useful to determine much slower velocities than those that can be measured by impeller flowmeters; velocities of a few feet per day may be detected. The most commonly used methods use a probe to follow the vertical movement of a chemical or radioactive tracer injected at selected depths in a water well or to detect the lateral movement of water to adjacent wells. The use of salt solutions as chemical tracers has several limitations; they cannot be detected in water with similar salt concentrations, and the greater specific gravity of the tracer introduces an error. Radioactive tracers can be detected at smaller concentrations than can chemical tracers; most radioactive tracers can be detected through casing. The difficulties in obtaining the permits necessary for use of radioactive tracers has restricted their application in ground-water investigations in the United States. It is possible to create short-lived radioactive tracers from stable isotopes by activation with a neutron source.

Various salt solutions have been used as tracers within a single water well, because they are inexpensive, readily obtained, and can be detected with a fluid-conductivity probe. A tracer injector can be attached to a fluid-conductivity probe, so that multiple injections can be made and logged with the recorder on time drive, during one trip into the well. A tracer injector, which can be used with any kind of liquid tracer, consists of a positive displacement piston-type pump, that moved in either direction, with the same module used to open and close the arms on many motorized calipers. The quantity of tracer injected is a function of the time the motor is operated; the quantity can vary from a drop to 20 ml or more, depending on the capacity of the injector. The most efficient salt-injector system includes fluid conductivity electrodes both above and below the injector, so movement in either direction can be detected. Single-detector systems need to be designed so they can be located either above or below the injector, depending on the anticipated direction of flow. Injector-detector probes, like other types of flowmeters, are centralized in the borehole to measure the maximum velocity and to minimize borehole-wall effects.

Radioactive-tracer logging systems use the same injector, with either gamma probes located above and below, or double gamma detectors, located in either position. Iodine-131 is the most commonly used tracer for both oil-well and water-well logging because it has an 8-day half-life, is water soluble, and is detectable at minute concentrations. A single drop of iodine-131 may produce a large anomaly on the gamma log; the amplitude will depend on the size of the detector and the degree of dilution in the borehole fluid. Numerous injections may be made with the injector full of tracer; but, like the salt-injection technique, data are collected immediately after injection as a series of point measurements with the recorder on time drive. Later, logs may be made with a gamma probe in the usual manner. Because the tracer can be detected at minute concentrations, single injections of tracer may be followed for a number of days, as described later in this section.

A thermal flowmeter, developed by Skibitzke (1955), consists of a resistance-heating element located between two thermistors in a small-diameter tube. The degree of fluid heating that occurred was inversely related to the fluid velocity through the tube. Although Patten and Bennett (1962) reported a functional velocity range of 2 to 75 ft/min and errors in the range of 0.5 to 1 ft/min, this type of thermal flowmeter has had little use in ground-water hydrology to date.

The heat-pulse flowmeter originally was developed in England (Dudgeon and others, 1975) and evaluated for the U. S. Geological Survey by Hess (1982). Design of the heat-pulse flowmeter was modified extensively and a new probe was built by A. E. Hess of the U.S. Geological Survey (Hess, 1986). The modified version works reliably and has been used in wells to measure extremely slow velocities, as described under Interpretation and Applications. The logging system is shown schematically in figure 90 (Hess 1986). The wire heat grid, located between two thermistors, is heated by a short pulse of electric current, which is triggered from the land surface. The heated sheet of water moves toward one of the thermistors under the affected by the vertical component of flow in the well. The arrival of the heat pulse is plotted on a chart recorder running on time drive, as illustrated in figure 91. A deflection of the recorder trace to the right indicates upward flow, and to the left, downward flow. The system is calibrated in flow columns of various diameters for flow in each direction because of the tendency for heated water to rise and the asymmetry of the probe to produce slightly different calibration curves in the two directions. The heat-pulse flowmeter can be used to measure vertical velocities from 0.1 ft/min or less to 20 ft/min or more and it has advantages over both impeller flowmeters and tracer logging. An inflatable packer that can be attached to the probe and operated from the land surface has been developed. This packer concentrates all flow through the probe and, thus, improve the performance of the heat-pulse flowmeter or an impeller flowmeter .

Figure 90.--Equipment for making heat-pulse flowmeter logs (modified from Hess, 1986).

Figure 91.--Analog record of a heat pulse from a thermal flowmeter (modified from Hess, 1986).

In the past, a number of techniques have been tried for measuring horizontal flow in water wells without much success or wide use. The techniques may not provide an accurate estimate of average direction and velocity of flow in an aquifer because of the perturbations in the flow system caused by the well. A heat-pulse logging system has been developed for measuring horizontal flow (Kerfoot, 1982); the system consists of a series of paired thermistors located circumferentially around a heat emitter and is based on thermal transmission through an enclosing porous matrix of sand or glass beads. A laboratory investigation of the probe has been made that indicates a linear, consistent, and qualitatively predictable response (Melville and others, 1985). These tests also determined that probe response may be invalidated by channelizing near slotted casing and that complications result from permeability contrasts between the enclosing porous matrix and the aquifer.

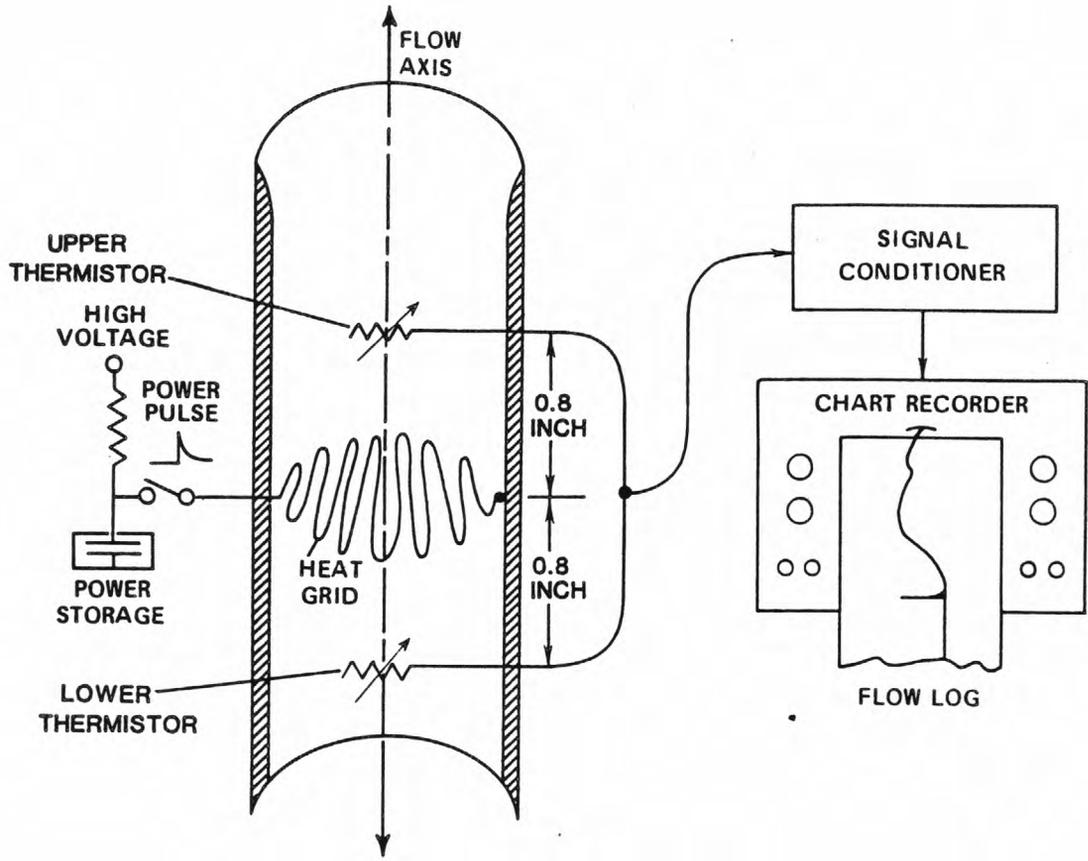


Figure 90.--Equipment for making heat-pulse flowmeter logs (modified from Hess, 1986).

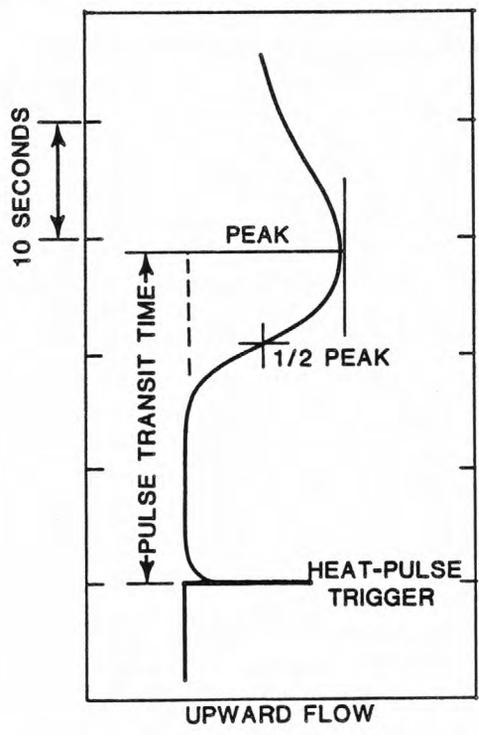


Figure 91.--Analog record of a heat pulse from a thermal flowmeter (modified from Hess, 1986).

## CALIBRATION AND STANDARDIZATION

The calibration of flow-measuring probes is done best in laboratory facilities designed for this purpose. Subsequent calibration checks and standardization may be done in a well under the proper conditions. The U.S. Geological Survey has designed and built a simple, but functional, calibration facility that is used for testing many of their flow-measuring probes. The test facility, which is described in detail by Hess (1982), consists of clear plastic columns with inside diameters of 2, 3, 4, and 6 in. connected to a pump that can circulate water in either direction at velocities from 0.07 to 50 ft/min, depending on column size, and at temperatures from 10 to 40 C. Flowmeters need to be calibrated for both upward and downward flow because their response is not symmetrical. The clear plastic columns allow the addition of a colored tracer for visual timing and observation of convection currents; these currents are a problem if the difference between column temperature and room temperature is not minimized. Similarly, convection currents occur in wells when the borehole fluid is not in thermal equilibrium with the formation fluid.

Onsite standardization or calibration can be performed by moving the flowmeter up or down a cased part of a well at carefully controlled logging speeds. Calibration by this method is only valid at the casing diameter logged. An example of this type of calibration in a flowing water well is shown in figure 92, where the pulses per unit time are plotted against the logging speed. The two lines with different slopes represent opposite directions of impeller rotation. The range of logging speeds near this intersection represents the stall zone where the velocity is too slow to turn the impeller. Theoretically, this intersection represents the velocity at which water was flowing up the well, slightly greater than 60 ft/min. If the casing diameter is known and if the volumetric flow rate at the surface can be measured, the actual velocity can be calculated. If no flow occurs in the casing, the stall point will not necessarily be the same in both directions because of the asymmetry of the probe. If this procedure is used, the logging speeds are controlled by frequent use of a stopwatch.

Tracer-injector probes or heat-pulse flowmeters are not easily calibrated or standardized onsite under static conditions; flow at the land surface at a measured rate produces one velocity that can be used as a check. Moving the probe at a carefully controlled speed may produce more errors for these systems than for an impeller flowmeter, because turbulence in the fluid column causes large errors at slow velocities.

Figure 92.--Calibration data for an impeller flowmeter,  
developed by moving the probe in a water well that was flowing.

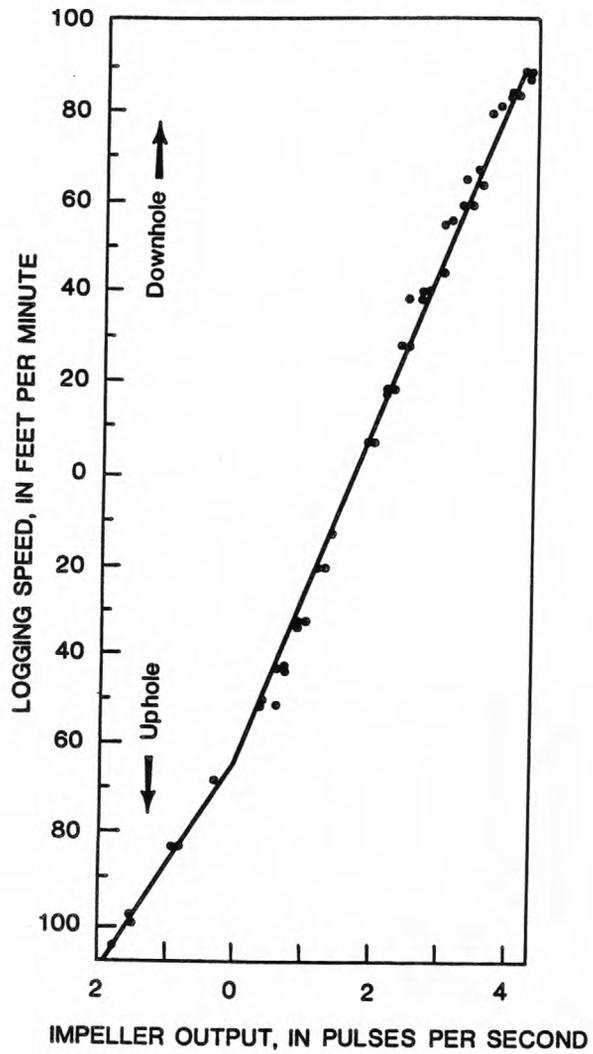


Figure 92.--Calibration data for an impeller flowmeter, developed by moving the probe in a water well that was flowing.

## EXTRANEOUS EFFECTS

Convective flow caused by vertical or horizontal thermal gradients is one of the major sources of error in interpreting flowmeter and temperature logs when velocities are slow. Convective movement has not been recognized as a problem in interpreting impeller-flowmeter logs, but the advent of tracer and heat-pulse flowmeter probes capable of measuring slow velocities has created the need to study the problem. Hess (1982) describes the effects of convection on laboratory tests of the heat-pulse flowmeter. He determined that a temperature difference of 1 degree C between the water in the column and the surrounding air produced a detectable, consistent flow. When the water temperature is greater than the air temperature, the flow is upward in the central part of the column, which is matched by a downward flow near the column wall. The centralized flowmeter measures an upflow when the water is warmer than the air and a downflow when the water is cooler. The effect is more pronounced in the 6-in.-diameter column, which agrees with the equation 12 in the section on Extraneous Effects on Temperature Logs, indicating greater convective movement in larger diameter wells. This laboratory study explains anomalous results that have been obtained with tracer-injector probes in large-diameter wells.

Most older flowmeters are not centralized, which may cause several errors or anomalies on logs. Two impeller-flowmeter logs made moving up and down a cased well are shown in figure 93. The difference between the two logs in the perforated interval is real; the sharp excursions, which did not repeat, probably were caused by the flowmeter bouncing around in the well because it was not centralized. An additional error may occur on a log made with a probe that is free to move around in the well because maximum velocity occurs in the central part of the well and minimum velocity occurs near the wall of the hole. In a well with substantial wall rugosity, turbulence is likely to be greatest near the wall of the well.

A tracer-injector probe that is not centralized may produce anomalous results if the ejection port is against the wall of the borehole, because the tracer will not be dispersed properly. If salt tracers are used, the greater specific gravity will produce an apparent downward flow where no flow actually exists. This effect will cause the greatest errors at extremely slow velocities. A probe used to relog a well to locate the position of tracer concentrations will cause some dispersion of those concentrations. The larger a probe is with respect to well diameter, the larger the surging action and dispersion will be. An accurate caliper log is essential for the correct interpretation of all types of flowmeter logs because of the effect of changes in borehole diameter on flow velocity.

Figure 93.--Impeller-flowmeter logs made up and down a well where the casing was perforated opposite two aquifers.

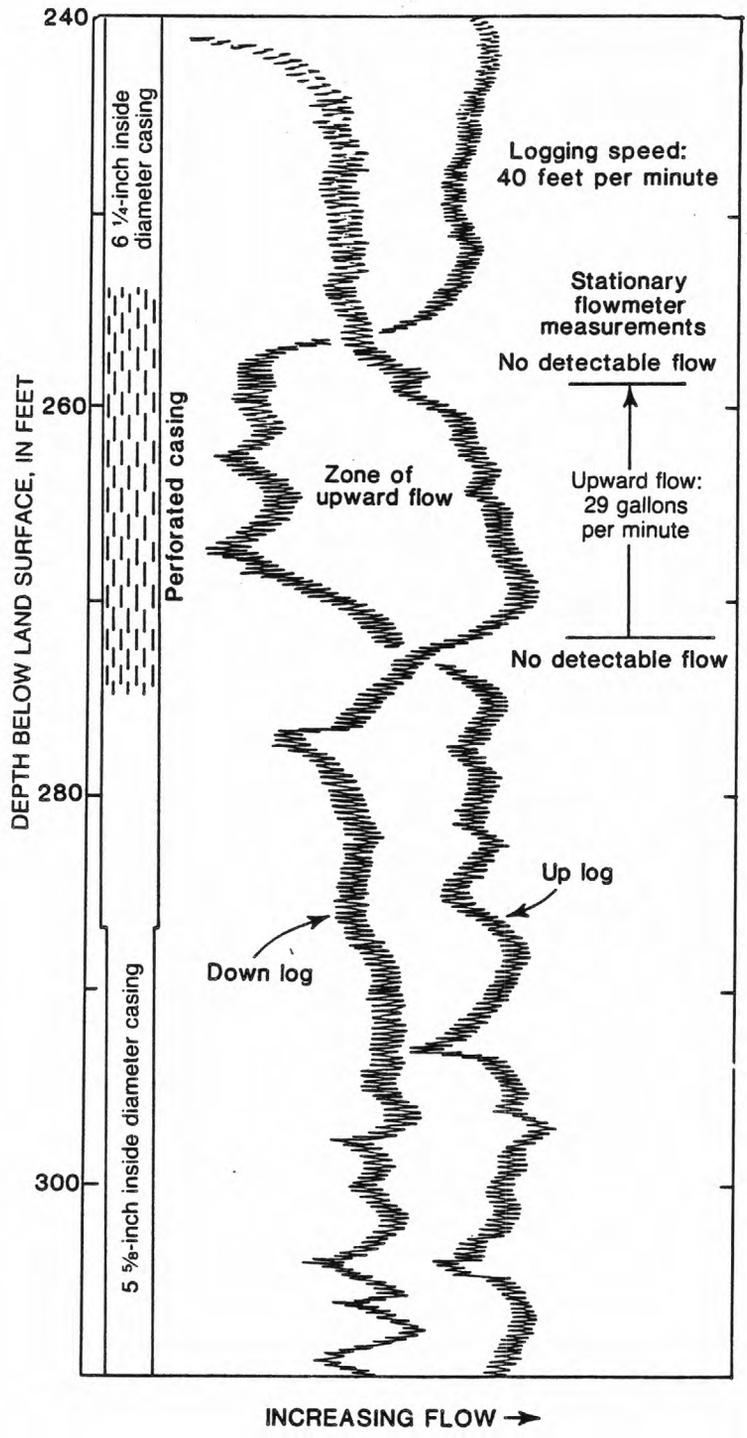


Figure 93.--Impeller-flowmeter logs made up and down a well where the casing was perforated opposite two aquifers.

## INTERPRETATION AND APPLICATIONS

The interpretation of flowmeter logs is simple if the probe has been properly calibrated and if all the essential information on borehole diameter and construction is available. Vertical flow is common in most wells that are open to more than one aquifer. An example of an unusual situation is shown in figure 93, where the flowmeter log indicated that the interval of perforated casing spanned two aquifers separated by a less permeable interval. The separation of the down log and the up log in the interval between 256 and 274 ft indicates upward flow; the down log shows an increase in apparent flow rate in the perforated interval compared to the unperforated casing, whereas the up log shows a decrease in apparent flow rate. Stationary measurements were made every foot through this interval and they indicated an average upflow of 29 gal/min through a thinner depth interval than did the continuous logs. The reason for this difference is that the flowmeter stalls at a faster fluid velocity when it is stationary than when it is aided by logging at a constant speed. A more sensitive type of flowmeter probably would have indicated a thicker interval of flow. Flowmeters can be placed in a water well before temporary installation of a pump so that the permeable intervals contributing water under pumping conditions can be identified.

The heat-pulse flowmeter developed by Hess (1986) was used first in the field to identify fractures producing and accepting water in a borehole penetrating granitic rocks in the Canadian shield (Keys, 1984). A single-arm caliper log and data from the heat-pulse flowmeter are shown in figure 94. The data from the heat-pulse flowmeter were quite reproducible for 2 weeks, even though pumping and injection tests were being conducted in a borehole about 1,000 ft from the logged borehole. The flowmeter logs and acoustic-televiwer logs at this site enabled the characterization of permeable fractures. In figure 94, the upper fracture zone, at a depth of about 300 ft, and the lower zone, at a depth of about 940 ft, both contain thin, discrete fractures that are transmitting most of the water, rather than thicker, complex fractures within each zone. Note that slightly less than one-half of the flow from the upper zone originates from the fracture at a depth of 308 ft; that fracture appears to be the largest on the caliper log. Similarly, the fracture that appears to be the largest in the lower zone is accepting only a small percentage of the flow. The same two fracture zones were intersected in other boreholes in the area and appear to constitute major aquifers.

Figure 94.--Single-arm caliper log and data from heat-pulse flowmeter showing zones of water entry and loss in a borehole penetrating granitic rocks in the Canadian shield (modified from Keys, 1984).

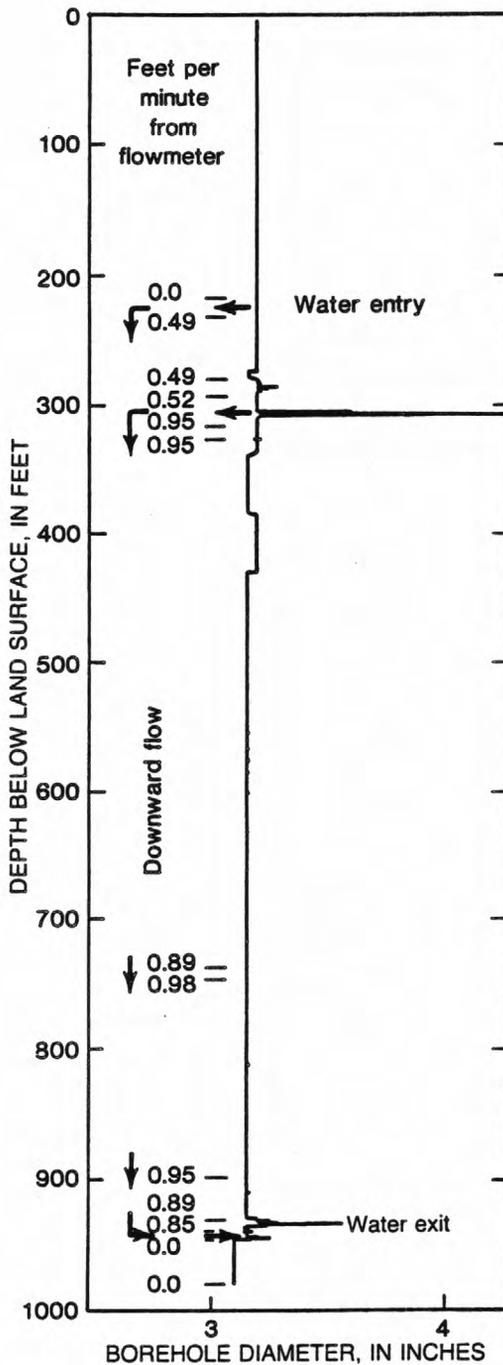


Figure 94.--Single-arm-caliper log and data from heat-pulse flowmeter showing zones of water entry and loss in a borehole penetrating granitic rocks in the Canadian Shield (modified from Keys, 1984).

Radioactive-tracer-injector logs can be used to locate permeable zones where flow rates are even slower than those detectable with the heat pulse flowmeter. Tracer-injector logs are available from oil-well logging-service companies who have a license to make the logs. State requirements with respect to water wells also must be met. Examples of radioactive-tracer-injector logs made in a U.S. Geological Survey test well completed in the Madison Limestone before and after acidizing and fracturing at a depth of 4,500 ft are shown in figure 95. The anomalies on the logs are at the lower and upper detectors in a probe, where both were located above the injector. The recorder time-drive scale is faster on the right log run after acidizing and fracturing; the much shorter travel time for the tracer pulse indicates that the flow rate from this interval was much faster after treatment.

Both impeller flowmeter and radioactive-tracer-injector logs for Madison Limestone test well 1 are shown in figure 96. Although the logs are similar, the impeller-flowmeter log does not resolve small changes in flow rate that may be significant in rocks where secondary porosity is well developed. The radioactive-tracer-injector log not only resolves small changes, but it probably is more accurate. The flowmeter data were used in a computer analysis of other logs of this test well to identify log-response characteristics that could be used to locate intervals of secondary porosity (Keys, 1986). In this test well, both types of flowmeter logs indicate that most of the flow in the well is originating from the depth interval below about 3,030 ft. With data of this type, the transmissivity of the permeable intervals may be estimated by calculating the percentage of the total flow from each interval and multiplying these percentages by the transmissivity for the well determined from an aquifer test.

Figure 95.--Radioactive-tracer-injector logs before and after acidizing and fracturing of Madison Limestone test well 3, Montana (modified from Blankennagel and others, 1981).

Figure 96.--Comparison of impeller-flowmeter and radioactive-tracer-injector logs, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming (modified from R. K. Blankennagel, U.S. Geological Survey, written commun., 1977).

Flowmeters can be used similarly during fluid injection to locate permeable intervals, as illustrated in figure 97. Iodine-131 was injected at depths of 100, 1,200, 1,500, and 1,800 ft in a well penetrating granitic rocks near Aiken, S.C. During the 2 weeks (left graph of the figure, water was injected at the land surface at a constant rate. Gamma logs of the well were made on the days indicated by dots on the curves; the depths of the tracer injection at 100 ft in the casing were used as a reference for calculating the injectivity profile on the right side of the figure. The caliper log indicates that the intervals of maximum injectivity were related to fracture zones in the granitic rocks, which have minimal primary permeability.

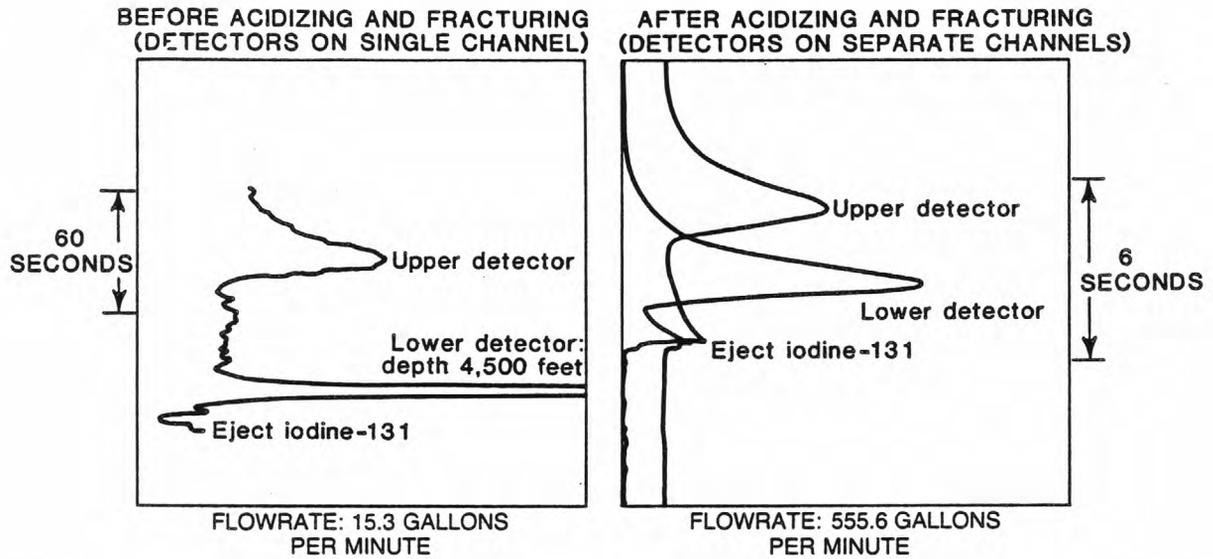


Figure 95.--Radioactive-tracer-injector logs before and after acidizing and fracturing of Madison Limestone test well 3, Montana (Blankennagel and others, 1981).

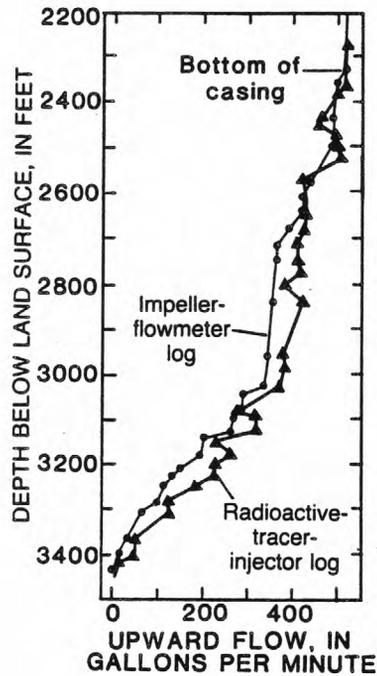


Figure 96.--Comparison of impeller-flowmeter and radioactive-tracer-injector logs, Madison Limestone test well 1, Wyoming. (Modified from R. K. Blankennagel, U.S. Geological Survey, written commun., 1977).

In the section of this manual describing temperature logs, their use for locating permeable intervals and for tracing the movement of ground water between water wells is emphasized. The relation between a plotted log of radioactive tracer-injector data and a temperature log, which is reversed so it will appear similar to the radioactive-tracer-injector log, is shown in figure 98. Both logs indicate the location of permeable intervals within and just below the perforations and at a depth of 3,420 ft. However, the reversed temperature log does not correctly indicate the relative proportions of water entering the test well at these depths.

Figure 97.--The downward movement of 4 slugs of iodine 131, injected in a well penetrating granitic rocks near Aiken, S.C. The resulting injectivity profile plotted from periodic gamma logs shows loss at fractures indicated by the caliper log.

Figure 98.--Radioactive tracer-injector and reversed-temperature logs made during pumping of test well USW H-5, Yucca Mountain, Nevada. (modified from R. K. Blankennagel, U.S. Geological Survey, written commun., 1983).

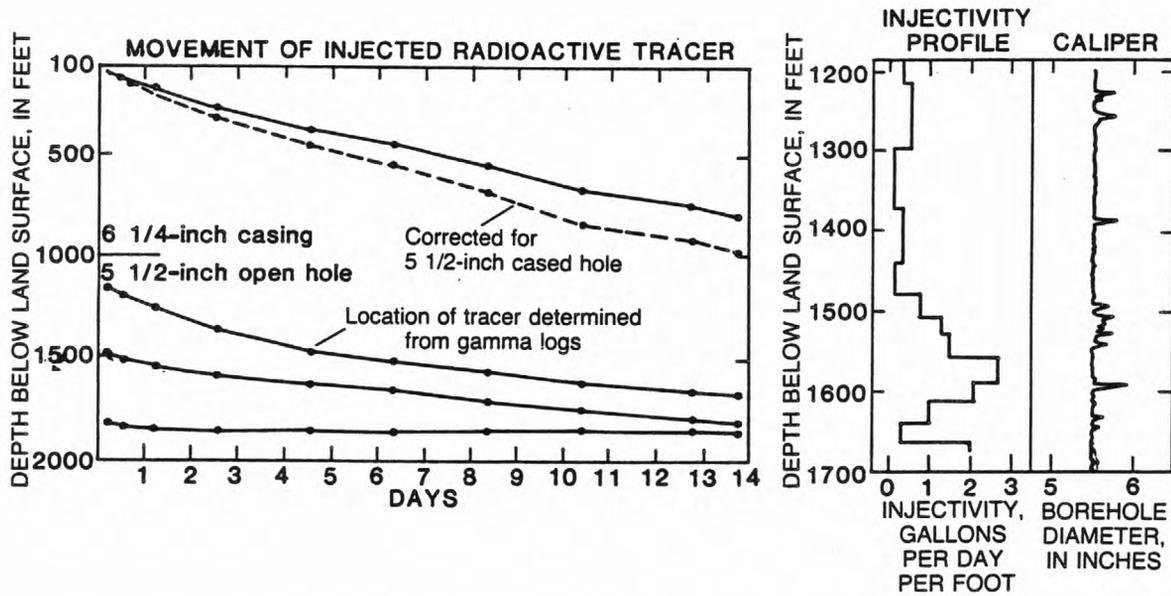


Figure 97.--The downward movement of 4 slugs of iodine-131, injected in a well penetrating granitic rocks near Aiken, S. C. The resulting injectivity profile plotted from periodic gamma logs shows loss at fractures indicated by the caliper log.

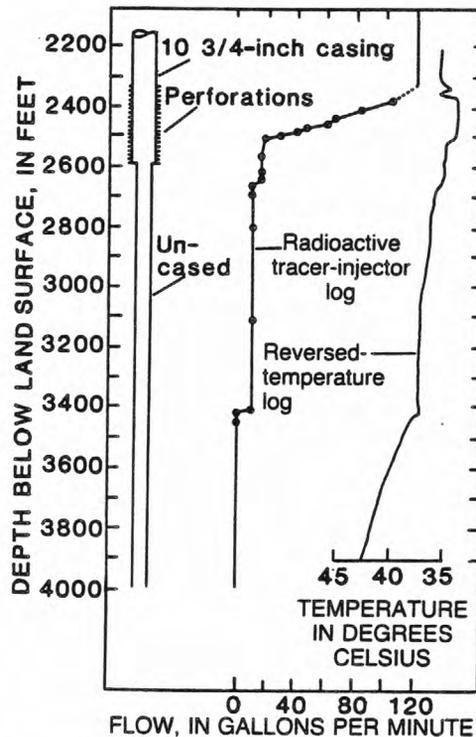
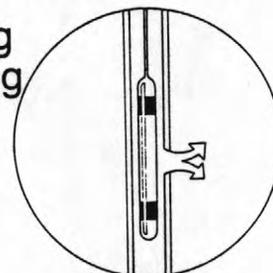


Figure 98.--Radioactive-tracer-injector and reversed-temperature logs made during pumping of test well USW H-5, Yucca Mountain, Nevada (modified from R. K. Blankennagel, U.S. Geological Survey, written commun., 1983).

## WELL-CONSTRUCTION LOGGING

Logging to determine the construction of a well is useful for the planning of cementing operations, installation of casing and screens, hydraulic testing, and guiding the interpretation of other logs. Most of the logs described in other sections of this manual can provide information on well construction under some conditions. They will be listed briefly here so the reader can refer to the detailed descriptions of these logs in the appropriate sections of this manual.

Casing  
Logging



### CASING LOGGING

A number of different types of logs can be used to locate cased intervals in wells. Most electric logs will have a sharp deflection at the bottom of a string of steel casing; although, in multielectrode resistivity systems, the reference depth where the deflection occurs may have to be determined. Resistivity-logging systems that are operating properly will record zero resistivity when all the electrodes are in the casing. Gamma-gamma logs commonly have a sharp deflection at the bottom of the steel casing and may shift at depths where a second string of steel casing is located outside the first; however, such shifts may be difficult to distinguish from changes in borehole diameter. Neutron and gamma logs also may respond to changes in steel casing size and thickness, but the response of these logs is less predictable. Although plastic casing, which has a large content of hydrogen, might cause a substantial deflection on a neutron log, plastic casing usually is not detectable below the water level. High-resolution caliper logs are excellent for locating the bottom of the inside string of casing and for locating threaded couplings. If small arms are used, they also may provide data on steel-casing corrosion and the location of screens and perforations; however care needs to be taken to assure that the arms do not get caught in screens or perforations.

The acoustic televiewer is probably the highest resolution logging system for obtaining information on steel and plastic casing and screens, but it may be too expensive for some operations. The ATV needs to be operated using the mark switch in steel casing, rather than the magnetometer, to avoid distortion of the log caused by random triggering. ATV logs can provide clear images and accurate locations of screens, perforations, couplings, and damaged casing. Features as small as 1/32 in. can be resolved under ideal conditions. Borehole television can provide some of the same data, but it cannot be operated on standard logging cable. The water in the borehole also must be clear to allow light transmission.

The casing-collar locator (CCL) is a useful and relatively inexpensive probe that can be operated on any logger. The simplest CCL probe contains a permanent magnet wrapped with a coil of wire. Changes in the magnetic properties of material cutting the magnetic lines of flux cause a small direct current to flow, which can be used to operate a recorder channel. The standard mode of operation is to record event marks along the margin of other logs to represent the location of collars in the steel casing. The event marker is adjusted so that it is triggered when the direct-current voltage exceeds a certain level. An event marker record on the left with two continuous CCL logs of the signal on the right is shown in figure 99. The CCL logs can be interpreted in terms of the location of perforations and screens, as shown in figure 99. Changes in logging speed, direction, and the position of the probe in the borehole may change the log and complicate interpretation.

Figure 99.--Casing-collar-locator logs recorded by an event marker and the analog recorder at two different gain settings.

Corroded steel casing sometimes can be located by a high-resolution caliper log; spontaneous-potential logs have been used to locate depth intervals where active corrosion is taking place (Kendall, 1965). Commercial-logging services are available for detecting corroded steel casing. An electromagnetic casing-inspection log measures changes in the mass of metal between two coils; loss of mass may be due to corrosion (Edwards and Stroud, 1964). A casing-analysis survey is made with a centralized probe that contains several coils (Bradshaw, 1976). This survey is reported to provide information on the thickness of steel casing penetrated by corrosion, whether the damage is internal or external, and whether the damage is isolated or circumferential. The electromagnetic-thickness survey measures the average casing thickness for an interval of about 2 ft and can be used to monitor changes in thickness with time (Smith, 1980). Casing-inspection logging methods are summarized by Nielsen and Aller (1984).

#### CEMENT AND GRAVEL-PACK LOGGING

The location of cement and gravel pack in the annular space outside of casing can be accomplished with several logs, but the interpretation may be ambiguous. A caliper log made before the casing is installed is needed to plan cementing or installation of gravel pack. Caliper logs also are useful in interpreting logs made for the purpose of locating annular material because they indicate the thickness that would be present if the space was filled.

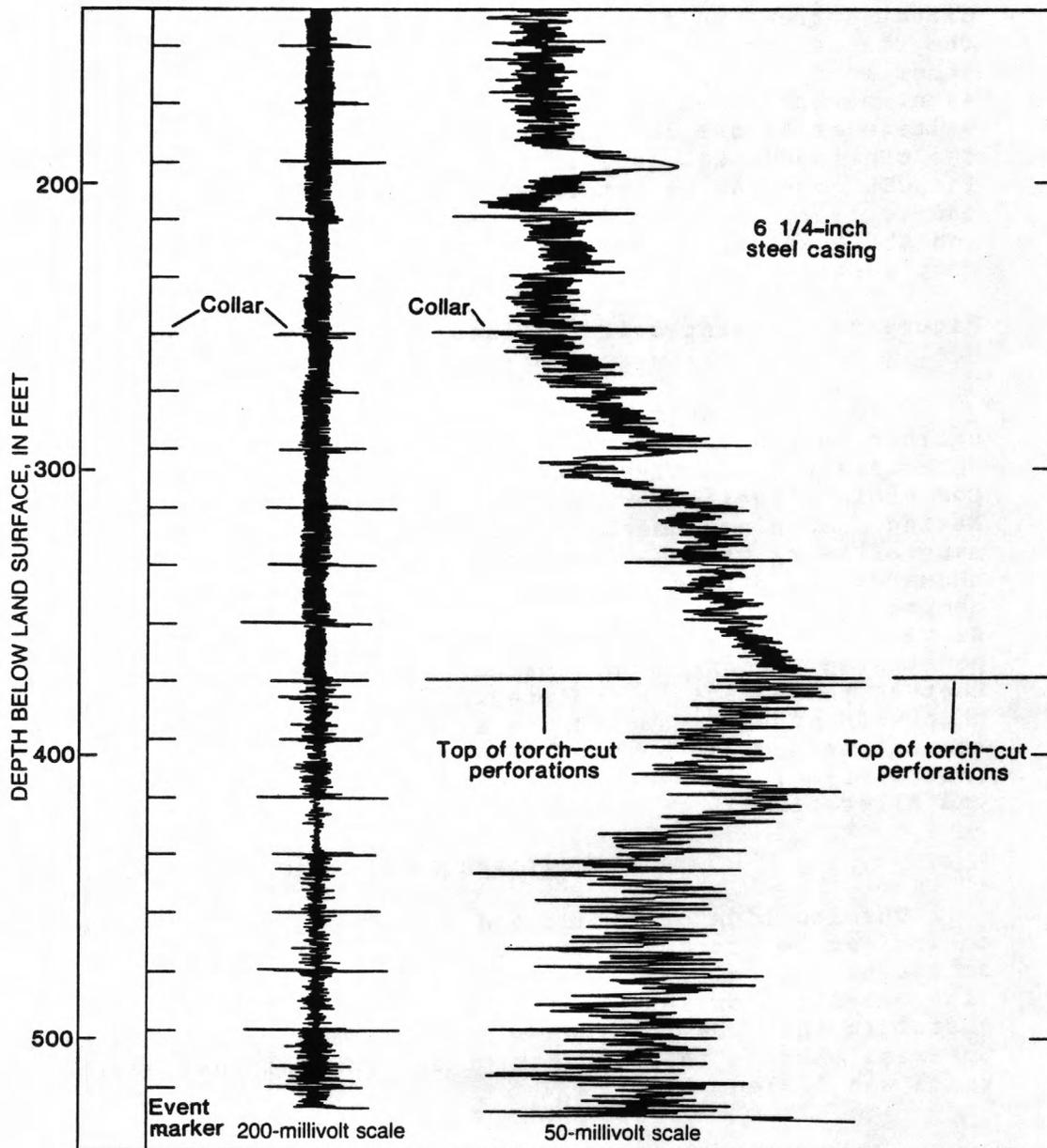


Figure 99.--Casing-collar-locator logs recorded by an event marker and the analog recorder at two different gain settings.

Temperature logs can be used to locate cement grout while it is still warm from chemical reactions during curing. Under the proper conditions cement-bond logs can be used to locate cement after it has cured and they may provide information on the quality of the bond between casing and cement and between cement and rock. See the discussion of cement-bond logs under acoustic logging. Uncompensated, short-spaced, gamma-gamma logs can indicate the location of cured cement or gravel pack if such a gamma-gamma log was made after installing the casing and prior to filling the annular space. The difference between the two logs may show the filled interval clearly. A gamma-gamma log run before a hole is cemented may resemble the reversed caliper log made prior to installation of the casing. The location of gravel pack occasionally is indicated by a shift on gamma logs if the gravel is either more or less radioactive than the adjacent rocks. The difference in radioactivity needs to be substantial, and the volume of annular material needs to be sufficient to produce a recognizable difference between logs made before and after installing the gravel.

#### BOREHOLE-DEVIATION LOGGING

The deviation of boreholes and wells from the vertical is common; borehole deviation affects proper completion of the well for its intended use and it may prevent testing and logging. Casing and pumps may be impossible to install in a well that is markedly deviated; centralized logging probes may not function properly in such a well. The deviation rarely is consistent, both the angle from the vertical and direction may change many times along the borehole. Even augered boreholes less than 100 ft deep have deviated enough that transmittance logs between the boreholes are adversely affected. Information on borehole deviation is needed to calculate the true vertical depth to features of interest and to correct the strike and dip of fractures or bedding obtained from logs, such as the acoustic televiewer. The techniques and computer programs for making these corrections are described by Kierstein (1984).

Continuous logs of borehole deviation usually are made by companies that specialize in this technique. Borehole-deviation data usually are not recorded by standard logging equipment, except modern dipmeters, which rarely are included on water-well loggers. A dipmeter log usually includes a continuous record in the left track of the azimuth (magnetic north) and the magnitude of deviation. Some borehole-deviation logging services provide a printout of azimuth and deviation at predetermined depth intervals, and there are several methods to mathematically describe the path of the deviated borehole from these measurements (Craig and Randall, 1976). Methods for calculating the path of the borehole between measuring stations are: minimum curvature, radius of curvature, and tangential. The least expensive methods for obtaining borehole-deviation information use single-shot probes that provide one measurement of the deviation angle and azimuth at a predetermined depth. These probes must be brought to the land surface and reset after each measurement.

Test 5.--FLUID AND WELL-CONSTRUCTION LOGGING

1. Temperature logs can be used for:
  - a. Location of curing cement behind casing.
  - b. Location of zones of fluid entry or loss.
  - c. Measurement of permeability.
  - d. Tracing fluid movement between boreholes.
2. Differential-temperature logs:
  - a. Require a different probe than temperature logs.
  - b. Can be derived from temperature logs using a computer.
  - c. Aid in detecting intervals of fluid movement.
  - d. Are more accurate than temperature logs.
3. Re-establishing the equilibrium-geothermal profile:
  - a. May take only a few hours in a small-diameter cased well.
  - b. May take many months under some conditions.
  - c. Will never take place if vertical flow is present.
  - d. Is related to volume of drilling fluid circulated and loss and temperature of drilling fluid.
4. Impeller flowmeters are superior to other flow measuring probes because:
  - a. They are simple and inexpensive.
  - b. They operate from the minimum to the maximum flow rates.
  - c. They do not have to be centered in the borehole.
  - d. They operate on single or multiconductor cable.
5. Fluid conductivity:
  - a. Is measured directly by most logging equipment.
  - b. Usually needs to be calculated from fluid resistivity logs.
  - c. Is a measure of interstitial fluids.
  - d. Needs to be one of the first logs run.
6. The heat-pulse flowmeter log is similar to the radioactive-tracer-injector log because:
  - a. Upward and downward flow are clearly distinguished.
  - b. Extremely slow velocities are measurable.
  - c. Four detectors are used.
  - d. Most measurements are made with the probes stationary.
7. The radioactive-tracer injector:
  - a. Is one of the best probes for measuring extremely slow velocity flow in boreholes.
  - b. Can sometimes be used to detect flow behind casing.
  - c. Is limited in application because of licensing requirements.
  - d. Can be used to measure water flow between boreholes.
8. Borehole-deviation logs are used:
  - a. For correcting strike and dip of fractures and beds logged in a borehole.
  - b. Because they are inexpensive and readily available.
  - c. Are seldom needed because most deep boreholes are vertical.
  - d. Provide location, direction and angle of deviation.
9. Casing-collar locator logs can:
  - a. Indicate intervals of corroded steel casing.
  - b. Provide the casing diameter.
  - c. Locate collars and perforations.
  - d. Be made inexpensively using almost any logger.
10. Borehole-construction information:
  - a. Can be obtained by several different logging techniques.
  - b. Is needed for the correct interpretation of most logs.
  - c. Is essential for interpretation of flowmeter and temperature logs.
  - d. Can be obtained reliably from drilling reports.

## SUMMARY--A CASE HISTORY

The application of borehole geophysics to the solution of ground-water problems cannot be summarized in a few pages; however, a case history of a test well drilled for a regional aquifer study can illustrate the application of some of the techniques described in detail in this manual. A number of figures used earlier are based on logs and other data from Madison Limestone test well 1, which was drilled by the U.S. Geological Survey in the northeast corner of Wyoming. The test well was part of a Survey project to determine the quantity and quality of water that can be produced from the Madison Limestone of Mississippian age and adjacent rocks in parts of Montana, Nebraska, North Dakota, South Dakota and Wyoming. A suite of geophysical logs of Madison Limestone test well 1 was made by a commercial service company and by the Survey. The logs to be made in this test well and in two other test wells drilled during this project were selected for their potential use in providing diagnostic information on the aquifers and the quality of their contained water, and for correlation with logs of numerous oil test wells in the area. Quality control of the logs was the responsibility of experienced Survey personnel who were present during all of the drilling, testing and logging. Core analyses and hydraulic packer-test data also are available for Madison Limestone test well 1 for comparison with logs. (Blankennagel and others, 1977). The logs and other data from this test well were analyzed in detail by use of a microcomputer (Keys, 1986); most of the illustrations in this manual pertaining to Madison test well 1 resulted from that study.

There also are considerable geologic and other hydrologic data developed from the regional study of the Madison Limestone and adjacent rocks that is described in a series of U.S. Geological Survey Professional Papers. Much of the data and the conclusions in these reports was derived from geophysical logs of the three test wells drilled during the project and from logs of hundreds oil test wells that were purchased from private companies that sell logs to the public. The stratigraphy and sedimentary facies of the Madison Limestone and adjacent rocks in parts of Montana, Nebraska, North Dakota, South Dakota, and Wyoming are described in Peterson (1984). Correlation of paleostructure and sediment deposition for the same rocks and area are described by Brown and others (1984). The relation of porosity and permeability to petrology of the Madison Limestone in cores from the three test wells is described by Thayer (1983). Geohydrology of the Madison Limestone and associated aquifers is explained in Downey (1984). Apparent water resistivity, water temperature, and porosity of these rocks as determined from geophysical logs are described and mapped in MacCary (1984). Potentially favorable areas for developing large-yield wells in the Ordovician Red River Formation and Madison Limestone in parts of Montana, North Dakota, South Dakota, and Wyoming are shown on maps in MacCary and others (1983).

The identification of lithologic units and their correlation throughout the area studied was mostly based on geophysical logs; neutron and gamma logs were among the most useful for this purpose. The identification of lithology and stratigraphic correlation is one of the most useful applications of geophysical logs because it permits the lateral extrapolation of the results of log analysis and test results. An example of the correlation of some lithologic units between Madison Limestone test well 1 and oil test well MC-3 drilled in Montana, about 12 miles to the northeast, based on neutron and gamma logs is shown in figure 100. Use of a microcomputer permitted the vertical and horizontal scales of the digitized logs from the test well to be matched with the scales of the logs available for the oil well. The neutron log for Madison Limestone test well 1 has been smoothed in the computer which accounts for part of the different appearance from the log of MC-3, which was photographically reduced. The correlations shown in figure 100 are typical for deep test wells penetrating hard rocks; similar correlations can be made to other test wells even more distant from Madison Limestone test well 1. Thus, log-analysis techniques developed for the identification of the most productive intervals of the aquifer, which are summarized below, may be extended to other test wells and boreholes that penetrate the same sequence of rocks.

Figure 100.--Correlation of lithologic units between Madison Limestone test well 1 and oil test well MC-3 based on neutron and gamma logs, Wyoming.

The lithology of the rocks penetrated by Madison Limestone test well 1 is best defined by the gamma, neutron and resistivity logs shown in figures 25 and 44. The maximum radioactivity on the gamma log is recorded in shales and the minimum radioactivity is recorded in clean limestone; dolomite is slightly more radioactive than limestone (fig.44). The neutron and resistivity logs help distinguish limestone and dolomite. The more resistive intervals also have a smaller porosity and are mostly limestone, rather than dolomite.

Impeller flowmeter and radioactive-tracer-injector logs, shown in figure 96, indicate that more than 350 gal/min of the total of more than 500 gal/min flowing at the land surface was produced from the depth interval below 3,000 ft. Almost 100 gal/min was produced from the large solution opening at a depth of 2,550 ft, which is clearly shown on the caliper log in figure 85. The flow from this opening is also indicated by the anomaly on the differential-temperature log in figure 85.

Although the producing intervals were indicated by flowmeter and temperature logs made when Madison Limestone test well 1 was flowing at the land surface, other logs may be used to identify permeable intervals when a well completed in similar lithologic units is not flowing. The caliper logs not only indicate large solution openings, as in figure 85, but small-scale roughness on the logs is caused by small solution openings that are close together. Small deflections on the caliper logs made using a caliper probe with four independent arms, that are also on repeat logs, are shown in figure 84. These deflections are caused by numerous small solution openings. Such openings apparently transmit most of the water in this aquifer. The acoustic televiwer logs in figure 79 clearly show the nature and distribution of these solution openings.

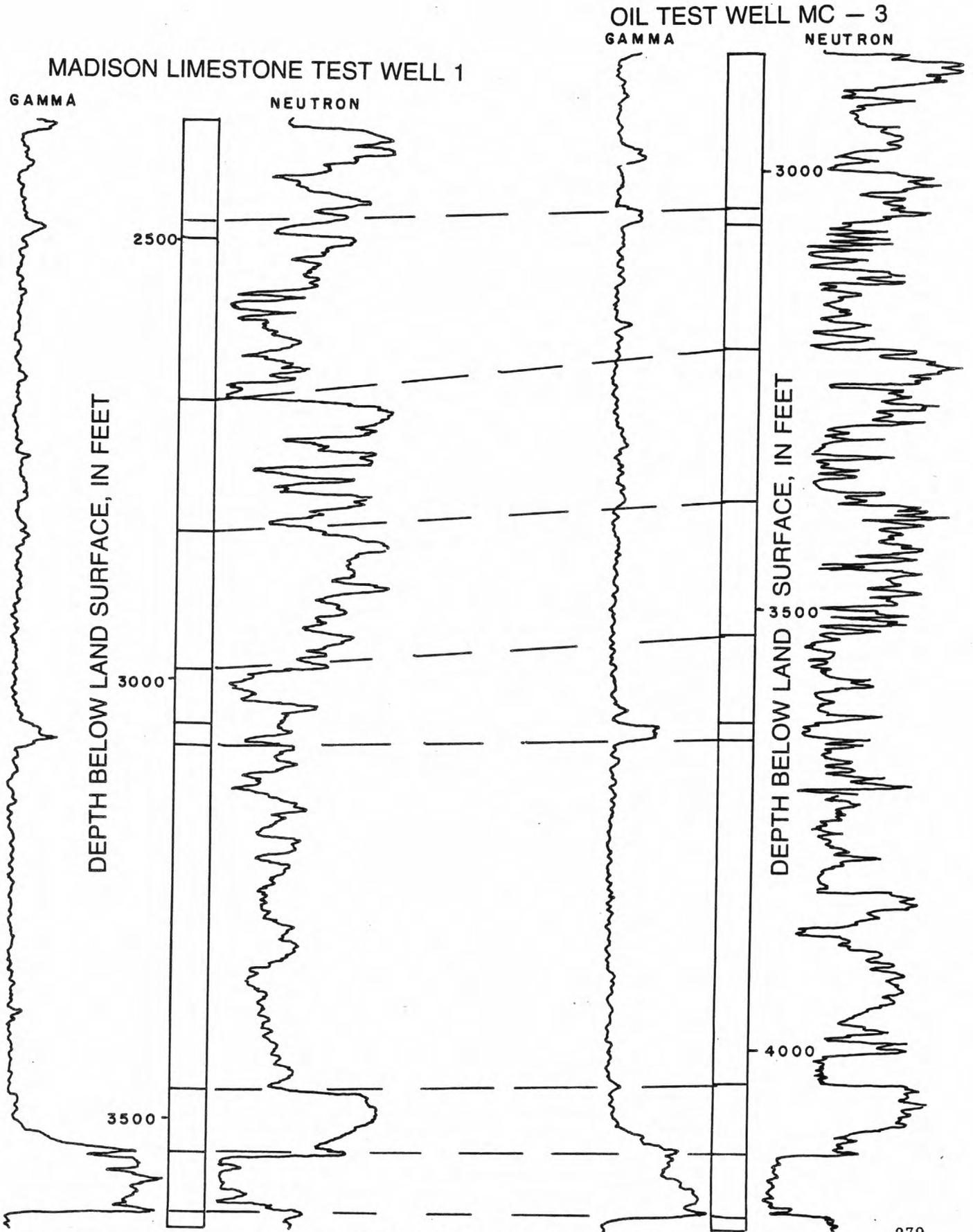


Figure 100.-- Correlation of lithologic units between Madison Limestone test well 1 and oil test well MC-3 based on neutron and gamma logs, Wyoming.

Computer cross plots offer another method for identifying intervals of secondary porosity in the rocks penetrated by Madison limestone test well 1. A plot of total porosity versus horizontal permeability measured on core samples (fig. 16) has a considerable scatter of points. It seems likely that permeability might be more closely related to secondary, rather than total porosity in these rocks. A cross plot of transit time from an acoustic-velocity log versus apparent limestone porosity from a neutron log is shown in figure 11. The lithology lines in this figure were derived from a manual provided by the logging company. The data points indicate the presence of two major rock types, limestone and dolomite. A substantial number of points plot below the dolomite curve where the neutron log indicates a much greater apparent porosity than does the acoustic-velocity log. Average porosity derived from the neutron log, as shown in figures 25 and 26, is somewhat larger than that derived from core analyses, but not as much as the difference indicated by the acoustic velocity data shown in figure 11. Porosity values determined from analyses of core may tend to be somewhat smaller than those indicated on logs because of the tendency for core with numerous or large solution openings to be broken, lost, or not selected for laboratory analysis. In figure 11, one reason for the short transit times (smaller values of porosity) on the acoustic-velocity log could be the lack of response of this log to secondary porosity, such as solution openings. In contrast, the neutron log responds to all water-filled openings regardless of their size or shape. Most of the points below the dolomite line in figure 11 are from the depth interval that produced 350 gal/min based on the flowmeter logs. Thus, the difference between the porosity indicated by neutron and acoustic-velocity logs may enable the identification of permeable intervals in these rocks.

Water quality could have been determined from logs of Madison Limestone test well 1 but was not necessary because water samples were available. The apparent water resistivity in the Madison Limestone and associated rocks in the project area was determined from geophysical logs by MacCary (1984) using the equations of Archie (1942) that relate formation factor, resistivity of interstitial water and water-saturated rock, and porosity.

Borehole geophysics can provide useful data on the location and character of aquifers and the quality of ground water. In order to optimize results from borehole geophysical techniques, the logging program needs to be properly planned, the quality of the logs needs to be assured and the logs need to be analyzed with an understanding of the basic principles of each technique and the relations between logs and the rock matrix, its contained fluids, and the construction of the well.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Because of the length and breadth of subject material in this manual, it was necessary to rely on the help of a number of individuals whose contribution was beyond that required by their job. For this reason I gratefully acknowledge the assistance of a number of employees of the U.S. Geological Survey, past and present. Personnel of the research project on borehole geophysics as applied to ground-water hydrology who were particularly helpful in providing data, references, suggestions and review include Frederick L. Paillet, Ticie A. Taylor, Joyce A. Dey and Alfred E. Hess. Larry M. MacCary, my coauthor on the 1971 edition of this manual, provided many suggestions and data for the Madison Limestone project, and a very thoughtful and time consuming review of the entire manuscript. John S. McLean provided an in depth review of the manuscript with emphasis on the ground-water aspects of the manual. These people deserve much credit, but none of the blame for any mistakes that may remain.

## REFERENCES

- Alger, R.P., 1966, Interpretation of electric logs in freshwater wells in unconsolidated formations, in Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium, 7th, Tulsa, Okla., 1966, Transactions: Houston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, p. CC1-CC25.
- Allen, L.S., Caldwell, R.L., and Mills, W.R., Jr., 1965, Borehole models for nuclear logging: Society of Petroleum Engineers Journal, v. 5, no. 2, p. 109-112.
- Archie, G.E., 1942, The electrical resistivity log as an aid in determining some reservoir characteristics: Transactions of the Society of Petroleum Engineers of the American Institute of Mining, Metallurgical and Petroleum Engineers, v. 146, p. 54-62.
- Arnold, D.M., and Smith, H.D., Jr., 1981, Experimental determination of environmental corrections for a dual-spaced neutron porosity log, in Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium, 22d, Mexico City, 1981, Transactions: Houston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, v. 2, p. VV1-VV24.
- Basham, R.B., and Macune, C.W., 1952, The Delta-log, a differential temperature surveying method: Transactions of the Society of Petroleum Engineers of the American Institute of Mining, Metallurgical and Petroleum Engineers, v. 195, p. 123-128.
- Bateman, R.M., 1985, Log quality control: Boston International Human Resources Development Corp., 398 p.
- Belknap, W.B., Dewan, J.F., Kirkpatrick, C.V., Mott, W.E., Pearson, A.J., and Robson, W.R., 1959, API calibration facility for nuclear logs: American Petroleum Institute Drilling, and Production Practice, p. 289-316.
- Biella, Giancarlo, Lozej, Alfredo, and Tabacco, Ignazio, 1983, Experimental study of some hydrogeophysical properties of unconsolidated porous media: Ground Water, v. 21, no. 6, p. 741-751.
- Bigelow, E.L., 1985, Making more intelligent use of log derived dip information, Parts I-V: Log Analyst, v. 26, no. 1, p. 41-51; no. 2, p. 25-41; no. 3, p. 18-31; no. 4, p. 21-43; no. 5, p. 25-64.
- Blankennagel, R.K., Miller, W.R., Brown, D.L., and Cushing E.M., 1977, Report on preliminary data for Madison Limestone test well 1, NE1/4 SE1/4 Sec.15, T.57 N., R.65W., Crook County, Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Open-file report 77-164, 97 p.
- Blankennagel, R.K., Howells, L.W., and Miller, W.R., 1981, Completion and testing of Madison Limestone test well 3, NW,SE, sec. 35, T. 2 N., R.27 E., Yellowstone County, Montana: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 81-528, 91 p.
- Borsaru, M., Ceravolo, C., Charbucinski, J., and Eisler, P.L., 1984, Field trials of borehole logging probes for density determinations in low-grade ore deposits: The Log Analyst, v. 25, no. 1, p. 22-31.
- Bradshaw, J.M., 1976, New casing log defines internal corrosion: World Oil, v. 183, no. 4, p. 53-55.
- Bredehoeft, J.D., and Papadopulos, I.S., 1965, Rates of groundwater movement estimated from the earth's thermal profile: Water Resources Research, Vol. 1, No. 2, p. 325-328.
- Broding, R.A., 1984, Application of the sonic volumetric scan log to cement evaluation, in Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium, 25th, New Orleans, 1984, Transactions: Houston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, v. 2, p. JJ1-JJ17.

- Brown, D.L., Blankennagel, R.K., MacCary, L.M., and Peterson, J.A., 1984, Correlation of paleostructure and sediment deposition in the Madison Limestone and associated rocks in parts of Montana, North Dakota, South Dakota, Wyoming, and Nebraska: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1273-B, 24 p.
- Brown, R.F., and Keys, W.S., 1985, Effects of artificial recharge on the Ogallala aquifer, Texas: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2251, 56 p.
- Brown, R.S., and Neuman, C.H., 1982, The nuclear magnetism log--A guide for field use: *The Log Analyst*, v. 23, no. 5, p. 4-9.
- Caldwell, R.L., Mills, W.R., Jr., Allen, L.S., Bell, P.R., and Heath, R.L., 1966, Combination neutron experiment for remote analysis: *Science*, v. 152, no. 3721, p. 457-465.
- Conaway, J.G., 1977, Deconvolution of temperature gradient logs: *Geophysics*, v. 42, no. 4, p. 823-837.
- Conaway, J.G., and Beck, A.E., 1977, Fine-scale correlation between temperature gradient logs and lithology: *Geophysics*, v. 42, no. 7, p. 1401-1410.
- Cooke, C.E., Jr., and Meyer, A.J., 1979, Application of radial differential temperature (RDT) logging to detect and treat flow behind casing, in Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium, 20th, Tulsa, Okla., 1979, Transactions: Houston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, p. UU1-UU7.
- Craig, J.T., Jr., and Randall, B.V., 1976, Directional survey calculation: *Petroleum Engineer International*, March 1976, p. 38-54.
- Crew, M.E., and Berkoff, E.W., 1970, TWOPIT, a different approach to calibration of gamma-ray logging equipment: *The Log Analyst*, v. 11, no. 6, p. 26-32.
- Croft, M.G., 1971, A method of calculating permeability from electric logs, in Geological Survey Research 1971: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 750-B, p. B265-B269.
- Davis, R.R., Hall, J.E., Boutemy, Y.L., and Flaum, C., 1981, A dual porosity CNL logging system: Society of Petroleum Engineers of the American Institute of Mining, Metallurgical, and Petroleum Engineers Paper SPE 10296, 7 p.
- Davis, R.W., 1967, A geophysical investigation of hydrologic boundaries in the Tucson basin, Pima County, Arizona: Tucson, University of Arizona Ph.D. dissertation, 64 p. (University Microfilms International Publication 67-12, 295.)
- Davison, C.C., Keys, W.S., and Paillet, F.L., 1982, Use of borehole-geophysical logs and hydrologic tests to characterize crystalline rock for nuclear-waste storage, Whiteshell Nuclear Research Establishment, Manitoba, and Chalk River Nuclear Laboratory, Ontario, Canada: Columbus, Ohio, Battelle Project Management Division Office of Nuclear Waste Isolation Technical Report 418, 103 p. (Available from National Technical Information Service, U.S. Department of Commerce, Springfield, Va. 22161 as ONWI-418.)
- Dawson-Grove, G.E., 1969, Sonar caliper applications in western Canada, in Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium, 10th, Houston, 1969, Transactions: Houston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, p. E1-E14.
- Desbrandes, Robert, 1968, Theorie et interpretation des diagraphies [Theory and interpretation of well logs]: Paris, France, Editions Technip, 545 p.

- Doll, H.G., 1948, The S.P. log--Theoretical analysis and principles of interpretation: Society of Petroleum Engineers of the American Institute of Mining, Metallurgical, and Petroleum Engineers Technical Publication 2463, 40 p.
- Downey, J.S., 1984, Geohydrology of the Madison and associated aquifers in parts Montana, North Dakota, South Dakota, and Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1273-G, 47 p.
- Dudgeon, C.R., Green, M.J., and Smedmor, W.J., 1975, Heat-pulse flowmeter for boreholes: Medmenham, England, Marlow, Bucks, Water Research Centre Technical Report TR4, 69 p.
- Dyck, J.H., Keys, W.S., and Meneley, W.A., 1972, Application of geophysical logging to groundwater studies in southern Saskatchewan: Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences, v. 9, no. 1, p. 78-94.
- Dyck, J.H., and Reich, R.D., 1979, The use of geophysical borehole measurements in site investigations of dam construction sites: Unpublished internal report no. P-887-79-09-11 on file at the Saskatchewan Research Council Office, Saskatoon, Saskatchewan.
- Edwards, J.M., and Stroud, S.G., 1963, A report on field results of the electromagnetic casing inspection log: Society of Petroleum Engineers of the American Institute of Mining, Metallurgical, and Petroleum Engineers Paper SPE 664, 8 p.
- Ellis, D.V., Ullo, J.J., and Sherman, Harold, 1981, Comparison of calculated and measured responses of a dual-detector epithermal neutron porosity device: Society of Petroleum Engineers of the American Institute of Mining, Metallurgical, and Petroleum Engineers Paper SPE 10294, 8 p.
- Fertl, W.H., and Rieke, H.H., III, 1979, Gamma ray spectral evaluation techniques identify fractured shale reservoirs and source rock characteristics: Society of Petroleum Engineers of the American Institute of Mining, Metallurgical, and Petroleum Engineers Paper SPE 8454, 14 p.
- Fiedler, A.G., 1928, The Au deep-well current meter and its use in the Roswell artesian basin, New Mexico: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 596-A, p. 24-32.
- Fujimoto, K., Wilson, J.A., and Ashmore, J.P., 1985, Radiation exposure risks to nuclear well loggers: Health Physics, v. 48, no. 4, p. 437-445.
- Gadeken, L.L., Arnold, D.M., and Smith, H.D., Jr., 1984, Applications of the compensated spectral natural gamma tool, in Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium, 25th, New Orleans, 1984, Transactions: Houston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, v. 2, p. JJJ1-JJJ19.
- Gaur, R.S., and Singh, Indorjit, 1965, Relation between permeability and gamma-ray intensity for the Oligocene sand of an Indian field, India (Republic): Oil and Natural Gas Commission Bulletin 2, p. 74-77.
- Goldman, D.T., and Stehn, J.R., 1961, Chart of the nuclides: Schenectady, N.Y., General Electric Company Chart APH-66-E.
- Grasty, R.L., 1979, Gamma ray spectrometric methods in uranium exploration--Theory and operational procedures in geophysics and geochemistry in the search for metallic ores: Ottawa, Ontario, Geological Survey of Canada Economic Geology Report 31, p. 147-161.
- Guyod, Hubert, 1952, Electrical well logging fundamentals: Houston, Well Instruments Developing Co., 164 p.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1966, Interpretation of electric and gamma ray logs in water wells: The Log Analyst, v. 6, no. 5, p. 29-44.

- Guyod, Hubert, and Pranglin, J.A., 1959, Analysis charts for the determination of true resistivity from electric logs: Houston, (published by) Hubert Guyod, 202 p.
- Guyod, Hubert, and Shane, L.E., 1969, Geophysical well logging--Introduction to geophysical well logging; acoustical logging: Houston, Tex., (published by) Hubert Guyod, v.1 256 p.
- Hallock, W.B., 1897, Subterranean temperatures at Wheeling, W. Va., and Pittsburgh, Pa.: New York, Columbia University School of Mines Quarterly, v. 18, p. 148-153.
- Head, M.P., and Barnett, M.E., 1980, Digital log calibration--The compensated density log: Society of Petroleum Engineers of the American Institute of Mining Metallurgical, and Petroleum Engineers Paper SPE 9343, 11 p.
- Head, W.J., and Merkel, R.H., 1977, Hydrologic characteristics of the Madison Limestone, the Minnelusa Formation, and equivalent rocks as determined by well-logging formation evaluation, Wyoming, Montana, South Dakota, and North Dakota: U.S. Geological Survey Journal of Research, v. 5, no. 4, p. 473-485.
- Hearst, J.R., and Nelson, P.H., 1985, Well logging for physical properties: New York, McGraw-Hill, 571 p.
- Heath, R.L., 1964, Scintillation spectrometry--Gamma-ray spectrum catalogue (2d ed.): Oak Ridge, Tenn. issued by U.S. Atomic Energy Commission Technical Information Service as IDO-16880, v. 2, 296 p.
- Helander, D.P., 1983, Fundamentals of formation evaluation: Tulsa, Okla., Oil & Gas Consultants International, Inc., 332 p.
- Hess, A.E., 1982, A heat-pulse flowmeter for measuring low velocities in boreholes: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 82-699, 44 p.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1986, Identifying hydraulically conductive fractures with a slow-velocity borehole flowmeter: Canadian Geotechnical Journal, Vol. 23 p. 69-78.
- Hilchie, D.W., 1968, Caliper logging--Theory and practice: The Log Analyst, v. 9, no. 1, p. 3-12.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1982, Advanced well log interpretation: Golden, CO., D.W. Hilchie, Inc., Colorado, 353 p.
- Jackson, J.A., 1984, Nuclear magnetic resonance well logging: The Log Analyst, v. 25, no. 5, p. 16-30.
- Jeffries, F.S., 1966, Computer correlation of wireline log parameters and core analyses parameters: The Log Analyst, v. 7, no. 3, p. 6-14.
- Jenkins, R.E., 1960, The continuous velocity log and acoustic core measurements: Dallas, Core Laboratory Technical Memorandum 16, p. 1-9.
- Johns, E.S., Jr., 1966, Tracing fluid movements with a new temperature technique: Fort Worth, Tex., Gearhart-Owen, Inc., Bulletin no. EJ-416, 23 p.
- Johnson, A.I., 1967, Specific yield--Compilation of specific yields for various materials: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1662-D, 74 p.
- Johnston, J., and Adams, L.H., 1916, On the measurement of temperature in boreholes: Economic Geology, v. XI, no. 3, p. 741-762.
- Jones, P.H., 1961, Hydrology of waste disposal, National Reactor Testing Station, Idaho: Oak Ridge, Tenn., issued by U.S. Atomic Energy Commission Technical Information Service as IDO 22042.
- Jones, P.H., and Buford, T.B., 1951, Electric logging applied to ground-water exploration: Geophysics, v. 16, no. 1, p. 115-139.
- Jones, P.H., and Skibitzke, H.E., 1956, Subsurface geophysical methods in groundwater hydrology: in Landsberg, H.E., ed., Advances in geophysics: New York, Academic Press, Inc., v. 3, p. 241-300.

- Kendall, H.A., 1965, Application of SP curves to corrosion detection: *Journal of Petroleum Technology*, v. 17, no. 9, p. 1029-1032.
- Kerfoot, W.B., 1982, Comparison of 2-D and 3-D ground-water flowmeter probes in fully penetrating monitoring wells, *in* National Aquifer and Ground Water Monitoring Symposium, 2d, Proceedings: National Water Well Association, p. 264-268.
- Keys, W.S., 1963, Pressure cementing of water wells on the National Reactor Testing Station, Idaho: Oak Ridge, Tenn., issued by U.S. Atomic Energy Commission Technical Information Service as IDO 12022, 19 p.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1979, Borehole geophysics in igneous and metamorphic rocks, *in* Society of Professional Well Analysts Log Annual Logging Symposium, 20th, Tulsa, Okla., 1979, Transactions: Houston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, p. 001-0026.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1982, Borehole geophysics in geothermal exploration, *in* Fitch, A.A., ed., *Developments in geophysical exploration methods*: London, England, Elsevier Applied Science Publishers, bk. 3, chap. 7, p. 195-268.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1984, A synthesis of borehole geophysical data at the underground research laboratory, Manitoba, Canada: Columbus, Ohio, Battelle Project Management Division, Office of Crystalline Repository Development Technical Report 15, 43 p.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1986, Analysis of geophysical logs of water wells with a microcomputer: *Ground Water*, v. 24, no. 3, p. 750-760.
- Keys, W.S., and Boulogne, A.R., 1969, Well logging with Californium-252, *in* Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium, 10th, Houston, 1969, Transactions: Houston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, p. 1-250.
- Keys, W.S., and Brown, R.F., 1971, The use of well logging in recharge studies of the Ogallala Formation in west Texas, *in* Geological Survey Research 1971: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 750-B, p. B270-B277.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1973, Role of borehole geophysics in underground waste storage and artificial recharge, *in* Braunstein, Jules, ed., *Underground Waste Management and artificial recharge: Symposium on Underground Waste Management and Artificial Recharge*, 2d, New Orleans, 1973, Transactions, v. 1, p. 147-191.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1978, The use of temperature logs to trace the movement of injected water: *Ground Water*, v. 16, no. 1, p. 32-48.
- Keys, W.S., Eggers, D.E., and Taylor, T.A., 1979, Borehole geophysics as applied to the management of radioactive waste-site selection and monitoring, 455 *in* Carter, M.W., Moghissi, A.A., and Kahn, eds., *Management of low-level radioactive waste*: New York, Pergamon Press, v. 2, p. 955-982.
- Keys, W.S., and MacCary, L.M., 1971, Application of borehole geophysics to water-resources investigations: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk 2, chap. E1, 126 p.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1973, Location and characteristics of the interface between brine and fresh water from geophysical logs of boreholes in the upper Brazos River basin, Texas: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 809-B, p. B1-23.
- Keys, W.S., Senftle, F.E., and Tanner, A.B., 1979, Use of NaI (TI) and Germanium detectors for in site x-ray spectral monitoring of boreholes at nuclear waste-disposal sites. U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 79-1220, 23 p.
- Keys, W.S., and Sullivan, J.K., 1979, Role of borehole geophysics in defining the physical characteristics of the Raft River geothermal reservoir, Idaho: *Geophysics*, v. 44, no. 6, p. 1116-1141.

- Keys, W.S., Wolff, R.G., Bredehoeft, J.D., Shuter, Eugene, and Healy, J.H., 1979, In-situ stress measurements near the San Andreas Fault in central California: *Journal of Geophysical Research*, v. 84, no. B4, p. 1583-1591.
- Kierstein, R.A., 1984, True location and orientation of fractures logged with the acoustic televiewer (including programs to correct fracture orientation): U.S. Geological Survey Water-Resources Investigations Report 83-4275, 73 p.
- Killeen, P.G., 1982, Gamma-ray logging and interpretation, in Fitch, A.A., ed., *Developments in geophysical exploration methods*: London, England, Elsevier Applied Science Publishers, bk 3, chap. 7, p. 95-150.
- Kozeny, J., 1927, "Uber kapillare leitung des wassers in Boden Sitzbergen Akademie Wiss. Vienna," *Math-naturw*, v. 136-2A,.
- Krige, L.J., 1939, Borehole temperatures in the Transvaal and Orange Free State: London, England, *Proceedings of the Royal Society, Series A*, v. 173, p. 450-474.
- Kwader, Thomas, 1982, Interpretation of borehole geophysical logs in shallow carbonate environments and their application to ground-water resources investigations: Florida, (published by) Thomas Kwader, 201 p.
- Lawrence, T.D., 1979, Continuous carbon/oxygen log interpretation techniques: Society of Petroleum Engineers of the American Institute of Mining, Metallurgical, and Petroleum Engineers Paper SPE 8366, 12 p.
- Livingston, Penn, and Lynch, Walter, 1937, Methods of locating salt-water leaks in water wells: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 796-A, p. 1-20.
- Loren, J.D., 1972, Permeability estimates from NML measurements: *Journal of Petroleum Technology*, v. 24, no. 8, p. 923-928.
- Lynch, E.J., 1962, *Formation evaluation*: New York, Harper and Row, 422 p.
- MacCary, L.M., 1971, Resistivity and neutron logging in Silurian dolomite of northwest Ohio in *Geological Survey Research 1971*: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 750-D, p. D190-D197.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1978, Interpretation of well logs in a carbonate aquifer: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Resources Investigations 78-8, 35 p.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1980, Use of geophysical logs to estimate water-quality trends in carbonate aquifers: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Resources Investigations Report 80-57, 29 p.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1984, Apparent water resistivity, porosity, and ground-water temperature of the Madison Limestone and underlying rocks in parts of Montana, Nebraska, North Dakota, South Dakota, and Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1273-D, 14 p.
- MacCary, L.M., Cushing, E.M., and Brown, D.L., 1983, Potentially favorable areas for large-yield wells in the Red River Formation and Madison Limestone in parts of Montana, North Dakota, South Dakota, and Wyoming and Nebraska: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1273-E, 13 P.
- Mathews, M.A., 1980, Calibration models for fractured igneous rock environments, in *Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium*, 21st, Lafayette, La., 1980, Transactions: Hourston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, p. L1-L11.
- Mathews, M.A., Koizumi, C.J., and Evans, H.B., 1978, DOE-Grand Junction logging model data synopsis [prepared for the U.S. Department of Energy]: Grand Junction, Colo., Bendix Field Engineering Corporation Report GJBX-76(78), 52 p. (Available from National Technical Information Service, U.S. Department of Commerce, Springfield, Va. 22161.)

- McConnell, C.L., 1985, Time dependence of the equivalent water resistivity in freshwater wells: *The Log Analyst*, v. 26, no. 3, p. 12-17.
- Meinzer, O.E., 1923, Outline of ground-water hydrology, with definitions: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 494, 71 p.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1928, Methods of exploring and repairing leaky artesian wells: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 596-A, p. 1-3.
- Melville, J.G., Malz, F.J., and Gven, Oktay, 1985, Laboratory investigation and analysis of a ground-water flowmeter: *Ground Water*, v. 23, no. 4, p. 486-495.
- Merkel, R.H., MacCary, L.M., and Chicko, R.S., 1976, Computer techniques applied to formation evaluation: *The Log Analyst*, v. 17, no. 3, p. 3-10.
- Meyer, W.R., 1962, Use of a neutron moisture probe to determine the storage coefficient of an unconfined aquifer, *in* Geological Survey research 1962: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 450-E, p. E174-E176.
- Morland, A.M., 1984, Special log processing for thin zones using geological impulse response functions, with particular application to total and spectral gamma-ray logs: *The Log Analyst*, v. 25, no. 6, p. 23-35.
- Nelson, P.H., Rachiele, R., and Smith, A., 1980, The effect of radon transport in groundwater upon gamma-ray borehole logs: Swedish Nuclear Fuel Supply Company and Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, issued by the U.S. Department of Commerce, National Technical Information Service, Report LBL-11180, 117 p.
- Nicholas, J.R., and Healy, R.W., 1988, tritium migration from a low-level radioactive-waste disposal site near Chicago, Illinois, U.S. Geological Survey Water Supply Paper 2333.
- Nielsen, D.M., and Aller, Linda, 1984, Methods for determining the mechanical integrity of class II injection wells: Ada, Okla., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Office of Research and Development, Environmental Research Laboratory Report EPA-600/2-84-121, 263 p.
- Olmsted, F.H., 1962, Chemical and physical character of ground water in the National Reactor Testing Station, Idaho: Oak Ridge, Tenn., issued by U.S. Atomic Energy Commission Technical Information Service as IDO-22043, 81 p.
- Owen, J.D., 1966, A review of fundamental nuclear physics applied to gamma ray spectral logging: *The Log Analyst*, v. 7, no. 3, p. 37-47.
- Paillet, F.L., 1980, Acoustic propagation in the vicinity of fractures which intersect a fluid-filled borehole, *in* Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium, 21st, Lafayette, La., 1980, Transactions: Houston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, p. DD1-DD33.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1981, A comparison of fracture characterization techniques applied to near-vertical fractures in a limestone reservoir, *in* Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium, 22d, Mexico City, 1981, Transactions: Houston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, p. XX1-XX29.
- Paillet, F.L., Keys, W.S., and Hess, A.E., 1985, Effects of lithology on televiewer-log quality and fracture interpretation, *in* Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium, 26th, Dallas, 1985, Transactions: Houston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, p. JJJ1-JJJ31.
- Paillet, F.L., and Kim, Kunsoo, 1987, The character and distribution of borehole breakouts and their relationship to in-situ stresses in deep Columbia River basalts: *Journal of Geophysical Research*, v. 92, no. B-7, p. 6223-6234.

- Paillet, F.L., and White, J.E., 1982, Acoustic modes of propagation in the borehole and their relationship to rock properties: *Geophysics*, v. 47, no. 8, p. 1215-1228.
- Paillet, F.L., and Cheng, C.H., 1986, Numerical investigation of head waves and normal modes in a fluid-filled borehole: *Geophysics*, V. 51, no. 7, p. 1438-1449.
- Patten, E.P., Jr., and Bennett, G.D., 1962, Methods of flow measurement in well bores: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1544-C, 28 p.
- Peterson, J.A., 1984, Stratigraphy and sedimentary facies of the Madison Limestone and associated rocks in parts of Montana, Nebraska, North Dakota, South Dakota, and Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1273-A, 34 p.
- Pickett, G.R., 1960, The use of acoustic logs in the evaluation of sandstone reservoirs: *Geophysics*, v. 25, no. 1, p. 250-274.
- Pirson, S.J., 1963, Handbook of well log analysis for oil and gas formation evaluation: Englewood Cliffs, N.J., Prentice-Hall, 325 p.
- Quirein, J.A., Gardner, J.S., and Watson, J.T., 1982, Combined natural gamma ray spectral/lith-density measurements applied to complex lithologies: Society of Petroleum Engineers of the American Institute of Mining, Metallurgical, and Petroleum Engineers Paper SPE 11143, 14 p.
- Rabe, C.L., 1957, A relation between gamma radiation and permeability, Denver-Julesburg basin: Transactions of the Society of Petroleum Engineers of the American Institute of Mining, Metallurgical, and Petroleum Engineers, v. 210, P. 358-360.
- Raiga-Clemenceau, Jean, 1977, The cementation exponent in the formation factor-porosity relation--The effect of permeability, in Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium, 18th, Houston, 1977, Houston Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, p. R1-13.
- Ransom, R.C., 1977, Methods based on density and neutron well-logging responses to distinguish characteristics of shaly sandstone reservoir rock: *The Log Analyst*, v. 18, no. 3, p. 47-62.
- \_\_\_\_\_, 1984, A contribution toward a better understanding of the modified Archie Formation resistivity factor relationship: *The Log Analyst*, v. 25, no. 2, p. 7-12.
- Raplova, V.A., 1961, Experience of the use of nuclear methods in the investigation of cross section of boreholes being drilled for water, in All-Union Scientific Technical Conference on Use of Radioactive and Stable Isotopes and Radiations in the National Economy and Science, Transactions: Oak Ridge, Tenn., issued by U.S. Atomic Energy Commission as publication AEC-tr-4475, p. 67-74.
- Sammel, E.A., 1968, Convective flow and its effect on temperature logging in small-diameter wells: *Geophysics*, v. 33, no. 6, p. 1004-1012.
- Sanyal, S.K., Wells, L.E., and Bickham, R.E., 1980, Geothermal well log interpretation--State of the art: Los Alamos, N. Mex., Los Alamos Scientific Laboratory, Informal Report No. LA-8211-MS, 321 p.
- Schlumberger, Conrad, and Schlumberger, Marcel, 1929, Electrical logs and correlations in drill holes: *Mining and Metallurgy*, v. 10, no. 275, p. 515-518.
- Schneider, Robert, 1972, Distortion of the geothermal field in aquifers by pumping, in Geological Survey Research 1972: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 800-C, p. C267-C270.
- Scott, J.H., 1963, Computer analysis of gamma-ray logs: *Geophysics*, v. 28, no. 3, p. 457-465.

- \_\_\_\_\_, 1977, Borehole compensation algorithms for a small-diameter, dual-detector, density well-logging probe, *in* Society of Professional Well Log Analysts Annual Logging Symposium, 18th, Houston, 1977 Transactions: Houston, Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, p. S1-S17.
- Scott, J.H., Dodd, P.H., Drouillard, R.F., and Mudra, P.J., 1961, Quantitative interpretation of gamma-ray logs: *Geophysics*, v. 26, no. 2, p. 182-191.
- Senftle, F.E., and Hoyte, A.F., 1966, Mineral exploration and soil analysis using in-situ neutron activation: *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research*, v. 42, no.1, p. 93-103.
- Sherman, Harold, and Locke, Stanley, 1975, Depth of investigation of neutron and density sondes for 35-percent-porosity sand: Canadian Well Logging Society Formation Evaluation Symposium, 5th, Calgary, Canada, 1975, Transactions, p. B1-B10.
- Shuter, Eugene, and Teasdale, W.E., in press, Application of drilling, coring, and sampling techniques to test holes and wells: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water Resources Investigations, bk. 2, chap. F-1.
- Skibitzke, H.E., 1955, Electronic flowmeter: U.S. Patent No. 2,728,225.
- Society of Professional Well Log Analysts, 1975, Glossary of terms and expressions used in well logging: Houston, 74 p.
- \_\_\_\_\_, Houston Chapter, 1979, The art of ancient log analysis: Houston, 131 p.
- Sorey, M.L., 1971, Measurement of vertical groundwater velocity from temperature profiles in wells: *Water Resources Research*, v. 7, no. 4, p. 963-970.
- Stallman, R.W., 1965, Steady one-dimensional fluid flow in semi-infinite porous medium with sinusoidal surface temperature: *Journal of Geophysical Research*, v. 70, no. 12, p. 2821-2827.
- Stevens, H.H., Jr., Ficke, J.F., and Smoot, G.F., 1975, Water temperature-- Influential factors, field measurement, and data presentation: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 1, chap. D1, 65 p.
- Taylor, O.J., 1968, Ground-water resources of the northern Powder River valley, southeastern Montana: Montana Bureau of Mines and Geology Bulletin 66, p. 12-20.
- Taylor, T.A., and Dey, J.A., 1985, Bibliography of borehole geophysics as applied to ground-water hydrology: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 926, 62 p.
- Teasdale, W.E., and Johnson, A.I., 1970, Evaluation of installation methods for neutron-meter access tubes, *in* Geological Survey Research 1970: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 700-C, p. C237-C241.
- Tittman, Jay, and Wahl, J.S., 1965, The physical foundations of formation density logging (gamma-gamma): *Geophysics*, v. 30, no. 2, p. 284-293.
- Thayer, P.A., 1983, Relationship of porosity and permeability to petrology of the Madison Limestone in rock cores from three test wells in Montana and Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 1273-C, p. C1-C29.
- Turcan, A.N., Jr., 1966, Calculation of water quality from electrical logs-- Theory and practice: Louisiana Geological Survey and Louisiana Department of Public Works Resources Pamphlet 19, 23 p.
- Urish, D.W., 1981, Electrical resistivity-hydraulic conductivity relationships in glacial outwash aquifers: *Water Resources Research*, Vol. 17, No. 5, p. 1401-1408.

- Van Orstrand, C.E., 1918, Apparatus for the measurements of temperatures in deep wells, and temperature determinations in some deep wells in Pennsylvania and West Virginia, in Reger, D.B., and Teets, D.D., Jr., eds., West Virginia Geological Survey County reports of Barbour and Upshur Counties and western portion of Randolph County: Wheeling, West Virginia Geological Survey, p. LXVI-CIII.
- Vonhofv, J.A., 1966, Water quality determination from spontaneous-potential electric log curves: *Journal of Hydrology*, v. 4, no. 4, p. 341-347.
- Wahl, J.S., 1983, Gamma-ray logging: *Geophysics*, v. 48, no. 11, p. 1536-1550.
- Waxman, M.H., and Smits, I.J.M., 1968, Electrical conductivities in oil-bearing shaly sands: *Society of Petroleum Engineers Journal*, p. 107-122.
- Weast, R.C., and Astle, M.J., eds., 1980-81, CRC handbook of chemistry and physics (61st ed.): Boca Raton, Fla., CRC Press, Inc., 1 v.
- Wolff, R.G., Bredehoeft, J.D., Keys, W.S., and Shuter, Eugene, 1974, Tectonic stress determination, northern Piceance Creek basin, Colorado, in Guidebook to energy resources of the Piceance basin, Colorado Denver, Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists, p. 193-198.
- Wood, R.D., Wichmann, P.A., and Watt, H.B., 1974, Gamma ray-neutron log, in Dresser atlas log review I: Dresser Industries, Inc., p. 8-1-8-20.
- Worthington, P.F., 1977, Influence of matrix conduction upon hydrogeophysical relationships in arenaceous aquifers: *Water Resources Research*, Vol. 13, No. 1, p. 87-92.
- Wyllie, M.R.J., 1963, The fundamentals of well log interpretation: New York, Academic Press, 238 p.
- Zemanek, Joseph, Caldwell, R.L., Glenn, E.E., Jr., Holcomb, S.V., Norton, L.J., and Straus, A.J.D., 1969, The borehole televiewer--A new logging concept for fracture location and other types of borehole inspection: *Journal of Petroleum Technology*, v. 21, no. 6, p. 762-774.
- Zoback, M.D., Moos, D., and Mastin, L., 1985, Well-bore breakouts and in-situ stress: *Journal of Geophysical Research*, Vol. 90, No. B7, p. 5523-5530.

## GLOSSARY OF COMMON WELL-LOGGING TERMS USED IN THIS MANUAL

- Acoustic log.**--Also called sonic log; a record of changes in the character of sound waves as they are transmitted through liquid-filled rock; a record of the transit time ( $t$ ) is the most common; amplitude and the full acoustic-wave form also are recorded.
- Acoustic televiewer log.**--A record of the amplitude of high-frequency acoustic pulses reflected by the borehole wall; provides location and orientation of bedding, fractures, and cavities.
- Acoustic wave.**--A sound wave transmitted through material by elastic deformation.
- Activation log.**--Also called neutron-activation logs; a record of radiation from radionuclides that are produced in the vicinity of a well by irradiation with neutrons; the short half-life radioisotopes usually are identified by the energy of their gamma radiation or decay time.
- A electrode.**--One of the current-emitting electrodes of a resistivity-logging system (A); the current return electrode is labeled B.
- AM spacing.**--The distance between the current electrode (A) and the potential electrode (M) of a normal resistivity logging system.
- Alpha particle.**--The nucleus of a helium atom emitted during the decay of some radioisotopes; not measured by well logging, because of very low penetrating ability.
- Analog recording.**--Data are represented as a continuous record of physical variables instead of discrete values, as in digital recording.
- Annulus.**--General designation for annular space such as the space between the drill pipe or casing and the borehole wall or the transition interval between the invaded zone and the unaltered formation.
- API unit.**--The American Petroleum Institute (API) has established test pits for calibrating neutron and gamma logs. The API neutron unit is defined as 1/1,000 of the difference between electrical zero and the logged value opposite the Indiana limestone in the calibration pit that has an average porosity of 19 percent. The API gamma unit is defined as 1/200 of the deflection between intervals of high and low radioactivity in the calibration pit.
- Apparent resistivity.**--Resistivity on a log that deviates from the true value, because of the effects of the borehole, invaded zone, or other extraneous effects ( $R_a$ ); the term "apparent" also is used for other logs that might need correction to provide true values.
- Armor.**--Most logging cable has two layers of steel wire, wrapped on the outside, to serve as a strength member and to protect the inner conductors.
- Arrow plot.**--A depth plot of data from a dipmeter log that shows the direction of dip of planar features or the drift of the hole.
- Atomic number.**--The number of protons in the nucleus of an atom equal to the number of electrons in a neutral atom.
- Atomic weight.**--The total number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus of an atom.
- Attenuation.**--The decrease in amplitude of a form of energy when it is propagated through a medium.
- Azimuth.**--The compass direction measured from magnetic north in a clockwise direction.
- Background radiation.**--The radioactivity that exists at the surface or in a well, in addition to the source of radioactivity that is being measured; surface background comes from natural radioisotopes in the rocks and from cosmic radiation.

Back-up curve.--A curve on the analog record that displays log data on a new scale when deflections on the main curve exceed the width of the paper; usually displayed with a different pattern or color.

Baseline shift.--May refer to a shift in the average response of a log from a change in hole conditions or lithology; manual rebasing or repositioning of the pen is done to prevent a log from going off scale; the amount of shift needs to be properly labeled.

Beta particle.--An electron or positron emitted from a nucleus during beta decay; capable of penetrating only a few millimeters of rock.

Bottom-hole temperature.--The bottom-hole temperature (BHT) usually is measured with maximum recording thermometers attached to a logging probe but may have been inferred from other data and thus hypothetical.

Bond index.--The bond index is based on interpretation of a cement-bond log; it is the ratio of acoustic attenuation in a depth interval of interest to attenuation in a well cemented interval.

Borehole-compensated.--Probes designed to reduce the extraneous effects of the borehole and of probe position are called borehole-compensated.

Borehole gravimeter.--A gravimeter designed for well logging; it provides bulk density of materials distant from the borehole.

Borehole television.--A downhole television camera; see acoustic-televiewer definition.

Bridle.--The flexible, insulated cable on which some of the electrodes are mounted for multielectrode-resistivity logging; also used for a short, readily disconnected, length of cable that contains the cable head and fishing bell.

Bulk density.--Bulk density is the mass of material per unit volume; in logging, it is the density, in grams per cubic centimeter, of the rock with pore volume filled with fluid.

Calibration.--Determination of the log values that correspond to environmental units, such as porosity or bulk density; calibration usually is carried out in pits or by comparison with laboratory analyses of core.

Caliper log.--A continuous record of hole diameter, usually made with a mechanical probe having from 1 to 6 arms.

Capture cross section.--The effective area within which a neutron has to pass to be captured by the nucleus of an atom.

Casing-collar locator.--An electromagnetic device (CCL) that usually is run with other logs to record the location of collars or other changes in casing or pipe.

Cementation factor.--The cementation exponent ( $m$ ) in Archies' equation relating formation-resistivity factor and porosity; cementation factor as relates to many aspects of pore and grain geometry that affect permeability.

Cement bond log.--An acoustic amplitude log that is used to determine the location of cement behind the casing and, under some conditions, the quality of the bonding to casing and rock.

Centralizer.--A device designed to maintain a probe in the center of a borehole.

Circulation.--The flow of fluid during the drilling process, which usually is down the drill pipe and up the annulus to the surface.

Collimation.--The shielding technique for confining radiation, like gamma photons, into a beam.

Compressional wave.--Compressional or dilatational acoustic waves (P) are propagated in the same direction as particle displacement; they are faster than shear waves and are used for measuring acoustic velocity or transit time.

Compton scattering.--The inelastic scattering of gamma photons by orbital electrons; Compton scattering is related to electron density and is a significant process in gamma-gamma (density) logging.

Correlation.--Determination of the position of stratigraphically equivalent rock units in different wells, often done by matching the character of geophysical logs; also the matching of variables, such as log response and core analyses.

Crossplot.--A term used in log analysis for a plot of one parameter versus another, usually two different types of logs.

Curie.--The quantity of any radionuclide that produces  $3.70 \times 10^{10}$  disintegrations per second.

Cycle skip.--In acoustic-velocity logging, cycle skips are caused by only one of a pair of receivers being triggered by an arriving wave, which causes erroneous sharp deflections on the log and incorrect transit times..

Dead time.--In nuclear logging, dead time is the amount of time required for the system to be ready to count the next pulse; pulses occurring during dead time are not counted.

Decay.--In nuclear physics, the process of disintegration of an unstable radioisotope by the spontaneous emission of charged particles or photons.

Decentralize.--Forcing a logging probe against one side of the drill hole.

Density log.--Also called gamma-gamma log; gamma photons from a radioactive source in the sonde are backscattered to a detector; the backscattering is related to the bulk density of the material around the sonde.

Departure curves.--Graphs that show the correction that may be made to logs for some extraneous effects, such as hole diameter, bed thickness, temperature, etc.

Depth reference or datum.--The zero reference for logs of a well; the kelly bushing may be used if the rig is still on the well; ground level or top of casing frequently are used.

Depth of invasion.--The radial distance from the the wall of the hole to which mud filtrate has invaded.

Depth of investigation.--See volume of investigation, also called radius or diameter of investigation.

Detector.--Can be any kind of a sensor used to detect a form of energy, but usually refers to nuclear detectors, such as scintillation crystals.

Deviation.--The departure in degrees between the drill hole or probe axis and vertical.

Differential log.--A log that records the rate of change of some logged value as a function of depth; the differential log is sensitive to very small changes in absolute value.

Digital log.--A log recorded as a series of discrete numerical values; (compare analog recording).

Dipmeter.--A multielectrode, contact-resistivity probe that provides data from which the strike and dip of bedding can be determined.

Directional survey.--A log that provides data on the azimuth and deviation of a borehole from the vertical.

Disequilibrium.--The total radioactivity measured may not correctly indicate the quantity of radioisotopes present if all isotopes in the decay series are not present in equilibrium proportions.

Dual induction log.--An induction log with two conductivity curves having different volumes of investigation; usually run with a shallow focused-resistivity device.

Dual laterolog.--A focused resistivity log with both shallow and deep investigation; usually gamma, SP, and microfocused logs are run simultaneously.

Effective porosity.--Interconnected pore space that contributes to permeability.

Electric log.--Generic term usually referring to the resistivity log that consists of long normal, short normal, lateral, and SP curves, but also used for other types of resistivity logs.

Electromagnetic-casing inspection log.--The effects of eddy currents on a magnetic field are used to provide a record of the thickness of the casing wall.

Electron volt.--The energy acquired by an electron passing through a potential difference of one volt (eV); used for measuring the energy of nuclear radiation and particles, usually expressed as million electron volts (MeV).

Epithermal neutron.--A neutron source emits fast neutrons that are slowed by moderation to an energy level just above thermal equilibrium, where they are available for capture; most modern neutron probes measure epithermal neutrons, because they are less affected by chemical composition than thermal neutrons.

Field print.--A copy of a log obtained at the time of logging that has not been edited or corrected.

First reading.--The depth at which logging began at the bottom of the hole.

Fish.--An object lost in a well, such as a logging probe; the operation designed to recover the lost object is called fishing; a device at the top of a sonde designed for ease of connection to an overshot sometimes is called a fishing bell.

Flowmeter.--A logging device designed to measure the rate, and usually the direction, of fluid movement in a well; most are designed to measure vertical flow.

Fluid sampler.--An electronically controlled device that can be run on a logging cable to take water samples at selected depths in the well.

Flushed zone.--The zone in the borehole wall behind the mudcake that is considered to have had all mobile native fluids flushed from it.

Focused log.--A resistivity log that employs electrodes designed to focus the current into a sheet that provides greater penetration and vertical resolution than unfocused logs.

Formation.--Used in well-logging literature in a general sense to refer to all material penetrated by a drill hole without regard to its lithology or structure; used in a stratigraphic sense, formation refers to a named body of rock strata with unifying lithologic features.

Formation-resistivity factor.--Formation factor (F) is the ratio of the electrical resistivity of a rock 100-percent saturated with water ( $R_0$ ) to the resistivity of the water with which it is saturated ( $R_w$ ):  $F=R_0/R_w$ .

Formation tester.--A wireline device that can be used to recover fluid samples from rocks penetrated by the borehole and a record of flowing and shut-in pressure versus time.

Free-fluid index.--Measurement by a nuclear-magnetism log that indicates the amount of fluid (containing hydrogen) that is free to move.

Gamma log.--Also called gamma-ray log or natural-gamma log; log of the natural radioactivity of the rocks penetrated by a drill hole; also will detect gamma-emitting artificial radioisotopes (see spectral-gamma log).

Gamma ray.--A photon that has neither mass nor electrical charge that is emitted by the nucleus of an atom; measured in gamma logging and output from a source used in gamma-gamma logging.

Gradiomanometer.--A probe used to measure the average density of fluid in a two-foot interval of the well bore.

Grain density.--Also called matrix density; the density of a unit volume of rock matrix at zero porosity, in grams per cubic centimeter.

Ground electrode.--A surface electrode used for SP and resistivity logging.

Guard log.--A type of focused resistivity log that derives its name from guard electrodes that are designed to focus the flow of current.

Gun perforating.--A wireline technique for producing holes in the casing at preselected depths, so fluids can flow into the well.

Half-life.--The time required for a radioisotope to lose one half of its radioactivity from decay.

Half-value thickness.--The thickness of a material that reduces the radioactivity to one half the initial value.

Hydrogen index.--The ratio of the number of hydrogen atoms per unit volume of a material to the number in pure water at 75 degrees F.

Induced polarization.--A surface and logging method based on measurement of the decay of voltage in the ground after excitation by a current pulse.

Induction log.--A method for measuring resistivity or conductivity that uses an electromagnetic technique to induce eddy currents in the rocks around a borehole; can be used in nonconductive-borehole fluids and can make measurements through non-conductive casing.

Interval transit time.--The time required for a compressional acoustic wave to travel a unit distance (t); transit time usually is measured by acoustic or sonic logs, in microseconds per foot, and is the reciprocal of velocity.

Invaded zone.--The annular interval of material around a drill hole where drilling fluid has replaced all or part of the native interstitial fluids.

Isotopes.--Atoms of the same element that have the same atomic number, but a different mass number; unstable isotopes are radioactive and decay to become stable isotopes.

Kelly bushing.--The bushing on the derrick floor that transmits rotary motion to the drill pipe; most logs of oil wells are referenced to the kelly bushing (KB), which may be many feet above ground level.

Lag.--The distance a nuclear logging probe moves during one time constant.

Last reading.--The depth of the shallowest value recorded on a log.

Lateral log.--A multielectrode, resistivity-logging technique that has a much greater radius of investigation than the normal techniques, but requires thick beds and produces an unsymmetrical curve.

Laterolog.--A focused-resistivity logging technique designed to achieve greater penetration into the formation; see also guard log.

Long normal log.--A resistivity log with AM spacing usually 64 inches; see normal logs.

Lubricator.--A hydraulic-packing device through which the cable passes that permits the logging of wells under pressure; the lubricator may be screwed to the casing or valve at the well head.

Mark.--A magnetic marker or metallic shim on a logging cable, used for depth control. Also arbitrary probe reference for sweep on ATV logs.

Matrix.--The solid framework of rock or mineral grains that surrounds the pore spaces.

M electrode.--The potential electrode nearest to the a electrode in a resistivity device.

Mho.--A unit of electrical conductance that is the reciprocal of ohm; siemens.

Microresistivity log.-- Refers to a group of short-spaced resistivity logs that are used to make measurements of the mud cake and invaded zone.

Monitor curve.--A curve on a well log that is related to probe performance or stability.

Mud cake.--Also called filter cake; the layer of mud particles that builds up on the wall of a rotary-drilled hole as mud filtrate is lost to the formation.

Mud filtrate.--The liquid effluent of drilling mud that penetrates the wall of the hole.

Mud logging.--Analysis of circulated drilling mud for hydrocarbons, lithology, salinity, viscosity, etc.

N electrode.--The potential electrode distant from the a electrode in a resistivity device.

Neutron.--An elementary particle of the nucleus of an atom that has the same mass as a proton (1) but no charge; a neutron source is required to make neutron logs.

Neutron generator.--A high-voltage electromagnetic device that can be controlled to only emit neutrons when it is turned on, contrasting with an isotopic source that emits neutrons at all times.

Neutron lifetime log.--Also called pulsed-neutron or thermal-decay time log; the probe employs a pulsed-neutron generator to emit bursts of neutrons; the lifetime of the neutron population is measured and can be related to porosity, salinity, and clay content.

Neutron log.--Neutrons from an isotopic source are measured at one or several detectors after they migrate through material in, and adjacent to, the borehole. Log response primarily results from hydrogen content, but it can be related to saturated porosity and moisture content.

Noise.--A general term used for spurious or erratic log response not related to the property being logged; sonic noise logs use an acoustic receiver to detect sound caused by rapid fluid movement in the hole.

Normal log.--A quantitative-resistivity log, made with four electrodes, that employs spacings between 4 and 64 inches to investigate different volumes of material around the borehole; See long- and short-normal.

Nuclear log.--Well logs using nuclear reactions either measuring response to radiation from sources in the probe or measuring natural radioactivity present in the rocks.

Nuclear magnetic log.--Also called nuclear magnetic-resonance or NMR log; protons (hydrogen nuclei) are aligned with an impressed magnetic field that is turned off, and their precession in the earth's magnetic field is measured; this precession is logged as free fluid index, which is related to hydrogen in fluids that are free to move.

Ohm.--The unit of electrical resistance through which one ampere of current will flow when the potential difference is one volt.

Ohm-meter.--The resistivity of one cubic meter of material, which has a resistance of one ohm when electrical current flows between opposite faces; the standard unit of measurement for resistivity logs.

Open hole.--Uncased intervals of a drill hole.

Photoclinometer.--A logging device that photographically records the azimuth and deviation of a well at preselected depths.

Porosity.--The ratio of the void volume of a porous rock to the total volume, usually expressed as a percentage.

Probe.--Also called sonde or tool; downhole well-logging instrument package.

Production log.--Log run in a petroleum production or injection well; small diameter probes are used to make logs mostly related to fluid movement.

Proton.--The nucleus of a hydrogen atom; a positively charged nuclear particle with a mass of one; see neutron.

Pulsed neutron log.--Any log made with a pulsed neutron source.

Pulse-height analyzer.--Electronic device used to sort and record radiation pulses as a function of their energy; used for gamma-spectral logging and activation logging.

Radioactivity.--Energy emitted as particles or rays during the decay of an unstable isotope or nuclide to another unstable or stable isotope.

Repeat section.--A short interval of log that is run a second time to establish repeatability and stability.

Resistivity logs.--Any of a large group of logs that are designed to make quantitative measurements of the specific resistance of a material to the flow of electric current; calibrated in ohm-meters.

Reversal.--A typical distortion of normal-resistivity logs opposite beds that are thinner than the AM spacing; the effect is an apparent decrease in resistivity in the center of a resistive unit.

Roentgen.--The unit of measurement of exposure or dose of radiation; related to the ionization of air produced by photons, such as gamma rays or x-rays.

Rugosity.--The irregularity or roughness of the wall of a borehole.

Saturation.--The percentage of the pore space occupied by a fluid, usually water in hydrologic applications.

Scintillation detector.--An efficient detector used in nuclear-logging equipment; ionizing radiation causes flashes of light that are sensed by a photomultiplier tube and converted to pulses of electric current.

Secondary porosity.--Porosity developed in a rock after its deposition as a result of fracturing or solution; usually not uniformly distributed.

Sensitivity.--Also called span; the amplitude of deflection of a log in response to a standard-input signal.

Shale base line.--A line drawn through the SP log deflections that represent shale; a similar technique can be used on gamma logs and can represent the average log response of sand or other lithologies.

Shear wave.--An acoustic wave with direction of propagation at right angles to the direction of particle vibration (S wave).

Short-normal log.--One of a group of normal-resistivity logs usually with AM spacing of 16 inches or less.

Sidewall.--Used to describe a logging device with sensors mounted on a pad or skid that is forced into contact with the borehole wall.

Signal.--The desired portion of the response of a logging device as compared to the unwanted noise.

Single-point resistance log.--A single electrode device used to make measurements of resistance that cannot be used quantitatively.

Spacing.--The distance between sources or transmitters and detectors or receivers on a logging probe.

Spectral-gamma log.--A log of gamma radiation as a function of its energy that permits the identification of the radioisotopes present.

Spike.--A sharp deflection on a log, which is usually the result of a spurious signal or noise.

Spine and ribs plot.--A plot of long-spaced detector output versus short-spaced detector output for a dual detector gamma-gamma probe; permits correction for some extraneous effects.

Spinner survey.--A log of fluid velocity made with an impeller flowmeter.

Spontaneous-potential log.--A log of the difference in DC voltage between an electrode in a well and one at the surface; most of the voltage results from electrochemical potentials that develop between dissimilar borehole and formation fluids.

Standoff.--The distance separating a probe from the wall of a borehole.

Survey.--An oil-industry term used for the performance or result of a well-logging operation.

Temperature log.--A log of the temperature of the fluids in the borehole; a differential temperature log records the rate of change in temperature with depth and is sensitive to very small changes.

Thermal neutron.--A neutron that is in equilibrium with the surrounding medium such that it will not change energy (average 0.025 eV) until it is captured.

Time constant.--The time in seconds required for a varying signal to record 63 percent of the change that actually occurred from one signal level to another.

Tracer log.--Also called tracejector log; a log made for the purpose of measuring fluid movement in a well by means of following a tracer injected into the well bore; tracers can be radioactive or chemical.

Track.--Term used for the areas in the American Petroleum Institute log grid that are standard for most large well-logging companies; track 1 is to the left of the depth column, and tracks 2 and 3 are to the right of the depth column, but are not separated.

Transducer.--Any device that converts an input signal to an output signal of a different form; it can be a transmitter or receiver in a logging probe.

Ultra-long spaced-electric-log.--A modified, long-normal device with AM spacing as much as 1,000 feet; it can be used to locate anomalies quite distant from the borehole.

Variable-density log.--Also called 3-dimensional log; a log of the acoustic wave train that is recorded photographically, so that variations in darkness are related to the relative amplitude of the waves.

Z/A effect.--The ratio of the atomic number (Z) to the atomic weight (A) affects the relation between the response of gamma-gamma logs and bulk density.

ANSWERS TO TEST QUESTIONS

Test 1.-- Principles, Equipment and Log-Analysis Techniques\_

1. b, c, d.
2. b, c.
3. b, c.
4. none.
5. b, d.
6. a, b, c, d.
7. c, d.
8. a, b, d.
9. a, b, c, d.
10. c.
11. a, b, c, d.
12. a, b, c.

Test 2.-- Electric Logging\_

1. none.
2. c.
3. a, c.
4. a, d.
5. a, b, d.
6. a, b, c, d.
7. c.
8. c.
9. a, b, c.
10. a, b, c.
11. b, c.

Test 3.-- Nuclear Logging\_

1. a, c.
2. a, c, d.
3. b, d.
4. a, b, c.
5. b, c, d.
6. a, b, d.
7. a, c, d.
8. a, b, c, d.
9. a.
10. b, c, d.
11. a, b, c, d.
12. d.

Test 4.-- Acoustic and Caliper Logging\_

1. a, b, c.
2. a, d.
3. a, b, c, d.
4. a, b, c, d.
5. b, d.
6. b, c.
7. a, c.
8. b, c, d.
9. a, b, c, d.
10. b, c, d.
11. c, d.

Test 5.-- Fluid and Well-Construction Logging\_

1. a, b, d.
2. b, c.
3. b, c, d.
4. a, d.
5. b, d.
6. a, b, d.
7. a, b, c, d.
8. a, d.
9. a, c, d.
10. a, b, c.

INDEX

Page

A

Acoustic caliper...231  
 Acoustic logs...213  
 Acoustic televiewer...82,225,237,250  
 Acoustic velocity or transit time...37,47,82,213  
 Acoustic wave forms...213,215,223  
 Activation, see neutron activation.  
 Artificial recharge...200,205,251  
 Atomic number...137

B

Bed thickness...66,67,68,103,123,195  
 Bedding planes...232  
 Borehole effects. See also drilling effects and specific  
 logs...61,63,67,228  
 Breakouts...233  
 Bulk density...42,43,175,183  
 Buying a logger...78

C

Cable...72,78,118  
 Calcium carbonate...170  
 Calibration pits...90,91,168,190  
 Calibration. See also specific logs and  
 standardization...36,84,89,96,190,216  
 Caliper logs...51,63,65,82,96,113,115,133,226,230,232,236,267,  
 270,272,278  
 Casing collar locator...273  
 Casing...66,197,230,233,272  
 Cementation exponent...49,54  
 Cementation...48,49  
 Cement-bond logs...224  
 Cement...66,241,253,273  
 Chemical composition...60  
 Clay, or shale...103,154,162,170,172,193,197,201,207,241  
 Compressibility, aquifer...223  
 Computer analysis...34,36,133,245,278,280  
 Conductivity, fluid. See specific conductance and fluid conductivity  
 Contact, selecting...149  
 Convective flow...248,264  
 Correlation, stratigraphic...26,278  
 Corrosion, casing...272  
 Costs...79  
 Cross-plot...37,39,125  
 Crystalline rocks...31,162,201  
 Cycle skipping...219

## D

Dead time...140  
Density logs. See gamma-gamma logs.  
Depth errors...76,86  
Deviation, of drill holes...228,275  
Differential temperature logs...245  
Digitizing...35,70,77,141  
Dipmeter logs...133  
Drilling, effect on logs...61,64,181,239

## E

Elastic constants...223  
Electric logs...99  
Electrochemical potentials...100  
Equipment, see also specific logs...69  
Exposure of personnel to radiation...151  
Extraneous effects (see specific logs)

## F

Flow logs...258,278  
Flow...51,82,158,249,257  
Fluid conductivity (or resistivity)...51,56,82,255  
Focused resistivity (guard) logs...127  
Formation resistivity factor...49,52,125  
Fractures, see also hydraulic fractures...50,134,223,226,230,232,  
240,249,266

## G

Gamma logs...39,52,81,90,143,147,154,232,272,278  
Gamma spectral log...154,165,207  
Gamma-gamma logs...39,47,81,90,175,275  
Geiger detectors...139  
Geothermal...230,249  
Grain size see particle size  
Gravel pack...66,241,273  
Ground-water flow...251,257,278

## H

Headings, log...77,87  
Heat pulse flowmeter...260  
Histogram...39  
History...18  
Hydraulic conductivity, see permeability  
Hydraulic fractures...62,232

## I

Igneous rocks, see crystalline rocks  
Impeller flowmeters. See flow logs.  
Induction logs...130  
Injectivity profile...270  
Invasion...62,99,102,125,129  
Isotopes...137

L

Lag...143  
Lateral resistivity logs...130  
Laterolog, see focused logs  
Lithology, see specific logs and rock types.  
Logging speed...140,143

M

Mass number...137  
Metamorphic rocks, see crystalline rocks  
Microresistivity logs...127,132  
Mineral composition...45,207  
Moisture content...184,193,197,205  
Mud cake...241  
Mud, drilling...257

N

Neutron activation...206  
Neutron lifetime logs...209  
Neutron logs...37,39,47,81,90,92,96,143,185,232,272,278  
Normal resistivity logs...113,116,128,257  
Nuclear geophysics...137  
Nuclear magnetic-resonance logs...210

O

Ohm's law...107,116  
Orientation of beds and fractures...133,232

P

Particle size...48,54,56,159,164  
Permeability (hydraulic conductivity)...43,50,52,54,162,223,244,268  
Planning...24,78,83  
Porosity...43,46,47,49,52,92,183,190,195,214,221  
Probes...69

Q

Qualitative analysis...25  
Quality control...83,86

R

Radioactive sources used in logging...95,137,150,175,185,206,209  
Radioactive sources, loss and recovery...152  
Radioactive sources, regulations and handling...150  
Radioactive tracers...206,259,268,278  
Radioactive waste...168,172  
Radioactivity of rocks...155,165  
Radon...158  
Recorders...74,77  
Reruns...84  
Resistivity, or conductivity...47,54,67,68,81,112,116,272,278

## S

Scales for logs...28,76,84,251  
Secondary porosity, see also porosity...46,221,  
Sedimentary rocks, log response...29,112,199,201,217,219,232  
Selecting logs...80  
Service logging (contract)...78  
Shale. See clay.  
Single-point resistance logs...81,107,232,257  
Sonic logs, see acoustic logs.  
Specific conductance. See also fluid conductivity...57  
Specific yield...56,184,205  
Spectral logs, see gamma spectral logs  
Speed of logging. See also specific logs...85,225,248  
Spine and ribs plot...177  
Spontaneous potential logs...81,99,108,127,257  
Standardization. See calibration and specific logs.  
Streaming potentials...100  
Stress field...232  
Strike and dip, see orientation

## T

Television...225  
Temperature logs...18,51,56,57,59,71,82,244,270,275  
Tests...97,135,211,242,276  
Thermal flowmeters...260  
Time constant...139,140  
Tracers for flow...206,251,259  
Tracer-injector logs...259,268,278  
Transmittance logging...67,179,199

## V

Viscosity of water...253  
Volume of Investigation. See also specific logs...62,66,67,195

## W

Water quality. See also fluid conductivity...81,103,105,125,199,  
209,256,280  
Well construction...56,66,181,199,233,272  
Winch...72

## Z

Z axis plot...39  
Z/A ratio...177

